Printed and published by F C Pal for Messrs S C Auddy & Co,
At the Wellington Printing Works
10, Haladhar Burdhan Lane and 6 & 7, Bentinck Street, Calcutta

PREFACE

This publication is primarily intended for students who offer Persian as one of the subjects for examination at the Intermediate Examination in Arts of the Calcutta University It is divided into five Sections. Section I contains sixteen passages in English of varied length and difficulty Every passage is re-written in Persian syntactical order with Persian equivalents given within parantheses and the Notes, besides dealing with rules on Grammar and Composition illustrate the idiomatic uses of a large number of Persian words, and contain lists of Prepositional Verbs, English Transitive Verbs requiring Persian equivalents with Prepositions, and Compound Verbs. Section II contains twenty more passages in English, illustrating the rules learnt in Section I with hints for translation, the Notes dealing with the idiomatic uses of a further selection of words. Section III contains over one thousand English idioms and proverbs, alphabetically arranged, with their exact Persian equivalents Section IV gives a collection of specimen letters on various subjects to familiarize the students with the approved method of letter writing now in vogue among the educated Persians. Section V contains passages set for translation into Persian at the Intermediate Examination in Arts of the Calcutta University up to 1915, with hints for translation An Index to the subject matter of the Notes has been added for easy reference.

No pains have been spared to make the book up-to-date and really useful and it is hoped that it will meet the needs of those for whom it is intended.

In preparing the Series of Persian Translations, which this volume is intended to complete, the author is mainly indebted to the following works —

(1) Dr Rosen's Modern Persian Grammar
(2) Clair-Tisdall's Modern Persian Conversational Grammar
(3) Platts and Ranking's A Grammar of Persian
(4) Ranking's A Primer of Persian
(5) Wollaston's English-Persian Dictionaries.
(6) Haji Shaikh Ahmad-i-Kirmani's Persian Translation of Haji Baba of Ispahan
(7) Sayyahat-namah-i-Ibrahim Beg
(8) Haggard and Le Strange's The Vazir of Lankaran
(9) Rogers' Persian Plays
(10) Mizan-ut-Talim Vol. II
(11) Insha-i-Jadid
(12) Manshaat-i Amir i Nizam
(13) Mirza Hairat's Persian Translation of Malcolm's History of Persia

Any suggestion towards the improvement of the book will be thankfully accepted and embodied in future editions

KIDDERPORE,
The 15th February, 1916 — S H A

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

This opportunity has been utilized in thoroughly revising the book and in enlarging Section V by adding questions from the various Indian Universities up to 1928

KIDDERPORE,
The 5th February, 1929 — S H A

CONTENTS

SECTION I

		PAGE
1	The Goodness of God	1
2	A Lion, a Fox and a Wolf	7
3	Jamshid—I	13
4	The Washerman's Jackass	20
5.	Jamshid—II	26
6	The Lion and the Hare—I	32
7	Ispahan	42
8	The Lion and the Hare—II	51
9.	Time	59
10.	The Barber of Baghdad—I	63
11	Animals of Arabia	80
12	The Barber of Baghdad—II	92
13.	Socrates—I	105
14.	A Sailor and a Shop-keeper	117
15	Socrates—II	128
16	The Character of Nadir Shah	143

SECTION II

1	Domestic Life of Persia	157
2	A Thief Caught	161
3	The Three Sons of Faridun—I.	166
4	The Boy and the Cat—I	171
5	The Three Sons of Faridun—II.	174
6	The Boy and the Cat—II.	181
7	The House-dog and the Wolf	184
8.	Astronomy	191
9.	The Lark and her Young Ones	196

		PAGE
10	Natural Products of Persia	203
11	The Boy who had no Certificates	210
12	Karim Khan Zand—I	215
13	Wealth	221
14	Karim Khan Zand—II	227
15	Travelling in Persia—I	233
16	The Stage in the Ox-stall	237
17	Travelling in Persia—II	242
18	Teheran	247
19	The Tortoise who could not keep Silence	251
20	Books	257

SECTION III.

Idioms and Proverbs 263

SECTION IV

Letters of Invitation	347
Messages of Congratulation or Condolence	352
Correspondence between Friends and Relatives	356
Miscellaneous	361
Notes	366

SECTION V

Examination Papers 369-395

INSTRUCTIONS TO THE STUDENTS.

1 Try to understand and learn the rules given at the end of each passage.

2 First translate each passage with the help of the hints given.

3 Then translate it without the help of the hints, until the phrases and idioms in it are thoroughly impressed upon the mind.

4 Lastly reproduce in Persian the substance of each passage or story without reference to the original in English.

5 Before the vocabulary of an exercise is thoroughly mastered, never go on to the next.

6. Form sentences of your own, using the Prepositional and Compound Verbs given in the Notes.

7 Construct sentences, illustrating the uses of the phrases and idioms that occur in the Notes.

ENGLISH INTO PERSIAN

SECTION I

1 The Goodness of God

Look at the flowers that cover the field. They spring up everywhere and cover the face of the earth Who causes them to grow everywhere, and waters them with soft rain and cherishes them with dews? Who gives them colour and smell, and spreads out their thin transparent leaves? How does the rose draw its crimson from the dark brown earth or lily its shining white? How can a small seed contain a plant? How does every plant know its season when to put forth? Every plant produces its like a peach stone will not produce a mango tree every one springs from its proper seed. These are some of the wonders of the great Creator They all speak of Him who has made them they all tell us He is very good. They who know the most will praise God the best but who can number half His works?

The flowers (گُلهارا) look at (نگاه کنید) that (که) over the field (روي صحرا) has spread (فرش کرده است) Everywhere (همجا) that it may be (باشد) they spring up (برمي آمد) thou wouldst say (مي گوئي) the face of the earth (بساطِ زمين را) they would cover (بپوشد) Them (آنها را) everywhere (همه جا) who (که) causes to grow (مي رویاند) and (و) with soft rains (از ترشّح باران) water (آب) who gives (مي دهد) and with dew drops (قطره هاي شبنم) who cherishes (مي پرورد) and this (اين) all (همه) colour (رنگ) and smell (بوي) various (گوناگون) who gives (مي بخشد) and

the leaves (برگهاي) thin transparent of them (نازک صاف شان را) who spreads out (مي گسترد) ? How (چگونه) the rose (گل سرخ) its own crimson colour (رنگ قرمزئ خودش را) from (از) the earth (خاک) of dark colour (تيره رنگ) draws (برمي آرد) and the lily (سوسن) its shining white colour (رنگ سفيد درخشانش) ? How a plant (درختي) in (در) a small seed (تخمکي خرد) is contained (=remains concealed نهان مي ماند), and how every-one of the trees (همهٔ درختها) of its own particular season (از موسم مخصوص خود) knowledge (اطّلاع) has (مي دارد) that this (همين) the time of putting forth (وقت غنچه زدن) is (است) ? Every plant (هر درختي) its like (مثل خودشرا) produces (برمي آرد) and enough (و بس) From (از) a peach-stone (هستهٔ شفتالو) thou canst not produce a mango tree (نمي توانی درخت انبه پيدا کني) because (زيراکه) every sort of trees (هر نوعی از درختها) except (بجز) from its proper seed (از تخم مخصوص خود) springs not (برنمي آيد) This is (اينست) some (برخي) of the wonders of the great Creator (از صنائع کردگار جليل) such that (که) all (همه) with the tongue of condition (بزبان حال) at his being the Creator (به خالق بودن او) acknowledger (مقرّ) is, and to His generosity and goodness (به جود و کرمش) confessing (معترف) They who (آنانکه) better knowing are (از معرفتش خبردارترانند) to the praise of God (به حمد و ثناي باري تعالی) the better (بهتر) they attend (مي پردازند) but (وليکن) who can (که مي تواند) except (بجز) a portion thereof (پارهٔ ازين) he may number (شمار کند)

1 The Present Tense (حال) is used to denote— (i) an action *now going on* or a state *now existing* as احمد مي رود Ahmad is going باران مي بارد it is raining (ii) an action recurring *habitually in the present* as هرروز براسپ سوار مي شوم I ride every day سيب سه دانه يک روپيه مي دهم I sell apples three at a rupee (iii) an action in the *immediate* or *definite future* as امروز بر اسپ سوار مي شوم I shall ride to-day حالا بنده رخصت مي شوم now I shall take my leave انشا الله در وقت قدرت پس مي دهم God pleasing I shall repay when I shall be able to do so فردا بشهر مي روم I *am going* to town to-morrow (iv) an universal *truth* as *as* خدا مي دهد نمي پرسد تو کيستي God who gives does not ask— who art thou آنچه در ديگ است بچمچه مي آيد whatever is in the pot must come out in the spoon (v) a past action in dramatic or direct form of narration after verbs of *seeing thinking* &c. as ديدم اصغر مي آيد I saw Asghar *is* coming يقين دانستم زود مي ميرم I was sure to die soon.

2 Prepositions are often prefixed to Verbs so as to form what are called Prepositional Verbs. Thus —(i) باز آمدن to come back باز آوردن to bring back باز خريدن to redeem; باز دادن to give back باز داشتن to restrain باز کردن to open باز گرديدن to turn back باز گشتن to return باز ماندن to leg behind باز يافتن to resume باز خواستن to demand back (ii) برآمدن to spring up cope with succeed برآميختن to mix up برآوردن to heave (a sigh) برآويختن to suspend برتافتن to twist بر جستن to leap برچيدن to pluck , برخاستن to rise or

arise, برخوردن to meet with, to be benefited by, بردار کشیدن to hang, بر داشتن to raise, carry off, بر شکستن to become bankrupt, to fail (in a business), برگزیدن to choose, select, بر گشتن to return, retreat, بر کندن to uproot, بر هم زدن to confound (iii) پي بردن to enter, penetrate, پي گشتن to wander about, look for any one (iv) پیش آمدن to come before, to occur, پیش افتادن to precede پیش گرفتن to assume, take upon oneself (*the government* &c) (v) در آمدن to enter, arrive, در انداختن to hurl, در آوردن to produce, در آویختن to grapple with, در افتادن to fall in with, در بردن to carry off, در ربودن to snatch away, در کشیدن to draw out, در گذشتن to leave off, در گذاشتن to pass by or over, در گرفتن to take effect, در ماندن to be helpless, در نوردن to travel, دریافتن to perceive

3 The Distributive Pronominal Adjective هر may be affixed to Substantives to form compound Adverbs or Adverbial phrases, as هر جا everywhere, هرگاه every time or whenever, بهرحال in every case, or inspite of, هر آئنه assuredly, هردم or هروقت constantly, or always, هرروز or هرروزه daily, هرطرف on every side, هر نوعیکه in whatever way or to Numerals, as هریک or هریکي every one, هر دو both, هر سه all three or to Pronouns or Adjectives, as هرکه whoever, هرآنچه what-so-ever, هرآنکه who-so-ever, هر چند how-ever-much, هرکدام whichever, هر چه whatever

4 The Particle که is used—(1) as a Relative Pronoun, as برادر شما که بیمار بود حالا چه طور است how now is your brother *who* has been ill? مردیکه آنجا آمد دولتمند بود the man *who* came

hither was rich (ii) as an Interrogative Pronoun as که مي آيد who is coming? ادب از که آموختي *of whom* did you learn good manners? کرا جاودان بودن اميد هست *who* can hope to live for ever? (iii) as a Disjunctive Conjunction, as يوسف آمد که ايوب either Yusuf *or* Ayyub came (iv) to denote a resemblance as در جهان دغابار که او نيست there is no cheat in the world *like* him (v) in the sense of the Conjunction *that* as وعده دادند که در دفعهٔ ديگر هر يک سرگذشت خود را بيان کند they promised, that at the next meeting each would narrate his own story (vi) to denote the *cause* or *reason* as بيرون نرويد که هوا گرم است don t go out, *for* the air is hot (vii) in the sense of *nay rather* as در زور نه تنها من از او کمترم که احدي بروي تاب همسري ندارد in strength not only am I inferior to him (but) *rather* not a single person has the power to equal him (viii) to introduce a *sudden occurrence* as سر حوض بود که تب بر وي حمله کرد he had sat by the reservoir *when on a sudden* he had an attack of fever (ix) in the sense of *than* after به as کوتاه خردمند به که نادان بلند a short wise man is better *than* a tall fool and (x) in the sense of *if* as شخص معزول شده از ناکاري چه کند که توبه نکند what could the dismissed officer do if he did not repent of his misdeeds?

آن (pl. آنها) is also used as a Personal Pronoun referring to inanimate objects and corresponds to the English *it* as آنرا با زمين راست کردند they made it even with the ground چون آقايش آمد يکي از آنها پرواز کرده رفته بود when his master came, one of them had flown away

6 (a) When همه precedes a Substantive it may either take

an *izafat* or not, according as it gives stress upon *the component parts of the aggregate* or draws attention to *its totality*, as همهٔ ممالک بدست وي نهاده بود he had placed every part of the kingdom under his authority, مگر میخواهید که همهٔ شهررا غذا بدهم do you wish me to feed *every individual* in the town? کاش عاقبت همهٔ ایشان اینطور بودی would the end of *every one of them* had been so, همه راه درین حال تفکر مي کرد the *whole* way he kept pondering over this matter, همه دختران پاریس قربان یک موي تو باشد may *all* the girls in Paris be an offering for one hair of your head!

(*b*) همه following a Substantive or a Pronoun simply corroborates or emphasises its significance, as اینها همه حرف مفت است this is *all* idle talk, راه ها همه رفته بود و آب زده the roads were *all* swept and watered

(*c*) همه may also be used independently without any accompanying Substantive, as همه نعره و فریاد جانکاه شروع نمودند all (of them) began to utter loud and doleful cries, همه را بر دار کردند they impaled all (of them)

7 Interrogation (استفهام) in Persian may be of three kinds (*a*) *Interrogation of Negation* (انکاري), when it conveys a negative significance, as اصل از من بپرسید احمد چه خبر دارد ask the truth from me, what does Ahmad know (*i e*, he does not know anything)? کرا غم تخلیص تو باشد who will trouble himself about your freedom (*i e* none)? (*b*) *Interrogation of assertion* (اقراري), when it affirms something, as طایري که مي بینید اگر بلبل نیست پس چیست if the bird you are seeing is not a nightingale, then what is it (*i e.*, it is nothing but a nightingale)? (*c*) *Interro-*

gation of enquiry (استفهامی 1) when it asks for some information as ایشان کیستند who are they? کدام خانه را دیدید which house did you see? این چه چیز است what is this?

2 A Lion a Fox and a Wolf

A lion, a fox and a wolf went out hunting together and they pursued and caught three animals—an ass, a gazelle and a hare The lion said to the wolf Now friend wolf will you please say how our three hunters are to divide the game we have caught The wolf replied We need not divide that is to say we need not cut the meat up you take the ass, let the fox take the hare and I will have the gazelle The lion struck the wolf a violent blow on the head and killed him That was the wolf's payment for his advice. Then the lion turned to the fox and said Now my dear friend, what do you suggest?" Oh Sir answered the fox with a low obeisance "the case is very simple You should have the ass for your morning meal the gazelle for your evening meal and then you can eat the hare as a light refreshment in between. Very well, said the lion who was well-pleased to have the whole game to himself And who taught you such wisdom and justice? I learnt wisdom from yonder dead wolf said the fox slily

Once on a time (روزی) a lion (شیری) and a fox (روباهی) and a wolf (گرگی) together (باهم) for hunting (بشکار) went (رفتند) and after (بعد از) much pursuit (تعاقب بسیار) three animals, namely an ass, a gazelle and a hare (سه حیوانرا که عبارت از خری و آهوی و خرگوشی بود) they caught (گرفتند). The lion (شیر) to the wolf (بگرگ) said (گفت) O friend (ای یار) now (حالا) will you please say (بفرمائید) how ought (باید) we three hunters (=beasts of prey ما سه درنده) the game (شکاررا) that

we have caught (گرفته ایم) may divide (تقسیم کنیم) The wolf replied (جواب داد) that we need not divide (نباید تقسیم کنیم) that is to say (یعني) the meat (گوشتهارا) to cut up (تمام کردن) is not fitting (نشاید) You (شما) the ass (را) take (بگیرید) and let the fox take the hare (روباه خرگوش را بگیرد) and I likewise (هم) the gazelle will take (استانم) and enough (و بس) The lion at this (ازین) speech of (سخن) the wolf became angry (برآشفت) and on (بر) the head of the wolf (کلۀ گرگ) such (چنان) a blow (ضرب) violent (شدیدي) struck (زد) that instantly (الان) it died (موت شد). That was (بود) the payment for his advice (مزدگان مصلحت) that (که) to the wolf (بگرگ) reached (رسید) Then (پس) the lion turning towards the fox (رو به روباه کرده) said O my dear friend (اي دوست عزیز من) now thy opinion (فکرت) what thing (چه چیز) is? The fox, servant-like obeisance (کورنشات بندگانه) having performed (بجا آورده), answered (جواب داد) that Oh Sir (اي آقا), this a case is (امریست) very simple (بیک سهل) The ass (را) for (براي) morning meal (=breakfast نهار) have (بدارید) and the gazelle (را) for evening meal (=dinner شام) so that (تا آنکه) the hare (را) make use of as a light refreshment in between (صرف عصرانۀ مختصر بنمائید) When (چون) the lion the whole of this games (همگي این شکارها را) in his own possession (بتصرف خود) he found (یافت), he was well-pleased (خیلي خوشنش آمد) and said very well (بسیار خوب) but (اما) such (چنین) wisdom (عقل) and justice (=discretion تمیز) from whom (از که) didst thou learn (آموختي) The sly fox (روباه

(معلّم) answered from that deaf wolf (آلغي مِرِدة) that you let us (آنها سد)

NOTES

8. (a) When added to Substantives ی is used—(i) to denote *unity* or *indefiniteness* (corresponding to the English Indefinite Article *a* or *an*) as گدائي بپيش سيدي رسيد a beggar went to a nobleman حكيمي ميرزا اسحد Isaac is a doctor in his suite ... I saw a man of fifty years (seated) on the felt carpet (ii) to *define* the antecedent of the Relative Pronoun (corresponding to the English definite Article *the*), as ... *the* people whom I saw were blind ... from *the* sea-coasts that were near a few small birds came flying to the ship (iii) to show *relation* as كشميري of Kashmere بغدادي of Baghdad هندي of India كرماني of Kirman مصري of Egypt ايراني of Iran چيني of China اصفهاني of Ispahan (iv) to form Nouns denoting *state* or *profession* as گدائي beggary تندرستي health خوشي pleasure happiness ... impudence تازگي freshness قصّابي the profession of a butcher شاعري the profession (or art) of a poet عطّاري the profession of a druggist (v) to signify the Conjunctive *Personal Pronoun of the first person singular* (after the Arabic idiom) as مخدومي my master ربّي my lord مشفقي my kind friend خداوندي my lord; (vi) to denote *the agent* as شكاري hunter شرابي drunkard درزي tailor خوني murderer حلوائي confectioner لوطي jester buffoon مسخري

grammarian (vii) to give the *form of the Passive Participle*, as سندي established by authority, مهري sealed, لعنتي cursed (viii) to denote *excess* or *greatness*, as خلقي برو گرد آمدند a *whole* people flocked round him, مقدس مردي است he is a *very* pious man, حود کتابي باشد اگر همه یاد کنم if I were to mention them all, they would themselves comprise a *big* book

(*b*) When added to Verbs ي is used—(i) to denote the *fitness* of an action, as این طعام خوردني نیست this food is not *fit to be eaten* آنچه کردني بود کردیم we did whatever was *fit* (*or necessary*) *to be done*, تفصیلش شنیدني است یا دیدني is the detail thereof *to be heard* only or *seen*? (ii) to denote *an action habitually recurring in the past*, as پارسائي تمام روز روزه داشتي a devotee *used to fast* the whole day, در رعایت مملکت سستي کردي he was habitually careless in the protection of his dominion (iii) to denote *a past wish*, as کاش رفتمي would to God I had gone, کاش از اوّل دروغ نگفتمي would to God I had not lied from the first

9 The detached form of the Personal Pronouns may be strengthened by a Noun or an Adjective (used substantively) in apposition to it, as ما انسان را for us human beings ما توانگران we rich people, شما زیرکان you intelligent ones, بتو نامهربان to thee unkind

10 The Imperative (امر) in Persian is divided into three kinds (*a*) امر حاضر 'the present Imperative,' the command being directly conveyed to the person or persons addressed, as حرف مرا گوش کن listen to what I say, حالا پاشو برو عزیز را صدا کن

now get up go and call Aziz Beg دهانش را پر از این شیرینیها بکن fill his mouth with these sweets. [N B The second person plural of the امر حاضر when addressed to a single individual is a polite form of making a request, as لقمه الصباح حاضر است بیائید نوش جان بفرمائید the morning meal is ready please, come and partake of it الحال مردم دور عمارت دیوانخانه جمع آمده منتظرند تشریف بیارید بمسند حکومت و جای پدر خود قرار بگیرید now the people having assembled round the palace of the justice-hall are awaiting (your arrival) please come and take your seat on the carpet of state in place of your father]

(*b*) امر غائب the absent Imperative the command being indirectly conveyed to a person or persons absent and being expressed by the third person singular or plural of the Aorist (مضارع) as زینب خانم هم گوش بدهد let Zainab Khanam also listen اسبهایم را بفروشند let them sell my horses.

(*c*) امر مداومی the continuous Imperative the command being of a permanent or continuous nature and being expressed by the unaugmented Imperative preceded by می or همی as همیشه قرآن شریف می خوان *always* read the Quran همواره در حفظ قدر خود می باش و وقار do thou *ever* have regard to thy own worth and dignity

11 The Impersonal Verb شایستن is mostly used in the third person singular of the Aorist with or without a negative, as نشاید که ترا نام نهند آدمی it is not fitting that they should call thee a man سرچشمه شاید گرفتن ببیل it is possible to stop the fountain head with a spade بسرّ شاه سر خویش در نباید باخت one should not risk one's head for the king's secret.

12 Suffixes denoting *fitness* or *suitability* (لياقت) are (i) وار or واره, as شاهوار royal, سزاوار worthy, گوشواره ear-ring (ii) انه, as شاهانه royal, مردانه manly (iii) گان, as شاهگان any thing great or noble رایگان gratis, خدایگان lord, master

13 An Adjective may be strengthened by placing before it one or other of the following words —(i) زار, as زار خوار very despicable, (ii) پر as پر دور very far, پر آهسته very slow, (iii) خیلي, as خیلي خوب very beautiful (iv) سخت, as سخت شاد very glad, سخت سست very slack, (v) نیک, as نیک سهل very easy or simple

14 (a) همگي (the totality, the whole) is used as a مضاف or a تاکید, as همگي همتش the *whole* of his endeavour همگي زنان *all* the women همگي اشیا *all* the things

(b) It may also be used in the sense of همگان (all of them, they all), as همگي آمدند *all of them* came همگي می روند *they* are *all* going

15 The most important of the remaining Prepositional Verbs are (vi) زیر زدن to throw down (vii) فرا چنگ آوردن to get into one's grasp فرا رسیدن to arrive, فرا رفتن to go, proceed, فرا زدن to open, discover, فرا گرفتن to assume, acquire, فرا نمودن to show, exhibit (viii) فرو بستن to tie down فرو بردن to swallow فرو خواندن to utter فرو رفتن to go down, sink, فرو گذاشتن to quit, relinquish, فرو کوفتن to knock down, bruise, فرو ماندن to be distressed, فرو هشتن to hang down (ix) وا ایستادن to stop, stand still, وابستن to bind, tie, وا جستن to enquire, search, وا چیدن to pick out, collect, وا خریدن to

redeem باز دادن to restore باز داشتن to hold back prohibit باز دیدن to gaze at regard باز جستن to obtain information enquire into investigate باز گشتن to wander باز کردن to open let loose باز گذاردن to commit to leave to باز گذاشتن to leave behind abandon باز ماندن to stay behind باز نگریستن to stare at, باز نمودن to open, show

8. Jamshid—I

Tahamurs was succeeded by his nephew the famous Jamshid a prince who is celebrated as the founder of Persepolis, which is to this day called the throne of Jamshid." To this monarch Persian authors attribute the invention of many useful arts and to him they refer the first great reform in the manners and usages of his countrymen He divided his subjects into four classes The first was formed of learned and pious men, devoted to the worship of God and the duty ascribed to them was to make known to others what was lawful and what otherwise. The second were writers whose employment was to keep the records and accounts of the state. The third were soldiers, who were directed to occupy themselves in military exercises, that they might be fitted for war The fourth class were artificers, husbandmen and tradesmen. Jamshid also introduced the solar year and ordered the first day of it, when the sun entered the Aries to be celebrated by a splendid festival.

After the death of Tahamurs (بعد از رحلت طهمورث) the famous Jamshid (نامدار جم) his nephew (برادر زادهٔ او) on the throne (بر تخت) sat ([illegible]) and it is celebrated (مشهور است) that Persepolis (اصطخر فارس را) that it (آنرا) to this day (تا حال or هنوز) the throne of Jamshid (تخت) also (نیز)

they call (میگویند) he founded (او بنا نهاد) Persian historians (مورخان ایران) will have it (= are on that برآنند) that many (بسی) useful arts (صنائع عدیده) of (از) his inventions (اختراعات او) is, and also they say (گویند) that the first of the great reforms (اوّلین اصلاحات بزرگ) in the manners and usages of his countrymen (در باب آداب و معاشرت زندگی هموطنان خود) from him is and they narrate (نقل کنند or روایت کنند) that his subjects (or رعایای خود را خلق را) into (بر) four (چهار) class (طبقه) he divided (قسمت کرد) first (اوّل), learned and pious men, devoted to the worship of God (علما و زهّاد) and their duty (تکالیف ایشان or کار ایشان) this was that to people (مردم) the laws and regulations of the state and religion (قوانین و قواعد ملک و مذهب) they may teach (بیاموزند), second (دوم), the writers (کتّاب) who may keep the records and accounts of the state (که ضبط وقائع و محاسبات ملکیه نمایند), third (سوم) the soldiers (سپاهیان) whose arrangement (انتظام ایشان) thus (چنان) was that in military exercises (به مشق استعمال آلات حرب or به مشق سر باز) having occupied themselves (اشتغال ورزیده) they may be fitted for the field of war (قابل میدان رزم شوند) and the fourth (چهارم) artificers (ارباب حرف و صنائع) and husbandmen (اهل فلاحت و زراعت) and tradesmen (تجّار) And it is recorded (مرقوم است) that the fixing of the solar year (وضع سال شمسی) also (نیز) from Jamshid (از جمشید) is, and he ordered (فرمود) that on the first (= opening) day of the year (در روز افتتاح سال) which the time of the entering of the sun (که هنگام تحویل آفتاب) into the zodiacal sign

of the Aries (برج حمل) as they may celebrate a feast (جشن سد کنند)

NOTES.

16 The particle ا is used—(i) to denote *the commencement* of anything as ازین راه از طهران بمشهد میرود this road *commencing at* Tehran goes to Mashed از صبح تا حال نگذاشته دو چنگ پشم شانه بزنم *from* morning till now she does not let me comb two handfuls of wool (ii) to point out *the cause* as از شادی هیچ من جای را نمی دید I saw nothing *out of* joy از شرم و حیا نمی توانستیم پیش روی بزرگان خود سر بلند بکنیم *from* shame and modesty we were unable to raise our heads in the presence of our elders از این خبر هولناک رعب و هراسی درمیان کاروانیان افتاد *because* of this dreadful news a terror over-spread among the members of the caravan (iii) in sense of—*of out of* as پدرم کار دکان خود را بیکی از بزرگترین شاگردهای خود حواله نمود my father left his business to one *of* his chief apprentices آدم که بترسد ازین بهانها می آرد the man who is afraid brings forward (one) of such excuses

(iv) to express the *material* of which a thing is made as ظرفی از مس یا چوب نیست there is no *wooden* or *copper* vessel ; دلوچه از پوست در آنجا است there is a *leather* drinking cup in that place (v) to denote *motion from a place thing* &c. as پادشاه بقصد خانهٔ حکیم از ارک بیرون آمد the king came out of (his) palace with the intention to proceed to the physician's house ; چون شنید که یکی از ایران آمده است بسیار دلخوش شد when he heard one had come *from* Persia he was very much pleased (vi) to denote *the instrument* as یک راس اسب مرده از تنگنائی که مردها

مي اںداحتند کشته شد a horse in the cart was killed *by* the shots the robbers fired from their guns, رو بروي كرسئ شاه از برگ گل گلهاي گوناگوں ساختند facing the seat of the king they made various devices with rose leaves (vii) to denote *possession*, as ایں کتاب از آں کیست whose book is this? از آں من است it is mine, فقیر پرسید که ایں خانه اوّل از که بود the beggar asked, 'whose house was this at first?' گفت از جدم he said, 'my grand-father's'. (viii) to denote '*some out of a whole*,' as قدري از آنرا موش بخورد *a little of* it was eaten by the mouse, یکي از آںیان مرا بشناخت که از دستگاں حکیم شاهم *one among* them recognised me as *(one) of* the dependants of the king's physician (ix) to show *comparison*, كارم در آنجا بهتر از آنچه مي پنداشتم بالا گرفت there my business prospered much better *than* I expected, اللّه مردن بهتر از زن تاروردي شدن است certainly to die is better *than* to be the wife of Tarwardi (x) to mark *the distinction* between two things, as اقاي من مشکل ایں است که از دوست تا دشمن فرق نمی کني از نیک تا بد امتیاز نمي کني از سپید از سیاه باز نمي شناسي my dear sir! the difficulty lies herein that you do not make a distinction between a friend and a foe, between good and evil, between white and black

17 (*a*) بسي (a great deal, much, many) is used as an adjective, as بسي شکر کردم I expressed *many* thanks, بسي ابلیس آدم روي هست there exists *many a* devil in human shape, خلق بدیدار او بسي فرسنگ مي روند the people go *many a* mile to visit him

(*b*) It may also be used as an Adverb, as بسي برنیامد

که ارلتی تللی لروس مسهد در آمدم ere long I became celebrated as the best vendor of smoke in Mashed

18. *(a)* An Arabic Adjective of the measure of عاقل or فعیل preceded by a Persian substantive denoting rational being of the female sex, agrees with the Substantive in gender but not in number as دختر عاقله the intelligent daughter دختران عاقله the intelligent daughters زن جمیله the beautiful woman زنان جمیله the beautiful women. But if a word or words intervene, the Adjective will take the masculine form as زنی بسیار عاقل a very intelligent woman

(b) An Arabic feminine Substantive, whether singular or plural, when followed by an Arabic Adjective, will require the Adjective to be in the feminine singular as حکمت کامله consummate wisdom قوت ناطقه faculty of speech تواریخ معتبره authentic histories انواع مذکوره the said species امور سیاسیه political affairs وقایع مهمه important events فتوحات جزئیه partial victories اشخاص مزبوره the persons aforesaid حالات عجیبه wonderful circumstances خواطر متفرقه various kinds of thoughts

(c) If the Arabic Substantive in the plural denotes *men* or *angels* it sometimes requires the Arabic Adjective to be in the plural form as انبیای اطهار the pure prophets; حکام کرام gracious governors وزرای عظام great ministers حکمای متاخرین modern philosophers

19 *(a)* The regular plural of Arabic feminine Nouns ending in ة is formed by changing ة into ات as from حرکة (motion) we have حرکات; of those which do not end in

ة by adding ات to the singular, as from مريم (Mary) we have مريمات

(b) The plural of most of the Arabic infinitives; of many masculines having no broken plural, and of verbal adjectives used in the plural as substantives, is formed in this way, as كمالات from كمال perfection, تعريفات from تعريف definition, اصطلاحات from اصطلاح technical term, جمادات from جماد an inorganic thing, حيوانات from حيوان an animal, سماوات from سما the sky, كائنات from كائن being, مخلوقات from مخلوق created, موجودات from موجود existing

20 Genitive case (اضافت) in Persian may be divided into—(i) Possessive Genitive (اضافتِ تمليكي), as خانهٔ قاضي the house of the Qazi, قصرِ سلطان the palace of the king; كتابِ معلم the book of the teacher, مالِ مردم the people's property (ii) Genitive of sonship (اضافتِ ابني), as رستمِ زال Rustam son of Zal, محمودِ سبكتگين Mahmud son of Sabuktagin, بو علي سينا Bu Ali son of Sina. (iii) Genitive of authorship, as گلستانِ سعدي the Gulistan of Sadi, شاه نامهٔ فردوسي the Shahnamah of Firdousi (iv) Genitive of place (اضافتِ ظرفي), as مردمانِ شهر the people of the city, اهلِ ايران the people of Persia, آبِ دريا the water of the river, بوي گل the perfume of the rose: (v) Genitive of Origin, as زخمِ تيغ the wound inflicted by a sword, قافلهٔ بغداد the caravan coming from Bagdad (vi) Genitive of material (اضافتِ بياني), as ساعتِ طلا a gold watch, ديوارِ خشت a brick wall, كاسهٔ بلور a crystal cup (vii) Genitive of amount, as سفرِ يک ماه a month's journey, طفلِ سه ساله a child of three

years age مدتِ پنجاه سال a period of fifty years تاریک هفته bread sufficient for a week (viii) Genitive of plenty or want, as کثرتِ دولت plenty of wealth; عدمِ توجّه want of attention ازدحامِ مشتریان the crowding of customers قلّتِ آب scarcity of water (ix) Genitive of specification (اضافتِ توصیفی) as شهرِ بصره the city of Bassora بندرِ جدّه the port of Jiddah سفرِ دریا a voyage by sea (x) Genitive of component parts; as گلّهٔ گوسفند a flock of sheep رشتهٔ مروارید a string of pearls طائفهٔ دزدان a gang of robbers خریطهٔ کاغذ a portfolio of papers (xi) Genitive of similitude, (اضافتِ تشبیهی), as چشمِ نرگس a narcissus-like eye; کمانِ ابرو a bow-like eye brow پنجهٔ مرجان coral like hand شیشهٔ دل a glass-like heart (xii) Genitive of metaphorical expression (اضافتِ استعاره) as دستِ حسرت the hand of regret سرِ هوش the head of sense; پایِ فکر the feet of imagination (xiii) Genitive of the Agent (اضافتِ فاعلی) as نویسندهٔ کاغذ the writer of a letter سازندهٔ کار the accomplisher of a work; آرندهٔ پیغام the bearer of a message آفرینندهٔ دنیا the creator of the world (xiv) Genitive of the Object (اضافتِ مفعولی) as نفرینِ ضحاک loathed by Zohak رهینِ جوانمردیِ indebted to your generosity گزیدهٔ مار bitten by a snake سوختهٔ غم consumed by sorrow (xv) Genitive of slight relationship (اضافتِ ادنی ملابست) as روزِ حساب the day of account شبِ توبه the night of repentance محلّهٔ ما our quarter پادشاهِ ما our king (xvi) Attributive Genitive (اضافتِ توصیفی) as روزِ روشن a bright day دخترِ خوشگل a pretty daughter اسبِ سفید a white horse

21 (a) Aorist (مضارع) is generally used to express a custo-

mary action, or a general truth, as آتش دوست و دشمن نداند fire recognizes neither friend nor foe نشانِ بندگي آن باشد كه همهٔ آن كند كه خداوند فرمايد the mark of a servant is that he should do all that his master commands

(*b*) In modern Persian, unlike English, the Past Tense in the principal sentence may be followed by an Aorist in the subordinate clause, as از حالتِ خود او را آگاهانیدم كه از روي بنده پروري مرا از سلكِ بندگانِ خود شمارد I made known to him my situation and entreated him to give me a place in his house-hold منتظرِ اقبال حكيم باشي بودند تا از اندرون در آيد they were waiting for a sight of the royal physician when he should come out of the women's apartments, پيشتر از آنكه تولد شوم اين واقع شد this happened before I was born, عادتم اين بود كه هرروز قدري انگليسي بخوانم it was my custom to read a little of English every day

4 The Washerman's Jackass

There was a certain washerman in Benares, who had an ass and a dog in his court-yard, the first tied up, and the last roaming loose One night when he was asleep, a robber entered the house, and began to carry off his goods The ass saw what the thief was doing, and was much concerned "Good dog," said he, "this is your business why do you not bark aloud, and rouse the master?" "Friend ass," replied the dog, "leave me alone to guard our house I can do it if I choose, but the truth is, this master of ours thinks himself so safe lately that he quite forgets me, and I don't find my allowance of food nearly regular enough As our master does this, a little fright will put him in mind of his defenders again"—"You wicked cur!" exclaimed the ass, "is this the way to treat your master?" "You stupid ass!" replied the dog, "is this the way for my master to treat me?"

Mean-spirited beast," retorted the ass, "I at least will endeavour to arouse our master" so saying he put forth his very best braying The thief ran off and the washerman sprang up at the noise, and seeing nobody turned in a rage upon the ass for disturbing him, and beat him with a cudgel to such an extent that he died.

In the town of Benares (شهر بنارس) a washerman (رخت شوئی) was, who among (از) domestic animals (حیواناتِ خانگی) an ass had (داشت) in the courtyard of his (own) house (صحنِ خانهٔ خود) tied up (= bound with rope رسن بسته) and a dog in that place (در آنجا) strutting (خرامیده) and unbound (گشاده) One night (شبی) when the washerman (رخت شو) asleep (در خواب) was, a robber (دزدی) inside the house (درون خانه) entered (در آمد) and his goods (اسباب او را) to carry off (بردن) he began (آغازید) The ass it (آن خر) seeing (دیده) much concerned (بسیار مضطرب) became (گردید) and said O good dog (ای سگِ نیک خو)! this is your business (= thou hast to do with it تو کار داری) why (چرا) a loud barking (عف عفِ بلند) thou dost not do (نمی کنی) that our master (آقای ما) may awake (بیدار شود)? The dog replied (جواب داد) that O yes (آری) the guarding of the house (نگهبانی خانه) that (که) my business is (کارِ من است) have a care (زنهار), its disturber (خللِ آن) do not be (مباش) If I choose (اگر بخواهم) I can do it (می توانم آنرا بکنم) but (لیکن) the truth (صدق) this is (اینست) that now-a-days (درین زمان) our master himself (خودش) so safe (در چنین معرض بی خطری) thinks (می پندارد) that from (از) the servant (بنده) quite (کلیه) negligence (غفلت) he has practised (ورزیده) and

my allowance of food (ادوقة روزينه ام را) regularly (=as usual حر ...) he has not caused to reach (نرسانيده) Therefore (لهذا) he ought to be put to a little fright (بايد قدري هراس بخورد) that (تا) us the defenders (ما نگاهبانان را) again (بار) he may remember (بياد آرد) The ass exclaimed (نعره زد) that O wicked cur (سگ بدخو), is it the way of thy faithfulness (اين ... طريقة وفاداريت) that upon your master (بر آقاي خود) thou deemest permissible (روا داري) The dog in reply (بجوابش) said O stupid ass (خرِ بيخرد), is it his way of nourishing the servant (طريقة بنده پروريش) that our master on the servants (بر بندگان) deems permissible (روا دارد) The ass retorted (بتيري نگفت), O mean-spirited beast (اي جانورِ بي غيرت و اي ... دون همة) if (اگر) thou neglect thy business (از كارِ خود غفلت مي ورزي) I (=the servant بنده) at least (اقلاً) shall endeavour (سعي مي نمايم) my master (را) I may arouse (بيدار بكنم) So (چنين) saying (گفته) as loud as he could (هرچه بلندتر بتوانست) a braying (عرعري) he struck (بزد) The thief (دزد) immediately on hearing his sound (... شنيدنِ صداش) he ran off (بگريخت) Consequently (پس) when owing to (از) this noise and tumult (شور و غوغا)the washerman from sleep sprang up (برجست) nobody he saw (كسي را نديد) and for disturbing him (... تلخ شدنِ اوقاتش or ... مكدر ساختن) upon (بر) the ass turned in a rage (بيا ...) and him (آنرا) with a cudgel (به چوبي) beat to such an extent (چنان زد و كوب كرد) that at last (آخر) his life (جانش) from the cage of the body (قفسِ تن) flew away (پرواز نمود)

NOTES

22 Time when is expressed in Persian—(i) by using the preposition در as در زمانِ خلافتِ حضرتِ ابوبکر صدّیق گرانی سخت پدید آمد *in the time* of the Caliphate of Abu Bakr the truthful there occurred a severe famine مسطور است که بنای شهرِ قم در سنهٔ دویست و سه هجری شد it is narrated that the foundation of the city of Qum was laid *in* 203 A H در سنِ شصت و پنج سالگی جهان را بدرود کرد *at* the age of sixty five years he bade farewell to the world (ii) by the Accusative, denoting a point of time, as شب دزدی بخانهٔ صعلوکی فقیری رفت *at* night a thief went to the house of a poor mendicant بامداد پگاه از دروازهٔ طاوقچی بیرون شدیم *at* break of day we came out by the gate of Tawaqchi: (iii) by the use of چون as چون شب آمد سفره در کشیدند *when the night came* they spread the table-cloth; چون آمدند او را مرده یافتند *when they came* they found him dead (iv) by the Dative with به as باندک زمانی حاضر می شود *in a little while* it will be ready پدرش قریب به عید رحلت یافت his father died just *about* the Id

23 The preposition در may be used—(i) to denote *place*, as بنده در شهرِ کاشان زائیده شدم I was born *in* the town of Kashan نقدینهٔ خود را در استرِ کلاهِ خود پنهان کردم I secreted my cash *under* the linings of my cap از گفتار و رفتارش تأثیری کلّی در دلم پیدا شد from his words and behaviour a great impression was produced *in* my mind: (ii) to denote *time*, as در روزِ نوروز خواستم بپادشاه ‹ ، پیشکش کنم *on* Newyear's Day I wished to make a present to the king بهمراهیِ شاهزاده در وقتِ معیّن داخلِ مشهد شدیم *at* the appointed time we entered Mashed in the Prince's company (iii) to signify the

Object, as ز تو آيتي درس آموختن from thee the teaching *me* a verse (iv) to form phrases by the repetition of a word, so as to denote *excess* (كثرت), as قطار در قطار آهو a very large number of deer , دشت در دشت مرد a numerous army , كوه در كوه لاله mountain-fuls of tulips . (v) to form adjective phrases, as مسافر پا در ركاب a traveller foot-in-stirrup (i e ready to start)

24. The principal idiomatic uses of the word 'كار' are - (i) بكار نمودن to apply (oneself) to business (ii) بكار خوردن to attend to an affair, to be of use in an affair (iii) چه كار دارم what have I to do with it ? (iv) بچه كار or بچكاره to what (profitless) end ? (v) توچه كارة what art thou worth ? (vi) دست بكار شدن to undertake a work (vii) كارنداري thou hast nothing to do with it

25 In ordinary speech, the particle كه is often *superfluously* used, as من كه نمي فهمم I do not understand . بخدا كه حالا ميروم با همين قمه رودهاش را در مي آورم by God ! I will at once go and rip out his entrails with this dagger , عيب كه ندارد it does not signify

26 Compounds formed with بي (equivalent to the prefix *un* or the affix *less* in English) are — بي آبرو dishonourable, بي اختيار without choice , بي آدب impolite , بي آزار without trouble , بي اعتبار not respected , بي اندازة beyond measure , بي انصاف unjust , بي باك fearless , بي بر fruitless , بي پروا without care , بي تاب faint , بي تحاشا precipitate , بي تدبير without discernment , بي ترتيب irregular , بي توشة without provision , بي توفيق without grace , بيجا improper , بي جان life-less , بيچارة helpless , بيچون incomparable , بي حساب countless , بيدريغ undeniable,

merciless بيدل dumb بي شمار innumerable ; بي شرم shameless بي قياس without deceit بيدريغ spiritless or infamous بي ملّ و عش incalculable بيگاه untimely بيكران immense بيمروّت inhuman بيچارہ helpless بيدرك stupid and several others.

27 It is idiomatic to omit است, the third person singular ending of the Present Perfect (ماضي قريب), as بنفشہ لرکی گل کردہ the bed of narcissus *has* bloomed سيب هم غنچہ آورده the apple also *has* budded

28 The particle را may denote—(i) the Direct Object as ترا زدم I struck you (ii) the Indirect Object as ايشانرا پول بدہ I give them some money (iii) the Dative of the Possessor as اين چراغرا چہ فائدہ what is the advantage of this lamp? (iv) the meaning of (*at in*) as شب را بہ بستان با يكي از دوستان اتفاق صحبت افتاد *at* night I happened to be in the garden with a friend (v) exchange, as پنجاه روپيہ را اسب با ساز و يراق خريدم *for* fifty rupees I bought the horse with harness &c and (vi) the cause as قضا را پدرش بمرد by the decree of God his father died

29. There are several Transitive Verbs in English, of which the Persian equivalents require a preposition to express the object; as to abhor—(از) نفرت ورزيدن يا متنفّر شدن to accuse—(بر) بهتان بستن يا تهمت كردن to acknowledge—(به) معترف بودن to admire (a thing)—(از چيزي) حيرت بردن to annihilate—(از) دمار بر آوردن to ask—يا سوال كردن (از) پرسيدن to assault, attack—(بر) حملہ بردن to befriend—(از) مهرباني كردن (بر) يا دوستي كردن to beg beseech—(از) التماس داشتن (از) يا استدعا آوردن (بر) to believe—(از) معتقد داشتن

to come to know—(از) ملاقت شدن, to compassionate (به) ترحّم کردن, to conquer (بر) غالب آمدن, to consider (در) تامّل نمودن, to consult (a person)—(با کسی) کنکاش نمودن, to deride—(بر) استهزاء نمودن, to dust—(از) گرد تکانیدن, to enjoy (از) متمتّع شدن, to envy—(بر) حسد یا رشک بردن, to evade (one's business or duty)—(از کار خود) تغافل نمودن, and to excell—(بر) سبقت بردن

5 Jamshid—II

The early part of the reign of this prince was prosperous beyond all example, but immersed in luxury, he at last forgot that source from whence his good fortune flowed, and proclaimed himself a deity, directing his statues to be multiplied that the Persians might adore the image of their king, as the dispenser of all earthly good. This act of daring impiety disgusted his subjects and encouraged the Syrian prince, Zohak, to invade Persia. The unfortunate Jamshid fled before a conqueror, who was deemed by all, the instrument of Divine vengeance The wanderings of the exiled monarch are wrought into a tale, which is among the most popular in Persian romance His first adventure was in the province of Seistan, where the daughter of the ruling prince was led to fall in love with him, and to contract a secret marriage, but the unfortunate Jamshid was pursued through Seistan, India, and China by the agents of the implacable Zohak, by whom he was at last seized and carried before his cruel enemy like a common malefactor. Here his miseries closed, for, after enduring all that proud scorn could inflict upon fallen greatness, he was placed between two boards and sawn asunder with the bone of a fish

In the early part of the reign of (در اوایلِ سلطنت) Jamshid the world (عالم) extremely (نهایت) populous (معمور) and the people (رعیت) exceedingly (بهایت) well-off (آباد) was But in

luxury (حرص کلرانی) and kingly pomp (بو لی ساقی) having been immersed (مستغرق شده) at last (دآخر) the real source of his good fortune (منبع حقیقی اقبال بعد حرص را) that is (یعنی) the holy essence of God (ذات پاک یزدان را) he forgot (فرامو ش کرد) and the wind of pride (باد غرور) in the head (سر) having twisted (پیچ نه) he began to lay claim to divinity (دعوای خدائی آغاز نهاد) and commanded (حکم داد) so that (تا) images (تمثالها) in (=from 1) his likeness (صورت او) having made (ساخته) they ordered (امر کردند) so that him (او را) the dispenser of all earthly good (مقسم همه نعمتهای جهان) having considered (دانسته) his images (را) they may adore (سجده و ستایش کنند) This daring impiety (کفر بلانه) the cause of the distrust of the people (مایهٔ بدرائی رعیت) having become (شده) Zohak (ضحاک را) who the sovereign of Syria (فرمانروای شام) was they stirred up (برانگیختند) so that against (بر) Persia (ایران) he led an army (لشکرکشید) The unfortunate Jamshid (جمشید بد روز) when (چون) the power of resistance against (of) that conquering king (طاقتِ معارضت آن شاه مظفّر) that all men (همه مردمان) him the instrument of Divine vengeance (آلت دست جبّار منتقم) considered (دانستند) in himself (در خویش) he did not see (ندید) having become fleeing (گریزان گشته) face to the desert (روی بصحرا) he placed (نهاد) The tale of the wandering of this exiled monarch (حکایتِ گردش این شاه غریب الوطن) of the well known fables of Persia is (از افسانه هایِ مشهورِ ایرانست) The first adventure (=event واقعه) that over him (بروی) passed ([illegible]) in Seistan ([illegible]) was There (در آنجا) the daughter of the

ruling prince (= governor حاکم) him having seen (دیده) in the net of his love (در دام محبتش) captive (گرفتار) she became (گشت) and contracted a secret marriage with him (در خفیه با سطالة نکاح وی در آمد) But (و لیکن) when the agents of the implacable Zohak (گماشتگان ضحاک بیرحم) pursued him (تعاقبش کردند) from Seistan having fled (گریخته) to India (بهند) and from India to China (بچین) he went (رفت), till at last (اخرالامر) him, having seized (دستگیر نموده) like (مثل) one of the common malefactors (مجرمان عامّه) before his cruel enemy (نزد دشمن خونخوارش) they carried (بردند) Here (در اینجا) all his miseries (خواری و شقاوتش) to end (به پایان) reached (رسید), because (چه) after having endured the violence and molestation that (بعد از متحمّل بودن جور و جفاهائیکه) from the hand of the proud enemy (از دست دشمن متکبّر), it was possible (ممکن بود) that to fallen great people (به بزرگان افتاده حال) may reach (برسد) him between (درمیان) two board (تخته) having placed (نهاده) with the bone of a fish (باستخوان ماهی) they sowed (ارّه کردند)

NOTES

30 After verbs of '*ordering*' and the like, تا followed by a Preterite (ماضی مطلق) shows that the order given was immediately carried into effect, as فرمود تا غلامرا بدریا انداختند he ordered and they threw the slave into the sea پادشاه امر کرد تا او را در زندانی نهادند the king commanded and they put him into a prison while تا followed by an Aorist (مضارع) implies that the *result* of the order is not to be made known but merely *its object*, as حکم کرد تا پایش سوراخ کنند he gave orders to bore

a hole in his nose بفرمود تا دزد را در زندان محبوس کنند he ordered them to imprison the thief

In the last construction که may be used instead of تا, as حاکم فرمود که دستش ببرند the governor ordered them to cut off his hands.

31 (a) Temporal clauses (or clauses denoting time) take the Preterite when the action is to be marked as a *fact* as چون دوست بخانهام در آمد وی را بجای صدر بنشاندم when my friend entered my house, I seated him in the foremost place, رفیق چون این سخن بشنید بهم بر آمد when (my) companion heard this speech, he grew angry; اندیشناک همی رفتم تا روز بلند شد he kept on journeying full of anxious thought till the day was advanced

(b) When the action is to be marked as *prospective* (i.e., merely contemplated as a future contingency) or *general* they take the Aorist, as اینجا بنشین تا ترا پیش خداوند تیر برم sit here until I shall take you before the lord of the arrow تا جان در تن دارم مهر و وفای شما را فراموش نکنم as long as I shall live, I shall not forget your kindness and fidelity, هرگاه چشم من بر طاهر میافتد از حالی پرملالش دلتنگ می شوم whenever my eye lights upon Tahir I feel compassion at his afflicted condition هرگاه که خر کباب شود شغال سبلت سیخ کند whenever an ass is roasted the jackal makes a spit of his whiskers.

(c) When the principal clause is *negative* the prospective action being made dependant upon some foregoing condition, both clauses must be negative, as تا گرسنگی بر ایشان غالب نشود چیزی نخورند until hunger overcomes them they will not eat any

thing, حوش نخورم و حوش نخوابم تا ترا بحق تو برسانم I will neither eat nor sleep in peace until I restore you to your rights

32 The particle چون may be used (i) to denote *time*, as چون بار گشت خیاط را در آنجا ندید *when* he came back he did not find the tailor there, چون روز قدری بالا آمد مردم بآمد و شد شروع کردند *when* the day advanced a little, the people began to stir about (ii) to denote the *cause*, as چون این حالت را شگون نیک نمی گرفتم پیش از پیش رفتن خیلی ملاحظه کردم *as* I did not take this to be portentious of good, I passed a long time before I ventured to proceed, چون چیزی خارج عادت درمیان قوم بنی اسرائیل ظهور پیوسته است البته صاحبی برای ایشان ظهور خواهد کرد *as* something extraordinary has taken place among the Jews, a leader is sure to appear in their midst (iii) to show *comparison*, as افسوس که چنین صورت من چون آفتاب و رخسارهٔ من چون گل گلاب از چشم تو پوشیده است alas, that this *sun-like* appearance and *rose-like* cheek of mine are hidden from thy sight (iv) in the sense of why (چرا) in interrogative sentences, as چون نروم که شاه طلب فرموده است *why* should I not go, the king having called me?

33 وي, the Turanian form of the Pronoun او, is more commonly used in the Oblique cases than in the Nominative case, as منوچهر ویرا نیز بجنگ آورده ببرادر ملحق ساخت Manuchehr, challenging him also to battle, made (him join his brother (in death) از قضا دست دلاک خطا کرد و سر وي مجروح گردید by chance the barber's hand slipped and his head was wounded. از وي تفصیل این راز را پرسید he enquired of him the explanation

of this mystery حجّاج دو هزار درهم بوی انعام داد Hajjaj gave a reward of two thousand *dirhams* to him: چرا بوی حسن باشد و در من عیب why does it constitute an excellence in him while it is a defect in me?

34. Purpose may be expressed—(i) by the conjunction تا introducing a subordinate *clause* as ایلچیان فرستادند تا مشورت کنند they sent ambassadors that they might take counsel: (ii) by برای with infinitive, as ایلچیان از برای کردن مشورت فرستادند they sent ambassadors for the purpose of taking counsel: (iii) by the present participle (اسم حالیه) in a future sense as ایلچیان مشورت کنان فرستادند they sent ambassadors taking counsel.

35 *(a)* Final clauses (or clauses denoting purpose) take the Aorist (مضارع) in future time as بفرمایم تا منادی کند I will order that he may make a proclamation به خیّاط بده تا رفو کند give (it) to the tailor that he may darn (it) بگو آب تنک بپاشد که زمین گل نشود tell (him) to sprinkle water in small quantities that the ground may not become soft

(b) In sentences where the preceding clause refers to past time the final clause may take either a Past tense or an Aorist according as the purpose of the action is regarded as achieved or otherwise, as از زیر بغلم گرفتند تا بسر بینه آوردند they took hold of me by the arm-pit so that they brought me to the place of undressing در میان مردم دعوی می انداخت تا خود مرافعه کند he encouraged people to go into disputes so that he might

decide them متحیر ایستادند تا ببینند که چیز است they stood transfixed in astonishment to see what the affair was

Sometimes, however, the Past Imperfect may be idiomatically used, as یک تن از ایشان زنده نماند که خبر بولایت ایشان بردی not a soul of them remained alive to carry the news to their own country

36 چه may be used (i) as a Relative Pronoun, as هرچه دیر نپاید دل بستگی را نشاید that which is not durable does not deserve attachment آنچه گفتی بکار بیار bring into action that which thou saidst (ii) as an Interrogative, as این چه چیز است what thing is this? در قفس چه جانور است what creature is there in the cage? این چه کاره آدم است what is the business of this man? (iii) to introduce an exclamatory sentence as چه سختیها دیدم what hardships have I suffered! چه صاحب کمال شخصی است how perfect a man he is! (iv) as a conjunction to show *cause*, as محلی نگذاشت چه خود را قابل خطاب او نمی پنداشت he paid no attention, because he did not consider himself worthy of being addressed by him تکلیف مرا پسندید چه خیر خود را در آن دید he approved of my idea (or action) for he foresaw his own gain therein (v) to show *contempt*, as او چه قیمت دارد what is his worth? این چه آدم است what sort of a fellow is this?

6 The Lion and the Hare—I

There was once a fierce lion that lived in a mountain. He was so hungry and so fierce that he was continually destroying the other animals till at last they were afraid that

they would *all* be destroyed. So the animals called a meeting in order to discuss what measures should be taken to put an end to this dreadful state of affairs After a good deal of talk, they made up their minds to send a deputation to the lion and to point out that it was useless to slay so many animals at a time while he only ate one So after a good deal of hesitation a number of the animals went to the lion s den and begged to be allowed to address him The lion who happened to be in a good temper received them favourably ' What is it, my friends ? " he enquired. If it please Your Majesty " they said in humble tones, ' we have come to propose an arrangement for Your Majesty's comfort and convenience." Well, what is it ?" responded the lion. "It is this, Your Majesty " they replied. Instead of giving Your Majesty all the trouble of searching for your food, we propose to supply it every day at your house, in future. "That sounds very reasonable, said the lion but I do not quite understand how the matter is to be arranged Will you please explain ? " "It is this, Your Majesty " they replied "We shall draw lots among ourselves, and the animal on whom the lot falls will be sent to your Majesty s house where you may deal with him as you please." "This seems an excellent idea," replied the lion 'but take care that my wants are properly supplied or there will be trouble. "Your Majesty may rely upon us," replied the deputation. And then, after saluting the lion respectfully they withdrew

Once upon a time (یکی) a lion fierce (درنده) in the forest of a mountain (بیشهٔ کوهی) lived (منزل داشت) and so (چنان) furious (متغیر) and hungry (پُرجوع or پُرحرص) he was that continually (مدام) the other animals (حیوانات دیگر را) he was destroying (هلاک همی ساخت) till (تا) at last (بالاخره) a great fear (هراسی) upon them dominant (مستولی) became (شد) lest (مبادا) all of them (را) he may destroy (هلاکشان سازد) Because of this (بنا براین) a meeting (مجلسی) they arranged (ترتیب دادند), so that with one another (با یکدیگر) consultation

(مشورت) making (کنان) for the purpose of (از براي) the removal of this dreadful state of affairs (دفع این صورت خطرناک) stratagem (حیلهٔ) they may do (نمایند) and a remedy (چارهٔ) they may seek (بجویند) After (بعد از) a good deal of talk (قیل و قالِ بسیار) firm (قائم) on that (بر آن) they became (شدند) that a body of deputed persons (یک دستهٔ مأمورین را) to the presence of the lion (بحضورِ شیر) having sent (فرستاده) in his service (بخدمتِ وي) they may submit (معروض دارند) that when more than one game (بیش از یک شکار) he does not eat (نوش جان نفرماید), then (پس) every occasion (هر دفعه) the taking away of so many lives (ستاندنِ چندین جانها) what use (چه سودي) it may have (دارد). Therefore (لهذا) after a good deal of hesitation (تردّدِ بسیار) a number of the animals (دستهٔ جانوران) having ventured (جرأت نموده) to the lion's den (به مغارهٔ شیر) they went and from him permission of speech (اجازتِ تکلّم) they begged (خواستند) As (چون) that day the temperament of the lion (طبیعتِ شیر) towards good temper (بخوش مزاجی) happened to be (اتّفاق افتاده بود) them with kindness (بنوازش) and liberality (کرم) he received (پذیرفت) and with patronising condescension (با التفاتِ بزرگانه) he enquired (پرسید) that O friends, what is it (چه چیز است)? With hundred humiliation (عجز) and supplication (نیاز) they submitted, that on the opinion bright of His Majesty (در رائيِ منیرِ اعلیحضرت) may it not remain hidden (مخفي نماند) that the coming of us the slaves (آمدنِ ما بندگان) at the gate of state (به درِ دولت) with this purpose (باین غرض) is and enough (بس) that for the sake of (براي) the comfort

and convenience of the kingly personality of exalted attributes (آرام و آسایش ذات ملک صفات جهانداری) a proper arrangement (مناسب تدبیری) may appear (بظهور پیوندد). The lion respohd ing (اجابت کنان) said well (خوب) wha is it that you are say ing (می گوئید)? They represented (التماس نمودند) that thy sacrifice (موالی) may we be (شویم)! our object (مدّعای ما) this is that for the searching of your own food (برای [illegible] آذوقه خود) to Your Majesty (ملک عالم را) it is necessary (باید) hence-forth (بعد ازین) any trouble (هیچ زحمتی) may not reach (نرسد), but rather (بلکه) we wish (می خواهیم) in future (از این باز) daily (هر روز) it (را) at the gate of state (بردولت) we may make ready (حاضر سازیم) The lion said your words (سخنهای شما) very reasonable (خیلی معقول) is appearing (می نماید) but I do not understand (نمی فهمم) this matter (امر) how (بچه طور) may come to pass (رو بدهد). More clearly (واضح تر) say ye (بگوئید). They said in this way (بدین طور) that among ourselves (درمیان خود ما) we shall draw lots (قرعه بیندازیم) and the animal (حیوانرا) that the lot (قرعهٔ فال) upon him they may strike (زنند) to the gate of state we shall send (ارسال), so that whatever (هرچه) in the holy temper (مزاج اقدس) will come (خواهد آمد) act you (عمل بفرمائید) The lion said this an idea (خیالی) is excellent (احسن) but take care (خبردار باشید) and properly (بطور مناسب) in supplying my want (برفع حاجتم) endeavour (بکوشید), or (وگرنه) for you (برای شما) very bad (خیلی بد) will pass (خواهد گذشت). All of them with one tongue (بیک زبان) said : thy sacrifice may

we be ! the odoriferous kingly mind (حواطرِ عاطرِ شهریاري) composed (حمع) let be (باشد) , we servants (ما سدگاں) from our prómise (عهدِ حویش) will not turn away (برسمي گرديم) , and after that in the service of the lion slave-like obeisance having performed they withdrew (بار گشتند)

NOTES

37 Consecutive Clauses (or clauses showing result) may be expressed—(i) by تا , as بفرمود تا علام را به دریا انداختند he gave an order (with the result) that they threw the slave into the sea (ii) by که in the resultant clause, preceded by آں قدر or ایں قدر 'to such a degree,' چناں 'so or so great,' همچو 'such, in such a way', or چنداں 'to such an extent' , as در نفسِ حود آں قدر قوّت و سرعت مي شناسم که در خدمتِ مرداں یارِ شاطر باشم I am conscious of so great strength and activity in myself that I should be an active companion in the service of men , ایں قدر شد که بعد از نیم ساعت حال آمد 'it was to such an extent that after half an hour he came to himself , بنیادِ عدالت و انصاف را چناں محکم کرد که نامش تا قیامت برقرار ماند so firmly did he lay the foundation of justice and equity, that his name would endure till the Day of Judgment , حال همچو شده است که نیم تنهٔ پنجاه و شصت تومانی براي زنِ تو سوقات بفرستد now 'such is the case that she sends a jacket worth some fifty or sixty tomans as a present to your wife , نه چندانکه انتقام از حد نگذرد not to such an extent that revenge should exceed due bounds (iii) by للحرم 'necessarily, as a necessary result', as للحرم دشمني صعب روي نمود as a necessary result a fierce enemy arose

38. Examples of Compounds formed with پُر full—are پرنم tearful پرباد inflated پربار freighted pregnant پرچانگی fulness of chin boasting پرحذر cautious پرخطر hazardous; پرخوری gluttony پردرد painful پردل intrepid پرزور powerful; پرشعور wise پرفائده edifying advantageous پرقوّت mighty پرکار skilful پرکینه malicious پرگو talkative پرهنر skilful.

39 مبادا (may it not be, lest) may be used—(i) with the Doubtful Past (ماضی شکّی), as مبادا تا تو برسی دیگری این لقمه را ربوده باشد lest before you arrive some one else might have snatched away the morsel (ii) with the Aorist (مضارع) as مبادا آنچه بمن رسید بجناب عالی نیز برسد lest what happened to me should happen to your honour also (iii) after verbs of *fearing* with the Aorist, as می ترسم که مبادا در این حالت بمیرد I fear lest he shall die in this state ترسید که مبادا در شب آمده اسبش را ببرند he feared lest they should come at night and carry off his horse (iv) to express doubt in the sense of *perhaps* as می ترسم که مبادا درخت از حکم جنابعالی نیاید I am afraid that *perhaps* the tree will not come at your honour's command.

40 The Reciprocal Pronouns (ضمائر مشترکه) are همدیگر and یکدیگر formed by prefixing هم and یک to دیگر as در عادات آنان باهمدیگر بسیار کم مانا بودند in habits they resembled each other very little, ما هم مثل آنها همدیگر را دوست خواهیم گرفت we will take each other as friends like them مدتی بایکدیگر سرگوشی کردند for a short time they whispered with one another ریش و گیس یکدیگر را کندیم و برباد دادیم we plucked out each other's beard and hair and destroyed (them) همه تودیع یکدیگر بکنند let all bid adieu to one another

41 The particle با is used—(i) in the sense of '*with*', as اسبي بازينِ زرّين خريدم I bought a horse with gilt saddle در جيبِ چپ قلمداني بود با آئينهٔ كوچک و يک شانه in the left pocket there was a pen-case with a small mirror and a comb با غرور از اسب فرود آمد with pride he alighted from the horse (ii) in the sense of '*by means of*', as گروهي طفل را با خطبهٔ بليغ تحريض و تحريک نمودم by means of an eloquent address I excited and instigated a band of youths, با دستار و عبا و شال خود را بصورتِ آخوندان آراستم by means of a turban, cloak and shawl I dressed myself in the garb of a priest, ما با دست غذا ميخوريم ايشان با قاشق we eat food by means of our hands, they by means of spoons (iii) in the sense of '*although, inspite of*', as با آنكه بسيار فهماندم مگر نه فهميد although I explained much (to him) yet he did not understand (iv) in the sense of '*to, towards*', as حرفهايكه با حاجي صالح ميزديد همه را مو بمو تا آخرش شنيده ام I have heard all the words, letter by letter, till the end, that you spoke to Haji Salih, گمان كرديم كه با ما يار خواهد شد we thought he would be friendly towards us (v) in the sense of '*possessed of*', as با آن سر و وضع مردي مشارٌ اليه بودم *possessed of* such a figure and appearance I was evidently a man of distinction, با آن همه رنگ اين يكرنگي در تو گمان نمي بردند *possessed* of all that pride and dignity, no one would have expected this amiability from you (iv) in the sense of '*with, in company of*', as چون با رفيقِ خويش تنها ماندم گفتم when I was left alone with my friend, I said, پسِ پريروز در عرضِ راهِ تفليس با جانورانِ خود مي آمده است three days ago he was coming with his animals along the Tiflis road (vii) in the

'How much is thy monthly salary ?' He said 'Nothing', این همه هیچ است چون نگذرد all these are of no account, since they are fleeting

(e) In this sense هیچ also occurs in composition with Negative Imperatives to from Compound Nouns, as هیچمدان an ignoramus, هیچمیرز a wastrel, good-for-nothing fellow

44 The idiomatic uses of رو *'face'* are—(i) رو کردن or رو نهادن به to turn towards, attend to, (ii) چشم روي هم گذاشتن to let one's eyes come together, to shut one's eyes to, (iii) روي تخت on the throne, (iv) رو بترقي گذاردن to tend towards improvement, (v) رو دادن to appear, happen, (vi) پا روي پا انداختن to cross the feet, (vii) از روي قاعده according to law, lawfully, properly, (viii) از رويم نرسمي آيد I have not the face to , (ix) هرروشرا مي خواهي مي زند he will strike any one's face you like, he is up to anything, and (x) روبرو كردن to confront

45 Examples of compounds formed with بد *'bad'* are — بد اختر ill-starred, بد انديش malicious بد بخت unfortunate, بد خوي ill-tempered, بد ذات a scoundrel بد رفتاري bad conduct, بد عهد traitor, faithless, بد فرجام of evil tendency, بد كيش irreligious, بد گوهر of evil nature, بد مهر unfriendly, بد نام infamous, بد نما bad-looking, and بد نهاد perfidious

46 The uses of همين *(this same or very)*, the strengthened form of Demonstrative این, may be illustrated thus — (i) من ترا براي همين مطلب خواستم I sent for you for *this* purpose, تو همين قدر اقرار كن ديگران تصديق ميكنند give your evidence to *this* effect, others will confirm it, همين طور لاحق است it is

unjust in *this* way (ii) چنانکه پس گفتند در — ! مرافعه سزار همین طور شهادت بدهید in the judgment hall of the court, give evidence in *the same* manner, just as you have said to me ; من هم بهمین مرا بهمین حالت I also heard to *the same* effect مضمون شنیدم میگذاری میروی thou art going and leavest me in *the same* plight (iii) همین بس روشن است I am *the sole* light of her eyes (iv) همین که نیم تنه حاضر شد میدهی بزرگر بیست و چهار دانه دگمه طلا *as soon as* the jacket is ready you get a goldsmith to make twenty-four gold buttons.

47 List of English Transitive Verbs which require Persian equivalents with Preposition (continued) —

To fear— (از) ترسیدن to forego— (از) دست برداشتن to forgive (a fault)—(از خطاي) در گذر کردن to give up (a task) — (از کاري) برداشتن to govern— (بر) حکمراني کردن to grudge— (بر) حسد بردن to hate— (از) نفرت داشتن to hear (one's word)— (به سخن کسي) گوش دادن to hurt— (به) آزار رسانیدن to ill-treat— (با) بد رفتاري کردن ; to interrogate— از پرسیدن (از) to invade— (بر) حمله کردن to keep (a promise)— (از عهده) برآمدن to master (a subject) — دست یافتن (برمطلب) to meet (any one)— (بکسي) دو چار شدن , to mistrust— (از) متردد بودن to navigate (a river)— کشتي راندن (به رود خانه) to neglect— (از) غافل بودن to oblige (a person)— (برکسي) منت نهادن to overcome (the enemy) — ظفر یافتن (بردشمن)

7. Ispahan

Ispahan, once the capital of Persia, and still its principal city, is placed in the happiest temparature Its inhabitants are strangers to the heat felt during some of the summer months at Shiraz, yet their winter is hardly more severe Excepting a few weeks in the year, the sky is unclouded and serene The rains are not heavy, and the snow seldom lies long on the ground The air is so pure and dry that the brightest polished metal may be exposed to it without being corroded by rust The regularity of the seasons here appears extraordinary to a person accustomed to a more uncertain climate When spring commences, there is no spot in the world where Nature assumes a lovelier garb, the clearness of the streams, the shade of the lofty avenues, the fragrant luxuriance of the gardens, and the verdant beauty of the wide-spreading fields, combine with the finest climate to render it delightful and we are almost disposed to agree with the representation which describes it as having an intoxicating effect upon the senses When seen from a distance, the lofty palaces and the domes of the numerous mosques and colleges in Ispahan, derive additional beauty from being half veiled by shady avenues and luxuriant gardens Though the first impression be weakened by a nearer view, and by contemplating the ruins of former grandeur, enough remains to excite great admiration The fine bridges over the Zainderood are still in good repair, almost all the colleges have been preserved, many of the former palaces are yet perfect, and some new ones have been erected by the governor, as if to tempt the monarch to make this city once more his residence

Ispahan (اصفهان را), which once the capital (پایِ تخت) and still (هنوز) the principal of the cities of Persia is (اوّلِ شهرهای ایرانست), in such a way (چنان) they have founded (وضع کرده اند) that its climate (آب و هوایش) better (بهتر) than (از) all of the cities of this country (جمیع بلادِ این ملک) may be (باشد · The inhabitants of that city (اهلِ آن شهر) with (از)

the heat of Shiraz (گرمي شيراز) that in some of the days of summer (در بعضي از ايام تابستاني) there (در آنجا) may be quite (محض) strangers (نا آشنا) are and its winter (زمستانش) also (نيز) probably (غالب) from that place (از آنجا) more severe (سخت تر) is not (نمي شود) The whole year (همه سال) excepting a few week (بجز هفتۀ چند) the sky (آسمان) uncloud ed (= clear صاف) and serene (روشن) is. Its rain (بارانش) never heavy is (هرگز سنگين نيست) and snow (برف) seldom (كمتر) on the ground (بر روي زمين) long (مدتي) lies (= remains بماند). The air (هوا) to such an extent (بقدري) pure (صاف) and dry (خشك) is, that every kind of polished metal (هرجنس از فلزهاي صيقلي را) in that they may expose (گذارند) and rust (زنگ) it will not catch (نخواهد گرفت). The regularity of (نظم و نسق) its four seasons (فصول اربع آن) happens to be such (چنان واقع است) that to inhabitants of the countries of more various and uncertain climate (به ساكنين بلادهاي آب و هواي مختلف و غير معتدل تر) extraordinary (نادر) appears (مي نمايد) In the beginning of the spring (در اوائل بهار) the natural appearance of this spot (صورت طبعي اين موضع) of the kind of clear streams (از قبيل رود هاي صافي) and shining avenues (خيابانهاي درخشان) and gardens (باغهاي) replete with odoriferous herbs (مملو از رياحين) and wide fields (مرغزار هاي) green (سبز) and pleasant with (با) a climate than all better to such an extent (بنوعي) growth (نشو و نما) is susceptible of (پذيرد) that than all the spots of (مواضع) the surface of the earth (روي زمين) lovelier (مرغوب تر) it becomes (گردد) and one might say (ميتوان گفت) that on human sense

(درحواسِ انسانی) intoxicating effect (اثرِ خمر) it has (دارد) From distance (از دور) the lofty palaces (سراهای عالی بنیان) and the domes of mosques and colleges (گنبدهای مساجد و مدارس) numerous (کثیر العدد) somewhat (قدری) veiled (پنهان) behind (در پسِ) the trees of shady avenues (اشجارِ خیابانهای سایه دار) and verdant gardens (باغهای سبزه زار) has an additional beauty (نمایشی دیگر دارد) From near (نزدیک) the same appearance (نمایش را) it has not (ندارد) on account of (بسبب) the many ruins (خرابهای بسیار) that from ancient remains (آثار قدیمه) exists (درجاست) but (ولی) still so much as (بقدریکه) the cause of wonder (موجبِ تعجب) and the focus of admiration (موردِ تحسین) may be (شود) is remaining (باقیست) The fine bridges over the Zaindarood (پلهای خوش وضع زاینده رود) yet (هنوز) in good repair (در وضع سابق) remaining (باقی) and all the colleges (جمیع مدارس) preserved (برپا) and many of the former palaces (بسیاری از سراهای قدیم سلطنت) still perfect (بالتمام) properly placed (برجا) is (است) and the governor of that city (حاکم آن بلد) some (چند) new lofty palaces (ایوانهای رفیع نو) also has erected (بنا کرده است) as if (مثل اینکه) he wishes (بخواهد) the monarch (پادشاه را) may incline (بر سرِ میل آرد) that this city (را) once more (بارِ دیگر) his residence (= capital دار الخلافه) he may make (بسازد)

NOTES.

48 The uses of هنوز may be illustrated thus (1) شام هنوز حاضر نیست the dinner is not *yet* ready, سرِمن هنوز درد می کند my head *still* aches, هنوز ادّعائی هم با من دارد he *even* claims

امّا هنوز آن علامات باقی است و من باقی نشده ام something more of me but *still* the symptoms continue and I am alive (ii) امّا دریا چون هنوز تلاطم زیاد داشت هر چه سعی نمودند آن کشتی را بپهلوی ما متّصل کنند نمی شد but as the sea was *still* very rough however much they tried they could not bring the steamer side by side with ours; (iii) [illegible] هنوز راهِ خود طی نکرده بودم که شام به نزدیک I had not *yet* finished traversing the road when the evening approached.

49. The idiomatic uses of اهل are — (i) اهل اسلام a true believer, (ii) اهل بیت (or اهل خانه) family; (iii) اهل حرفت و صنعت the artisans and craftsmen (iv) اهل علم the learned (v) اهل لندن the people of London (vi) اهل مجلس the members of an assembly (vii) اهل مجالس the dramatis personae (viii) اهل قلم the functionaries (especially of finance) (ix) اهل این کار نیستم I am not the person to do this thing

50. (*a*) The Arabic Cardinals especially the units, are generally used in Persian with Arabic words only, as الانجیل اربعه the four gospels.

(*b*) The Arabic Ordinals are more commonly used with names of kings, as اکبرِ اوّل Akbar I عبّاس ثانی Abbas II

51 'Modest assertions are introduced by—(i) توان گفت or اگر باینحال میتوان گفت که کلّیه هوای خراسان خوش و لکن سالم است as میتوان گفت but inspite of this *one might say* that after all the climate of Khorasan is fine and healthy الارتفاعِ زمین بحدیست که می توان گفت زمستانِ آنجا با پائیزِ بلادِ دور و حوالی دریاکنار شروع می شود the elevation of the land has such an effect, that *one might say that*

its winter begins just when the autumn of the distant and neighbouring countries does or (ii) گویا ٭ از سواحلِ عرب تاں کوہ کوہ رملهاي حفیف مي آرد چنانچه گویا ابری بر روی هوا ایستاده است from the Arabian coasts it brings mountains of light sands, such that *as though* a cloud is hanging by the air, نزدیکتر شدم دیدم که گویا از پیش دیده ام when I approached nearer, I found that *as though* I had seen him before, گویا کاریکه خان با نزدیکانش مي کند بچشمِ خود نمي بیند *as though* he does not observe with his own eyes the Khan's treatment of his relatives or (iii) توگفتي or توگوئي as توگفتي فیلانِ شیرافگنند thou wouldst have said, they were lion-defeating elephants, چنان بسرعت رسید توگوئي که برمرکبِ باد آمد so soon did he reach, thou wouldst say, that he came riding on the wind

52 The particle 'بر' may be used—(i) in the sense of '*on, upon*', as براسپ سوار شدم I got *on* the horse تاج برسرش نهادند they placed the crown *upon* his head, عاقبت از آنچه مي ترسیدیم بر سرِ ما آمد at last all that we feared came *upon* us, این سخن بر من اثر بزرگ افتاد this word produced a great effect *upon* me دل بر آن نهاده است he had placed his heart *upon* that, اگر باور ندارید بر ایشان حمله آورید if you do not believe, make an attack *upon* them (ii) in the sense of '*to, towards*'; as سگ را بر دزد سر دادم I let loose the dog towards the thief, صیاد باز را بر کبک سر مي دهد the hunter is letting loose the hawk towards the partridge (iii) to show '*quantity or measure*'; as این جامه ایست که بر قامتِ او دوخته شده this is a garment sewn to fit the measurement of his stature (iv) to form adverbial phrases of the form of دمش بر دمش گرد

زبر بزیر — برگرد *etc* as سربازها دوش بردوش جنگیدند the soldiers fought shoulder to shoulder (v) to form attributive phrases (being inserted between two nouns) as کلاه برسر having the the cap on the head جان برلب having the soul on the lip, کفش برپا having the shoe on the foot سر بر کف having the head on the palm (vi) as a Substantive, as صبر تلخ است ولیکن بر شیرین دارد patience is bitter but has a sweet *fruit*, جامهٔ ابریشمی در بر a silken garment on the *breast*

53 Two or more Impersonal (or inanimate) Subjects take the Verb in the singular as فوّارها و باغها و خیابانهای خوب زیاد بود the fountains, the parks, and the beautiful avenues *was* numerous تلخی و خوشی و زشت و زیبا بگذرد bitterness and happiness, the ugly and the beautiful, (all) *passes* away بلندی بالا و فراخی شانه و باریکی میانش آشنا بنظر آمد his tall stature broad shoulders, and thin waist appeared to be known to me

54. The letter ب (or بـ) is used—(i) to denote *place* or *receptacle* as صبح بحمّام رفته دست و پا و ریش بحنا بستم in the morning I went to the bath and tinged my hands feet and beard with *hena* گویا شما تازه بطهران آمده اید you are evidently newly arrived in Tehran? این مژده به بانوی عالم رسانیدم I gave this good news to the lady دیگر بزبانش نیاوردند they did not bring him any more on the tongue (ii) to denote *purpose* or *cause* as بدیدن او رفتم I went to see him من به کشتن او هرگز راضی نمی‌شوم I would never consent to his death آبادانی ملک به انصاف است the flourishing of a country depends on justice (iii) to point out *attendant circumstances* as در آنجا بشب رسیدم I arrived

there in safety , ناري بهمراهيش قرار دادم at last I settled to accompany him , كدخداى ده بنفسه بخدمت پرداخت the chief of the village himself attended upon us (iv) to signify the *instrument* or *means* , as ضعيف است به عصا راه ميرود as he is weak, he walks with the aid of a stick , دولت انگليس ملك هند را به شمشير گرفته the English Government has conquered India with the sword , همه براههاي ديگر بخت رسيده اند they all have attained to fortune in other ways (v) to express an *adjuration* or *oath* , as آغا ترا بخدا رحمي بمن بيچارا كن O agha, for pity's sake, have compassion on me, an unfortunate man , ترا بانفاس پيغمبر حقيقت واقع را بيان كن by the beard of the prophet, tell the real truth بسر من بنان و نمك پادشاه بگو به بيام چه قدر گرفتي by my head, by the bread and salt of the king, tell me how much you took , مرا بقبر پدرت ببخش by your father's tomb forgive me , بمرگ خودت كه من درين خصوص به هيچ وجه تقصيركار نيستم by your death, in this matter I have done no wrong in any way , بارواح پدرم كه هرگز نخواهم بخشيد by the soul of my father, never will I forgive him (vi) to show *nearness* , as هرچه زود تر خود را بدار السلام بغداد رسانده سلامت مانم having made myself reach Baghdad, the abode of safety, as early as possible, I may remain safe , هر دو بايستي بيك ده وارد شويم both of us must happen to arrive at the same village , تا بسرحد ممالك شمالي برسي چها برسرت آيد till you reach the frontier of the northern kingdom how many things may happen to you . (vii) to couple words together , as قدم بقدم step by step , رو برو face to face , روز بروز day by day ; دم بدم every moment , رنگ برنگ of various colours , در بدر from door to door , سر بسر

entirely دست بدست from hand to hand, successive: (viii) to indicate *the commencement* as بنام خدا می کنم ابتدا in the name of God I begin اول دفتر بنام ایزد دانا و خدای توانا the first book (is) in the name of the wise and mighty God بنام جهاندار جان آفرین in the name of God, the Creator of the world (ix) to signify *the end* as ز مشرق بمغرب from the east to the west عرش تا بفرش from the highest heaven to the earth از دهن آنها آب بحوض میریزد from their mouths water flows into the basin (x) to show *the Indirect Object* as باقی را بمن واگذاشت he made over the remainder to me همه را بفروختم و بدو دادم I sold it all and gave (the price) to him اسب را فروخته بهایش را بتو می دهم having sold the horse, I will give you the price (xi) to signify *exchange*, as اسب و زین را بهر قیمتی که باشد بفروشم I will sell the horse and saddle for any price they may bring یک شعرش به دیوانی دیگران می ارزد a single verse of his is worth a whole Diwan of others این اسب را بدویست روپیه خریدم I purchased this horse at two hundred rupees: (xii) to show *resemblance* as باقبال تو در عالم نیست none in the world resembles thee in fortune من خود را بدولاب آبی تشبیه کرده ام I have likened myself to the movement of the water-wheel: (xiii) in the sense of *to according to* as همه عالم بمراد تو باد may all the world be to thy wishes نتیجه اش به امید ما برنیامد its result did not come up to our expectations (xiv) to show *direction*, as چون نزدیک رسید روی بمن کرد when he came near, he turned towards me احمد به دهلی رفته است Ahmad has gone to Delhi.

55 The uses of همان the strengthened form of the demonstrative آن may be illustrated thus (i) بنگالهٔ معالی این اسپها را همان

طور نگاه داشته اند as an example of justice the mill has been preserved in *the same* condition, در پنهان هرچه بود در میدان همان بود he was *the same* in public as well as in private (ii) دیدم همان طور است که خیال کرده بودم I found, it was *even* as I had imagined (iii) جلاهه را تصور این شد که درس گفتن همان سر جنبانیدن است the weaver thought that teaching was *nothing but* nodding the head (iv) بیرون آمدن خون همان مردن برادرم همان as soon as blood flowed out my brother died, گفتن همان بود و اورا از هم دریدن همان as soon as he said this he tore him to pieces

56 The idiomatic uses of the word جا are —(i) بیجا out of place (ii) کار بجا رسانیدن to finish up a matter, to bring a thing to such a pass (iii) جا انداختن to establish (iv) بجا آوردن to fulfil (v) در همچو جاي at such a place

57 List of English Transitive Verbs which require Persian equivalents with Prepositions (continued) —to over-look—اغماض کردن (از) to pass (a river)—گذشتن (از رود خانه) to permeate—سرایت نمودن (در), to persecute—دست درازي کردن (بر), to pity—ترحم یا شفقت نمودن (بر), to question (از) استفسار نمودن, to regret (an act) پشیمان شدن (از کاري), to relish (a thing)—مزه بردن (از چیزي) to require— (از) محتاج بودن to resign (a post) — رخصت گرفتن (از خدمت), to shirk (one's duty)— طفره زدن یا تغافل نمودن (از تکالیف خود) to shun—(از) دوري یا اجتناب نمودن, to slander (a person)—بهتان بستن (برکسی), to subdue (بر) تصرف یافتن; to surpass—(بر) سبقت بردن to trust (any one)—اعتماد کردن (برکسي) to wonder—(بر) عجب ماندن

8 The Lion and the Hare—II

So the new arrangement came into force and every day the beasts drew lots and sent one of their number to the lion who was good enough to devour him. At last it came to the turn of an old hare to furnish the lion's dinner. So off he set. But on the way he said to himself "As I have got to die what is the good of being in a hurry? I may as well take my time." So he sauntered along in a very leisurely way, and when at last he reached the lion's den he found him in a very bad temper at having to wait so long for his dinner. "What is the meaning of this?" roared the lion. "Why are you so late?" "Please Your Majesty," replied the hare, "it is not my fault. As I was coming along I met a lion who stopped me and would not let me go on till I promised to come back to him after letting you know." "What!" said the lion. "Who dares to defy me in this way? Take me to the villain at once and I will teach him a lesson." "This way, Your Majesty," said the cunning hare. And he led the lion to a deep well. "He is down this hole." The lion was too angry to be very wise. He looked down into the well, and seeing his own image reflected in the water, took it for another lion, instantly sprang at it, and was drowned in the well.

In this way (بدین طور) that arrangement (= instruction دستور العمل) new (تازه) came into force (اجرا یافته). Then (پس) every day (روز بروز) the beasts (حیوانات) among themselves (مابین خود شان) used to draw lots (قرعه انداختندی) and that one (آن یکی را) in whose name the lot happened to fall (که قرعه بنام او اتفاق افتادی) to the presence of the lion (بحضور شیر) used to sent (ارسال می) and the lion as a mark of royal favour itself (از روی التفات خسروانه) it (را) used to devour (بلعیدی) till (حتی که) at last (آخر الامر) the turn (نوبت) to (به) a hare old (دیرینه) in his own affair (در کار خود) wise (فرزانه) fell (بیفتاد) that the lion's morsel (لقمهٔ شیر) he may become (بگردد)

Then helplessly (ناچار) he set off (راهي شد) , and on the way (در اثناي راه) to himself (باخود) thought (اندیشید) that as (چون) I have no escape from death (مرا از مرگ گریز نیست) to my being in a hurry (زود دویدنم را) what a profit (سودي چه) It befits me (مرا شاید) that I may take my time (تمهل نمایم) and reach as late as possible (هرچه دیرتر بتوانم برسم) Then in a leisurely way (آهسته آهسته) sauntering (تماشاي اطراف و جوانب نموده) on his way (براه خود) he advanced (پیش رفت) , and when at last (آخرکار) to the lion's den (به معارهٔ شیر) he reached (رسید) him very angry (سخت عصبناک) he found (یافت) , because (که) for a long time (دیرها) he had waited for food (انتظار طعام کشیده بود) The lion roared (بغرید) that such-like (همچو) delay (درنگي) what (چه) meaning (معنایي) has (دارد) ? So much (چنین) delay (تاخیر) why (چرا) hast thou done (کرده) ? The hare replied, that round thy head (دور سرت) may I turn (بگردم), Your Majesty (جهان پناه), in this my fault (هیچ تقصیرم) is not (نیست) because (زیراکه) on the way with another lion (باشیر دیگري) we met (دو چار شدیم) who stopped me (که سرراهم را بگرفت) and would not let (نمي خواست بگذارد) I may come (بیایم) here (اینجا) till from the servant (از بنده) a promise (وعده) he took (بگرفت) that after giving information to the holy presence (بعد از اطلاع دادن بحضور اقدس) to him (بنزد وي) I may go back (باز بروم) The lion in a loud voice (بآواز بلند) said what art thou saying (میگوئي) ! who has the daring (کرا جرأتي باشد) that with me (بامن) the power of this opposition (تاب این مزاحمت) he may have (دارد) At once (الان) me to that wicked villain

(به آن قلدرِ شریر) take (راه بنما) that (تا) him such a chastisement (چنان گوشمالی) I may give (بدهم) that an example of the time (عبرتِ زمانه) he may become (بگردد) That cunning hare (خرگوشِ مکّار) said this side (بجانب) bring your nobility (تشریف بیاورید) and the lion (را) to a deep well (به چاهِ عمیقی) having brought (برده) he said down this hole (زیرِ این نقب) he is. The lion who from excess of anger (از شدّتِ خشم) his own understanding (عقلِ خویش را) had lost (گم کرده بود) down into the well (پائینِ چاه) looked (نگاه کرد) and his own reflection (عکسِ خود را) in the water (در آب) having seen (دیده) thought (پنداشت) that another lion it is and instantly (فی‌الفور) at it (بروی) sprang (جست) and at the bottom of the well (در تگِ چاه) he was drowned (غرق شد)

NOTES

58. Some of the idiomatic uses of the word تازه may be illustrated thus (i) حرفِ تازه نیست که گفتنش دشوار باشد it is not a *new* word that it should be difficult to say it یک دسته تیغِ تازه یادگارم داد he gave me a case of *new* razors as a keepsake; (ii) غلامِ تلگرافخانه نانِ تازه حاضر کرد the servant at the telegraph office brought *fresh* bread جانِ تازه بمن دادی thou hast given me a *fresh* life; باغیست مثلِ بهشت و تازه‌تر از "باغِ ارم" it is a garden like paradise and *fresher* than the rose-garden of Iram (iii) چشم می‌بستم زوّارِ تازه رس ببرم I was always on the watch to discover a set of *newly*-arrived pilgrims صد تا باجاقلی تازه سکّه درآورد he brought out a hundered *newly*-coined Dutch dollars; تک مادهٔ کارِ تازه را بخودت می‌دهم I will present thee with a *lately*-

calved cow (iv) یک ستونی دیده شد که تازه یادگار فتح فرانسه می سازند we noticed a column *recently* erected in commemoration of the victory over France, چه حرفی است که مثل تو تازه جوان با کمال در تفلیس خدمتی پیدا نکند what words are these that a perfect *youth in his prime* like you cannot find service in Tiflis? با این سن و سال دختر تازه جوان برای تو شاید نه with your age and years a *youth-ful girl in her prime* is not a fit wife for you

59 Some of the idiomatic uses of the word 'روز' may be illustrated thus (i) روز بروز, as درد کمرم روز بروز شدت گرفت the sprain on my back increased *day by day* (ii) روز روشن, as روز روشن بخانهٔ مثل من آدمی می آید *in broad day light* he comes to the house of a man such as I am (iii) روز تنگ, as درمیان پنبهایش برای روز تنگ پنجاه عدد اشرفی دوخت as a precaution for a *tight day* he sewed fifty ducats into its cotton wadding (iv) سیاه روز, as او کنیزی است سیاه روز she is an *unfortunate* slave girl (v) همه روز, as درمیان کاروان روز همه روز ذکر ترکان بود among the caravan *the whole day long* there was talk about the Turks (vi) روز افزون, as در شیراز مورد احترام روز افزون گشت at Shiraz he became the focus of *daily-increasing* honour (vii) روز نامه نویس, as روز نامه نویسان این ولایت بسیار آزاد هستند the *editors of the newspapers* of this country are extremely free, (viii) بروز دادن یا کردن, as اگرچه توقف اقامت در ایران بروز نمی داد امّا در باطن دشمن شیعیان بود although during his stay in Persia he did not *give out* (his views), yet at heart he was a hater of the Shias حالا من با بدرفتاریهائیکه در ایّام اقتدار بسمت برعیت و نوکر از شما بروز کرده است نباید در باره شغل وزارت را بشما رجوع کنم still I bearing in mind the evil practices which *have been committed in the light of day*

in the affairs of the peasants and officials by you, during the time of your power must not entrust to you a second time the charge of the Vazirship

60. (*a*) The Reflexive Pronoun خود may be added for the sake of emphasis to any of the Personal Pronouns (either the detached or affixed form) as من خود or خود من or من خودم or خودم &c.

(*b*) It may also be used to strengthen a Substantive or a Demonstrative Pronoun as دشمن خود the enemy himself آن خود it itself پادشاه خود the king himself من بنفس خود I myself or it may even be used to intensify itself as خود بخود quite of himself spontaneously

(*c*) It may often be used as equivalent to English *very* denoting identity as آن خود مال گم شده بود that was the very property lost.

61 یکی may either be used as a Substantive, or as an Adjective and in all the cases as یکی از معتمدان خود را بدست خود گردن زد with his own hand he beheaded *one* of his courtiers یکی روز پلنگش بدرد *one* day a leopard will rend him از اینان یکی سر برنمی دارد not *one* of these holds up his head یکی را دوستی بود a *certain one* had a friend

62 ماضی استمراری formed by affixing ی to the Past may be used for actions habitually recurring in past time, as یکی از حکما پسر را نهی کردی از خوردن بسیار one of the philosophers used to forbid his son from eating too much حکایت کریم النفسی را شنیدم هرگاه بنام خدا بخشش کردی دست خود را بوسیدی I heard of a

generous lord that whenever he gave away something in the name of God, he would kiss his own hand.

63. Two or more compound Adjectives or attributive phrases may be used after Substantives or Verbs without being connected by *izáfat* or coupled by a Conjuction, as نیاز مردِ طماعکار شیطان خیالست Niaz in an avaricious man, devilish in ideas, باید یک نیم تنهٔ زری آبی در رشت بدهی بدوزند you must get a blue gold-embroidered jacket made in Rasht, آنجا تیمور آقا تازه جوان - بیست و پنج ساله - خوشگل - پر قوّت - همه بیگزادها را زمین زده there Timur Aqa, in the bloom of youth, twenty five years old, handsome, (and) powerful, threw down all the young nobles, در زیرِ طاقِ شکسته زنی دیدم نیم مرده برروی زمین دراز کشیده under a broken arch I found a female, half dead, stretched upon the ground, ولی روی همرفته آدمی است درِ خانه اش باز - سهل القول - پاکیزه اخلاق - صحبت آرا - خندان - زنده دل - عیش دوست - خوش صحبت - خوش گذران on the whole he is a man, hospitable, obliging, well-behaved, sociable, eloquent, full of life, pleasure-loving, amiable, (and) leading a happy life

64. The various uses of the Infinitive Mood (مصدر) in Persian may be illustrated thus (i) بی این دو نفس کشیدن بر من حرام است without these two (things), it is impossible for me to live, در همچو کاری مزد خواستن خوب نیست it is not proper to ask for reward in such a case as this, خوب کشتن نباشد well, there shall be no killing, دزدی کردن برای ما چه شایستگی دارد what aptitude has robbing for us? (ii) جهتِ آمدنِ من بخانهٔ شما آن بود که من خواهرِ زنِ تو را دوست داشته و میدارم the cause of my coming to your house was this, that I loved and still do love your

sister-in-law Nisa Khanam شما برحق من بدگمان شده خیال کُشتن من افتاده بودید having an evil suspicion of me you fell into the design of killing me ایلچی در وقت خوردن آنها حاضر بوده است The ambassador has been present at the time of eating them (iii) بیک حجر کردن اورا از زحمت خرج بیجای شش ماه دیگر خلاص کردم with one blood-letting I have freed him from the trouble of six months' further needless expense: (iv) از صبح تا شام بنوشتن عزائم و نسخه مشغول شدم from morning till night I was engaged in writing out charms and prescriptions زبان بریدن را نسبت بنشان دادن آن بفرنگی ترجیح می دهند they would prefer to cut off their tongue to showing them to a European (v) مزد طی نا کرده خود را ناخوش کردن کار عاقل ندیدم I did not think it wise to make myself ill before settling the recompense: (vi) دریغ باشد کلمهٔ حکمت با اینها گفتن it would be a pity to speak words of wisdom to them از ابتدا کرد بعرق ریختن و نگاه نیاز آمیز کردن he began to perspire and cast pleading glances (vii) از جواب دادن قاصر نیست she is not wanting in ability to answer

65 Some of the phrases and idioms formed with the word پیش are: (i) پیش از وقت prematurely (ii) کار خود را پیش آوردن to bring one's affair forward (iii) پیش خانه camp equipage sent on before: (iv) این ساعت را پیش کش توست I make thee a present of this watch: (v) پیش خدمت a body servant or waiter: (vi) پیش نماز a person presiding at prayers (vii) پیش نهاد intention: (viii) پیشواز going out to meet a person of distinction (ix) پیش لنگ کردن to trip up (in wrestling) putting the leg forward and throwing the adversary over the head.

66 The uses of چه in forming Interrogative and Exclamatory sentences may be illustrated thus (i) چه مي دانم what do I know? چه نقشي زدة what tricks have you played? چه كني مي خواهي what do you want to do? ميانِ صندوق ميمون چه مي كند what is a monkey doing in the box? (ii) اسم و رسم بچه چيزِ من لازم است for what are name and fame necessary to me? تو بي تقصيريِ خود را بچه دليل اثبات مي كني how dost thou prove thy innocence? (iii) اي مرد بتو چه O man what is it to thee? فال گير و رمّال از براي چه what for (is) a soothsayer or astrologer (necessary)? در صورتيكه كارِ تقدير است بر من تقصيري چه when it is the work of destiny, what fault is there to me? (iv) در طرفة العين پاريس خراب شود يعني چه is Paris to be destroyed in the twinkling of an eye or what? شاعر يعني چه is it a poet or what? (v) چه شكوفهاي خوبي what beautiful flowers! چه قدر عطرِ خوب دارد what a delicious scent they have! اين چه خالِ عنبرين است what an amber-coloured mole this is!

67 List of Compound Verbs in Persian with English equivalents —

(i) آب شدن to melt (ii) گوشهٔ آبرو خم كردن to raise the eyebrow (as a sign of contempt) (iii) آبله كوبتن يا كوبيدن to inoculate, vaccinate (iv) آتش كردن to light a fire; آتش گرفتن to take fire آتش زدن to set fire to (v) با تمام رسيدن to come to end (vi) اثر كردن to make an impression, to understand. (vii) احترام گذاشتن to pay respect to (viii) احتمال رفتن يا داشتن to be probable (ix) احتياط كردن to suspect, fear (x) اخراجِ بلد كردن to exile (xi) ادّعاي داشتن to have claim against (xii) اذن دادن to

authorise (xiii) ارزانی کردن یا داشتن to give, bestow (xiv) استحقار نمودن to hold in contempt (xv) باسیری بردن to make a capture xvi) اشاره کردن to beckon (xvii) اشاره کردن to point to make a sign (xviii) اشتباه کردن to be mistaken (xix) اصرار کردن to insist (xx) باصلاح آوردن to reform, bring into proper order (xxi) اطلاع دادن to inform اطلاع یافتن to learn, gain information (xxii) اعتبار داشتن to have confidence in (xxiii) افسوس خوردن to regret (xxiv) شهود اقامه کردن to confirm an evidence (xxv) التماس کردن to beg earnestly (xxvi) امتلاء باد افتخار بودن to be puffed up with pride ı (xxvii) آمد و رفت کردن to have intercourse with to resort to آمد و شد کردن to come and go (xxviii) انجام دادن to make an end of accomplish بانجام رسیدن یا انجام گرفتن to be finished to end (xxix) اوقات تلخی ، دم to have a bitter time of it (xxx) آه کشیدن to sigh

9 Time.

Time is often said to be money but it is more—it is life and yet many who would cling desparately to life think nothing of wasting time. Not that a life of drudgery should be our ideal. Far from it Time spent in innocent and rational enjoyments, in healthy games, in social and family intercourse is well and wisely spent. Games not only keep the body in health, but give a command over the muscles and limbs which cannot be over valued. Moreover there are temptations which strong exercise best enables us to resist. It is the idle who complain they cannot find time to do that which they fancy they wish. In truth people can generally make time for what they choose to do it is not really the time, but the will that is wanting. Idleness is the greatest prodigality in the world it throws away that which is invaluable in respect of its present use, and irreparable when it is past, no power of art or nature being able to recover it. There is a Turkish

proverb that the Devil tempts the busy man, but the idle man tempts the Devil Time, indeed, is a sacred gift, and each day is a little life Know the true value of time, snatch, seize, and enjoy every moment of it.

Often (اكثر) they say (ميگويند) that time (وقت) money (زر) is, but (امّا) than this more (بيشتر) is, because (زيراكه) in reality (في الواقع) it is synonymous with life itself (عبارت است از عين حيات) and yet (وليكن) many persons (بسا اشخاصي) who even (هم) in the state of entire despair (درحالت مايوسي تام) do not wish (نمي خواهند) the hand (دست) from life (از زندگي) they may wash (بشويند) the precious times (اوقات گرانمايه را) ungrudgingly (بيدريغ) they waste away (ضايع كنند) and any (هيچ) care (پرواي) they do not have (ندارند) I do not say (نمي گويم) that it is necessary (بايد) a life purely full of labour (زندگي محض پر مشقت را) we should follow (اقتدا نمائيم), nor (ونه) my object (مقصودم) this (اين) The times (اوقاتي) that them (آنهارا) in pure and rational enjoyments (در مسرّتهاي پاک و بجا) and healthy games (لعبهاي صحت افزا) or in family intercourse (اختلاط عيالداري) and social intercourse (معاشرت مدني) they spend (بسر مي برند) one might say (ميتوان گفت) that well and wisely (بطور احسن و به طريق معقول) was spent (صرف شد) Manly games (بازيهاي مردانه) not only (نه تنها) bodily health (صحت جسماني را) firm (برقرار) keeps (دارد) but (بلكه) to man (انسان را) over (بر) his muscles and limbs (اعصاب و اعضاي خود) such a command (چنان قدرتي) gives (ميبخشد) that I am unable (نمي توانم) its uses (فوائدش را), as it ought to be (كما ينبغي), I may explain (شرح دهم) Moreover

(علاوه بودن) many (بسي) temptations (ابتلا و اغواها) such is that the power of resisting them (قوّتِ تاب آوردنِ آنها) by means of (به وساطتِ) strong exercise (ورزشِ سخت) better (خوبتر) is obtained (بهم رسد) The idle are (تنبلانند) who about the shortness of time (از قصرِ وقت) complain (شکایت مي برند) and they say (مي گويند) that we cannot find time (نمي توانيم فرصتي دريابيم) that the works (کارهايرا) that we wish to do (مي خواهيم بکنيم) we may accomplish (انجام بدهيم) but (ولکن) this is their mere thought (محض مخيلهٔ ايشان) The truth (ه دهد) that is, that when people (مردمان) firm intention (قصدِ وثيق) on a work (بر کاري) make (بکنند) generally (عموماً) for the purpose of accomplishing it (براي انجام دهي آن) they can make time (مي توانند فرصتي دريابند) because (که) the final cause of that (علّتِ غائي آن) paucity of time (کمي وقت) not is, but (بلکه) want of desire (عدمِ خواهش) Idleness (تنبلی) the worst of all prodigalities of the earth surface (بدترين همه اسرافهاي روي زمين) is, because (که) such a thing (چنان چيزي را) wastes (تلف مي سازد) that in respect of present use (در بارهٔ فوائد موجوده) quite (بس) invaluable (بي بها) and when it passes (بگذرد) a recompense thereof (پاداشي از او) invisible (ناپيدا) inasmuch as (از بسکه) neither the power of art (نه قوّتِ هنر) nor (نه) the natural power (اقتدارِ طبعي) can bring it back (بتواند آنرا باز بيارد) The Turk say (ترک گويند) that to the busy man (مردِ مشغول را) from the devil (شيطان) a temptation (وسوسهٔ) and to the devil (شيطان را) from the idle man (مردِ تنبل) Certainly (آري) time one of the sacred gifts is

(یکي از نعمتهاي قدسي است) that every day thereof (هر روزي از آن) as though (گويا) a model (نمونهٔ) is of (از) life Of its true value (از حقيقت بها و صحيحش) be knowing (با خبر باش) and every moment (لمحه را) snatch (بدست آر) and seize it (غنيمتش شمار) and from it an enjoyment (تمتّعي) take (بردار)

NOTES

68 The Adversative Particles (حروفِ استدراک) in Persian are امّا - بلکه - لاکن or لکن or ليکن or ولي - and مگر Their uses may be illustrated thus (i) حرفهاي شما راست است امّا چه فائده که دلِ من آرام نمي گيرد your words are true but of what profit are they when my heart is not satisfied? اين حيوان ديروز جو خورده است امّا امروز کاه مي خورد this animal ate barley yesterday, but to-day it eats grass, اگر چه سرگذشتِ من سرگذشتِ مردي گمنام و کم پايه است امّا منافاتي ندارد although the history of my life is that of an obscure and ordinary individual, still it has no incompatability (ii) ميرزاي مريض را ديدم نيم مرده بلکه تمام مرده I found the sick Mirza half dead, nay rather quite dead تيغ و تير بدو کارگر نمي شود بلکه برنده و اندازنده بر مي گردد no sword or arrow would be effective against him, but rather it would turn round against the striker or shooter thereof (iii) زبانِ فارسي خيلي دشوار است لاکن عجب زبانِ شيريني است Persian is a very difficult language, but it is a wonderfully sweet one, مقدّر بود که خزانهٔ بيکران بدستِ آن ديگري بيفتد لکن از شامتِ معصيت بيک کيسهٔ پول عوض گشت it was destined that an immense treasure should fall into the hands of that other man but by the adversity of his sins it became changed into a single purse

لیکن این کار را خدا برنمی دارد but God will not permit this affair دلم برای تو می سوزد ولی چاره نیست my heart burns for thee, but there is no help for it (iv) خویش و قومی ندارد که کاری از – لب بر آید مگر دختر یک نامزد جوانی دارد she has neither relative nor tribe that the affair should come off through their hands, but the girl has a young man affianced to her همایون با یک لک سوار به استقبالِ جنگ پیش آمد مگر بخت چنان آبِ تلخ در جام ریخت که معمّه طول کشید Humayun with one lac of horsemen came forward to meet them in battle, but fortune was so deadly against him that the affair became complicated

69. The uses of the word عین may be illustrated thus (i) پسرم در عینِ طفولیت مرده شد my son died in his very infancy در یکی از خانها که در عینِ آبادانی هم بسیار است اسپان را بپاسبانی یکی بگذاشتیم we left our horses in the care of one in one of the ruined houses that were found in numbers even in the inhabited parts themselves, پادشاه از عینِ رحمت فرمود the king said in great condescension اگر سخن دروغِ تو عینِ راست خواهد شد on that occasion your false statement would appear as truth itself; (ii) اسپِ شما بعینه همچو اسپِ من است your horse resembles exactly that of mine; آن درویش در سر و وضع بعینه مانند من بود the darvish was just like me in figure and appearance (iii) پارس را در طرفة العین زیر و زبر می توانم کرد I can destroy Paris in the twinkling of an eye (iv) در حضورِ امرای دهانم را با طلا انباشت in the presence of the nobles he filled my mouth with gold

70 Examples of the uses of بس and بسا are (i) بس نامور بزیرِ زمین دفن کرده‌اند many famous men have been buried

beneath the earth , صد تا کلاغ را یک سنگ بس است one stone is enough for a hundred crows , جوابِ من این است و بس this is my answer and enough , این قدر حریص و راغبِ دزدي و دلگي شدن بس است to have been so far covetous and given to robbery is enough از دیدنِ کنیزک بگذرید که کاري بس دشوار است give up the idea of seeing the slave for it is a very difficult task (ii) بسا نام نیکوي پنجاه سال many a good name of fifty years

71 Arabic Comparatives and Superlatives are formed on the measure of أفعل , as from حسن we have احسن , from جليل we have اجلّ (for اجلل) more or most glorious , from كبير we have اكبر greater or greatest

72 The particle هم may be used—(i) in the sense of *'too, also'*, as تو هم ایستاده تماشا مي‌کني you, too, are standing and looking at , عجب او هم راضي شده بشما قول داده است she, too, having foolishly consented, has given you pormise (ii) in the sense of *'again'* , as پرسیدم زود هم رفتم I asked and went out again immediately , فراشها قدري هم نزدیکتر مي آیند the farrashes again come a little nearer (iii) in the sense of *'even'* , as از آن وقت تا حال هم پيِ غربال مي گشتم from that time even to this I was going about after that sieve , فردا باز ازین هم سختتر‌ش را خواهم گفت to-morrow I shall talk to her even more severely than this (iv) in the sense of *'as well'* , as بقولِ شما باید این مرد مبلغ دیگر هم باز بشما تعارف بدهد to your saying this man should give you some extra sum as well , بفرمائید این مرد یک خلعتي هم باز بدهد command this man to give him a robe as well (v) for the sake of *emphasis* , as من دیگر مثلِ تو پسرِ برادر را هم نخواستم I have

no further need of such a nephew as you هم در آن حال درباز شده تیمور آقا داخل میشود at that very moment the door opens and Timur Aqa enters (vi) in the sense of *both and* as هم فرض و هم صواب است it is both a duty and a pleasure هم سیادت و هم شهریاری در نسب you possess both a descent from the Prophet and royal blood (vii) to form several compounds as همخوابه a bed fellow همراه a fellow-traveller همسایه a neighbour همسر equal همشهری a fellow citizen همشیره a sister [illegible] a companion همپیاله colleague همخدمت a fellow servant همراز a confidant همزاد twins همسبق a class fellow

73 When the same Preposition governs two or more Nouns, it is usually expressed before the first Noun and remains understood before the others as من می مانم با آه و ناله و درد و غم I shall be left with sighs and lamentation and pain and grief [illegible] با رشوه و التماس و التجا دفع بلا کنیم we wished to ward off this misfortune by bribe and entreaty and penitence

74. In modren Persian the plural termination may be added to the last word of a string of two or more words joined together by the Conjunction و or by an *izáfat* as [illegible] ها دیده و things seen and thought of این گرسنه چشم لقمه ربای بی شرم و حیاها these hungry-eyed, morsel-robbing shameless ones دیده و شنیدها things seen and heard.

75. The Preterite is often used to express an action just completed as گفت حاجی ترا دلاک باشی خود کردم he said 'Haji, I appoint you my chief barber" من برای دیگری چاه کندم خودم بچاه افتادم I dug a pit for another and have myself fallen into the well.

men of the district my enemy حالا بگو ببینم ما که را وکیل نفس بکنیم now tell me whom we shall appoint our pleader

78. *(a)* The Dative may depend (i) upon a Transitive Verb as ایشانرا مدد کردند they assisted them حکیمی پسران خود را پند همی داد a philosopher continually advised his sons: (ii) upon an Intransitive Verb as پدرم بهشت رسیده باشد my father will have reached paradise ملک را حسن تدبیر او موافق آمد his excellent plan seemed suitable to the king

(b) The Dative may denote *for* as مرا این قطع زمین خرید he bought this plot of land for me دختر بچه ها را زیبنده نیست پیش بزرگانشان همچو حرف بزنند it is not becoming for young girls to speak in this way before their elders.

(c) The Dative may denote *possession* as مرا زنی آشنا هست I have an acquaintance این چراغ را فائده چیست what is the advantage of this lamp?

79 List of Compound Verbs (continued) (i) بار کردن to load (a beast of burden) (ii) باطل کردن to frustrate باطل شدن to be in vain: (iii) بدگمان بردن to think evil of بدنام کردن to defame: (iv) بزرگی کردن to make a show of importance (v) بنا کردن to begin to do: (vi) بیان کردن to explain, بیان شدن to be explained: (vii) برپا یا پا شدن to stand up پا زدن to go off (on foot) (viii) پاپوش برای شیطان دوختن to sew slippers for the devil, to deceive the cleverest (ix) پاک باختن to lose all: (x) پنهان کردن to hide پنهان شدن to be hidden (xi) پیدا کردن to discover (xii) تازه کردن to refresh (xiii) تأمّل کردن to reflect (xiv) تبسّم کردن to smile (xv) تجاهل فرمودن to pretend ignorance (xvi) تصدیق کردن

to verify. (xvii) تصدّق كردن to forgive (xviii) تصديق نمودن to agree with (xix) تعارف فرستادن to send a present (xx) تعهّد كردن to bind oneself. (xxi) تغيّر دادن to change تغيّر يافتن to be changed (xxii) تفنگ انداختن to fire a gun, to shoot (xxiii) تكذيب كردن to give the lie (to any one) (xxiv) تكان دادن to give a shake, to push, تكان خوردن to be pushed, to receive a shock (xxv) تكميل كردن to perfect, complete (xxvi) تكيه نمودن to rely upon: (xxvii) تلافي ماوات كردن to make up for a loss (xxix) تلف كردن to dissipate (xxx) تمارض كردن to feign (illness) (xxxi) تن درضا دادن to submit to fate. (xxxii) تهمت بستن يا انداختن to throw suspicion, accuse. (xxxiii) تهنيت كردن to congratulate (xxxiv) ثابت كردن to establish, prove, ثبوت رسيدن to be established

10 The Barber of Baghdad—I.

In the reign of the great Khalifa Harunur-Rashid, there lived in the city of Baghdad, a celebrated barber of the name of Yusuf He was famous for the steadiness of his hand, and could shave or trim a beard or whiskers with his eyes blindfolded There was not a man of fashion at Baghdad who did not employ him, and he had such a run of business that at length he became very proud and insolent Fire-wood was always scarce and dear at Baghdad, and it happened one day that a poor wood-cutter, ignorant of the character of Yusuf, stopped at his shop to sell him a bundle of wood which he had just brought from a distance on his donkey Yusuf immediately offered him a certain price for *all the wood* that was upon the donkey The wood-cutter agreed, unloaded his beast and asked for the money "You have not given me all the wood yet," said the barber "I must have your wooden pack-saddle as part of the bargain that was our agreement" "How!" said the other in great amazement, "who ever heard of such a bargain? It is impossible"

But after many words the over-bearing barber seized the pack saddle, wood and all and sent away the poor peasant in great distress The wood cutter then ran to the Qazi and stated his grievance, but the Qazi was one of the barber's customers and refused to hear the case Then he went to a higher judge he also patronised Yusuf and made light of the complaint. The poor wood-cutter was not disheartened but forthwith employed a scribe to write a petition to the Khalifa himself which he himself handed over to the Khalifa on Friday the day when he went in state to the mosque The Khalifa s punctuality in reading petitions was well-known and it was not long before the wood-cutter was called to his presence When he approached the Khalifa, he knelled down and kissed the ground and then folding his arms before him he respectfully awaited the decision of his case. "Friend' said the Khalifa 'the barber has *words* on his side your have *equity* on yours. The law must be defined by words and agreements must be made by words. The law must have its course, or it is nothing and agreements must be kept, or there would be no good faith between man and man. Therefore the barber must keep all the wood that he took from you Then calling the wood-cutter close to him the Khalifa whispered something in his ears and sent him away quite satisfied.

During (در) the time of (ایّام) the caliphate of (خلافتِ) the great Khalifa (خلیفهٔ معظّم) the noble Harunur Rashid (هارون الرشیدِ مکرّم) in Baghdad (در بغداد) a barber (دلّاکی) was of the name of Yusuf (یوسف نام) a skilful and expert master (استادی ماهر و چیره دست) such that (که) blind folded (چشم بسته) he used to shave (سر تراشیدی) and used to trim the whiskers (بروت می زدی) No man of fashion in Baghdad remained (هیچ قشنگی در بغداد نماند) whose head (که سرش را) he did not shave (نتراشید). From (از) the excess of (کثرتِ) buyers (مشتریان) and the crowding at (of) the shop (ازدحام دکّان) at length (آخرکار) pride (مغروری) and insolence (گستاخی) in

(ده) the superlative degree (صیغهٔ تفضیل) to him (دراو) happened (عارض شد) May it not remain hidden (مخفی نماند) that fire-wood (هیزم) always (همیشه) in Baghdad scarce (کمیاب) and dear (گران) was It so happened (=by chance از قضا or قضا را) one day (روزی) a poor wood-cutter (هیزمکشِ غریبی) of the character of Yusuf (از عادتِ یوسف) ignorant (بی خبر) a load of fire-wood (بارِ هیزمی) upon the ass (برخر), from a distant road (راهِ دور) in front of (بمقابلِ) his shop (دکّانش) stopped (را ایستاد) that his woods (چوبهای خود را) to him he may sell (بفروشد) Immediately on seeing him (بمجرّد دیدنش) Yusuf said O such a one (ای فلان), a certain sum (فلان مبلغ) I am giving (می دهم) and whatever (هرچه) wood (چوب) upon thy ass is (درپشتِ خرِ توست) I am buying (می خرم) The wood-cutter agreed (قبول کرد) and having unloaded the ass (بارِ خر را در زمین نهاده) the price (بها) he asked (خواست) Yusuf said thou yet all the woods (هنوز همهٔ چوبها را) didst not give (تحویل ندادی) The pack-saddle of thy ass (پالانِ خرت را), which of wood (از چوب) is, thou must give (باید تحویل بدهی) for that too (هم) is included in the transaction (داخلِ معامله هست) The wood-cutter amazed (سراسیمه) cried out (بانگ برآورد), that the pack-saddle of the ass, that is (یعنی) what (چه) ? It can never be (هرگز نمی شود) The timber of the burning-wood (چوبِ هیزم) where (کجا) and the timber of the pack-saddle of the ass where Such bargain (بیع و فروخت) not seen (ندیده) and not heard (نشنیده) ! After many words (گفتگوی دراز) and high contention (مناقشهٔ فراز) that

barber oppressive (ستمگر) both the load of the ass and the pack-saddle of the ass (هم بارِ خر را و هم پالانِ خر را) seized (بگرفت) and the wood-cutter (را) distressed (پریشان حال) and empty handed (دست تهی) sent away (روانه کرد) The wood-cutter before the Qazi ran (دوید) and against (بر) the barber com-plained (تظلّم برآورد) But (امّا) the Qazi who one of the buyers of Yusuf was, did not give him justice (بداد او نرسید) Then the wood-cutter near (بنزد) the chief Qazi (قاضی القضاة) went. He also (نیز or هم) a buyer of Yusuf was he did not pay any attention (هیچ التفاتی ننمود) The wood-cutter was not disheartened (=did not give up the contest از مدعی بر نرفت) but rather (بلکه) without losing a moment (بی توجه یکلحظه) near a scribe (نزد محرری) ran, and a petition (عریضه) in the name of (بنام) the Khalifa caused to be written (نویسانید) and on Friday (روز جمعه) at the time of Khalifa's going to the mosque (در وقتِ تشریف بردنِ خلیفه به مسجد) himself (بالذّات) to (به) Khalifa's hand he gave (داد) The Khalifa's administering of justice and equity (دادرسی و عدالتِ خلیفه را) being heard (شنیده) comes (آمد) and it was not long (بسی بر نیامد) that the wood-cutter (را) to the presence (بحضور) he called (طلبید) The wood-cutter when to the presence of the Khalifa came, kneeling down (زانو زده) the ground of servitude (زمینِ خدمت) kissed (بوسید) and respectfully (مؤدّب), hand upon the breast (دست بر سینه) awaiting the order of the Khalifa (منتظرِ حکمِ خلیفه) he stood (بایستاد) The Khalifa said O friend (ای یارِ عزیز) in this claim (دعوی) as to the wording (لفظاً)

the right (حق) with (با) Yusuf and as to the signification (معنا) with thee is (توست) But as (چون) the commandments of (احکام) the law (شریعت) by word (بلفظ) standing (قایم) and the knot of (عقد) sale (بیع) and buying (شری) with word current (جاري) becomes (مي شود), then word in place of (در محل) esteem (اعتبار) is; and it is necessary (باید) the law may have its course (اجرا یابد) and agreements (شرط و پیمان) to fulfilment (به ایفاء) may reach (برسد), otherwise (و گرنه) the commandments of the law (احکام شرع) without support (بي قوام) and the affairs of the people (امور عامه) without order (بي نظام) becomes, and good faith of (اعتماد) individuals (افراد و احاد) with one another (بیکدیگر) does disappear (از میان بر مي خیزد), therefore (لهذا) the barber ought to keep all the woods that he has taken from thee (باید همهٔ چوبهایرا که از تو گرفته است ندارد) Then at that time (آنگاه) the Khalifa the wood-cutter (را) by his own side (در پهلوي خود) called (خواند) and whispered a few words to him (بسر گوشي چند باو بگفت) and the wood-cutter (را) cheerful (خرم) and satisfied (خرسند) he sent away (روان کرد)

NOTES.

80 Some of the phrases and idioms formed with the word 'دست' are (1) تهي دست indigent, چیره دستي expertnees, victory, دراز دست tyrant, زیر دست a subject, subordinate, سبک دست expert, سردست ready at hand (ii) دست افزار a tool, دستاویز a voucher, bond, دست برد victory, superiority, دست برنجن a bracelet, دست پاچه precipitately, دست تنگ indigent, دستخط signature, دست درازي

tyranny دست رس power close at hand دست رلم hire, pay دست فرس a pedlar دست کار an artificer دستگاه power a factory دستگاه مکر فریب a factory of cheating and tricks دستمال a handkerchief دستمال گردن neck-cloth دست مایه stock-in-trade دست مزد wages دستیاب procurable (iii) اگر دستش دهد if it is possible for him, if he obtains it از دستم چه بر مي آيد what can I do ? دير دستگيرنده شده است عقلي thou art harking counsel very late اين قدرها دستگير شان بشود كه show yourselves at least sufficiently warned to

81 (a) The Imperative stem may sometime has the force of an *Agent* as دزد (a robber) from دزديدن to rob: or of the *Passive Participle*, as افشان (scattered) from افشاندن to scatter or more generally of the *Verbal Noun* as سوز (burning) from سوختن to burn شكيب (patience) from شكيبيدن to be patient رلم (dist ess) from رلم خوردن to be distressed

(b) It may be used to form compound words (i) by connecting it with the Past Stem as گفتگو conversation جستجو search (ii) by annexing the Negative Imperative (نهي) of the same Verb as كشمكش tumult دارمدار hesitation (iii) by connecting two Imperative Stems by و as پيچ و تاب writhing گير و دار bustle خورد و پوش food and raiment (iv) by connecting two Imperative Stems by an الف as تكاپو bustle, hurry (v) by annexing it to a Preposition or Adverb as پيش كش a present زيرانداز a *hukka* carpet (vi) by annexing it to a Noun or Pronoun as آتش انگيز fire-raising دلاويز heart-enticing خود فريس conceited.

82 In modern Persian the ي of indefiniteness is sometimes added to the qualifiying word, or to the مضاف اليه, as اختلافِ عظيمي a great dis-agreement, ميلِ غريبي a strange inclination, حاكمِ مملكتي a provincial governor, آبِ خوشگواري a wholesome water, حكيمِ خوبي a good physician دردِ عجيبي an extraordinary pain, حرفِ بشماري a word to be counted, شهرت و شانِ عظيمي a great reputation and sensation

83 The particle تا is used—(i) to introduce a subordinate clause, expressing a hope or enquiry, as ببينم تا خدا باوي چه كند let me see what God does with him, بگو تا چه خواهي گفت ask (him) what he wishes to say (ii) to denote a sudden event as تا موش سر از سوراخ بر آورد گربه اش در ربود the mouse raised its head out of the hole when suddenly the cat carried it away, هم چنان بر سرِ پا ماندم تا روشنائي روز در گذشت I continued thus upon my legs, when suddenly the light of day disappeared (iii) to signify a beginning, as تا از تو جدا شدم بخودش بيگانه ام I have become a stranger to myself since the time I was separated from thee (iv) to mark an end, as تا چشم كار مي كرد سياه چادر بود as far as the eye can reach, it was black with tents. ملك الشعراء تا باسترآباد صحيح و سالم رسيد the royal poet reached sound and safe as far as Astrabad, از ديروز تا كنون خرج اسب را كشيده ام since yesterday till now I have borne the expenses of the horse (v) to show cause or purpose, as كتابهاي خود را بعاريت داد تا از آنها مستفيد شوم he lent me his books that I might be benifited by them بدرِ خانهٔ ملك الشعراء رفتم تا ببينم چه خبراست I went to the entrance to the royal poet's house that I might find out what the news was, خنده وكلاهش

را برداشت تا برود he took up his cloak and cap in order to go out (vi) to denote the immediate compliance with an order or the realisation of the purpose in view as فراشِ باد صبا را گفت تا فرش زمرّدین بگسترد he told the chamberlain of the east wind and it immediately spread out the green carpet چاره و معالجه نمود تا در اندک مدّتی دور پایم و دسته و پنجه باشت he applied remedies and in a short time my feet and limbs were restored (vii) to convey a warning as زنهار تا از پشتِ بام با همسایگان گفتگو و مراوده نکنند beware lest they hold conversation and communication over the roof with the neighbours (viii) to convey the meaning of *between* as گفتن تا کردن خیلی فرق دارد there is a good deal of difference between saying and doing فرق هر دو از زمین تا آسمان فرق است between these two there is a difference of heaven and earth (ix) to introduce Numerals before certain Nouns as میان این جنگل دویست تا رفیقهای من دله افتاده اند In the midst of this jungle two hundred of my comrades are lying in wait توی مزاده دو تا صندوق کلفت است there are a couple of heavy chests in the earth

84. (*a*) As an Adjective فلان precedes the Substantive as شاید بطرفِ فلان ده رفته باشد perhaps he has gone to such and such a village چه گفت ترا در فلان امر what did he say to thee on such and such a matter? بگویند که تاروردی هم ! ب فلان هنراست they will say Tarwardi is too a man who has done so and so

(*b*) As a Substantive it is applicable mostly to persons and is indeclinable, as خیری کن ای فلان do some good, O so and so خاطرِ عزیزِ فلان the respected feelings of so and so, فلانی خود را پنهان کرده است such a one has hid herself ای فلان dated such and such

89 The Passive Participle (اسم مفعول) is used—(i) to form the Compound Tenses, and in the formation of the passive Verb in all its parts, as آمده است he has come, نوشته بود he had written, ساخته باشد he may have made, کشته شدن to be killed (ii) in place of a Statical Participle (اسم حالیه) as a Predicative Adjective, as همه ایگان دویده آمدند the neighbours came running او را خفته افتاده یافتند they found him lying asleep, کلاه را در گوشهٔ چادر بخاکِ سیاه افتاده دیدم I found the cap lying on the ground in a corner of the tent (iii) as the Conjunctive Past (ماضي معطوفه), as آنگاه در گوشهٔ آسیا افتاده مردم را مي فریبد then having set up for himself in this corner of Asia he has been cheating the people, بانو آستین برزده چشم براهِ من نشسته بود the chief wife, having pulled up her sleeve, was waiting for me with great impatience. (iv) as a Noun Substantive, as در بابِ دیده و شنیدهاي خود بنفس اشارت نمودم as regards things seen and heard by me I contented myself by only referring to them, از آن کرده پشیمان شد he repented him of that deed; خفته را خفته کي کند بیدار how can one sleeper awake another? (v) as an Adjective, as دزدِ نگرفته سلطان است an uncaught thief is a king; دالانش تاریک و دراز و نروفته its courtyard was dark, long, and unswept, خاگینهٔ شب مانده an omelette remaining of the previous night, زنِ سرکرده the chief wife (vi) as an Affix to form compounds, as جهان دیده experienced, صاحبزاده of good birth, noble, جنگ آزموده tried in war

90 List of compound Verbs (continued) (i) جا انداختن to establish, arrange, set in order, بجا آوردن to fulfil (ii) جاروب کردن to sweep (iii) جاری ساختن to allow to flow, to start (iv) بجان

آمدن to be reduced to extremities جان کاهیدن to sacrifice one's life جان کندن to harrow the soul (v) جدا ساختن to separate (vi) جواب رفتن to report back (vii) جلوي کسي رفتن to go before جلو گرفتن to stop (viii) جمع کردن to assemble collect جمع شدن to be reassured جمع زدن to add up figures (ix) جنگ آوردن to wage war (x) جوش خوردن to solder بجوش آمدن to become heated or excited (xi) چاپ کردن to print (xii) چادر زدن to pitch tents (xiii) چاره زدن to take siesta (xiv) چاره کار را جستن to seek a remedy in the matter (xv) قليان چاق کردن to light the pipe or *hukka* (xvi) چراغ گرفتن to snuff the candle, چراغ کشتن to put out the light (xvii) چرک را گرفتن to clean off dirt (xviii) چشم داشتن to hope چشم دوختن to fix the eye on چشم زدن to injure by the evil eye چشم هم زدن to close the eye to (xix) چخماق سرپا کردن to cock a gun (xx) چوب خوردن to be beaten (xxi) بچيزي نشمردن to hold cheap: (xxii) حاضر شدن to be present or ready حاضر کردن to prepare bring (xxiii) حال آمدن to come to oneself: (xxiv) حالي شدن to become clear حالي کردن to make clear or present to the mind of another: (xxv) حرام کردن to make unlawful, نمک حرامي کردن to be faithless (xxvi) حرف زدن to speak حرف مفت زدن to speak nonsense بحرف بودن to be at the word of obey: (xxvii) حساب بردن to treat with consideration بحساب آوردن to pay attention, take into account (xxviii) حظ کردن to enjoy (xxix) حفظ کردن to protect (xxx) حق داشتن to have a right: (xxxi) حکمراني کردن to govern (xxxii) رخصت را کردن to beg leave to go (xxxiii) حوصله کردن to have patience, contain oneself.

11. Animals of Arabia

Arabia, in the opinion of the naturalist, is the genuine and original country of THE HORSE, the climate is most propitious, not indeed to the size, but to the spirit and swiftness, of that generous animal The merit of the Barb, the Spanish, and the English breed, is derived from a mixture of Arabian blood The Beduins preserve, with superstitious care, the honours and the memory of the purest race, the males are sold at a high price, but the females are seldom alienated, and the birth of a noble foal is esteemed, among the tribes, as a subject of joy and mutual congratulation These horses are educated in the tents, among the children of the Arabs, with a tender familiarity, which trains them in the habits of gentleness and attachment They are accustomed only to walk and gollop, their sensations are not blunted by the incessant abuse of the spur and the whip, their powers are reserved for the moments of flight and pursuit, but no sooner do they feel the touch of the hand or the stirrup, than they dart away with the swiftness of the wind, and if their rider be dismounted in the rapid career, they instantly stop till he has recovered his seat In the sands of Africa and Arabia, THE CAMEL is a sacred and precious gift That strong and patient beast can perform, without eating and drinking, a journey of several days The larger breed of camels is capable of transporting the weight of a thousand pounds, and the dromedary, of a lighter and more active frame, out-strips the fleetest courser in the race Alive or dead, almost every part of the camel is serviceable to man, her milk is plentiful and nutritious, the young and tender flesh has the taste of veal, a valuable salt is extracted from the urine, the dung supplies the deficiency of fuel, and the long hair, which falls each year and is renewed, is coarsely manufactured into the garments, the furniture, and the tents of the Beduins

Those who (آنانکه) with (از) the science of animals (علم حیوانات) a connexion (سررشتهٔ) have (دارند) are upon it (برآنند) that for the horse (اسب را) birth-place (مولدِ) genuine (اصلي) and home (راه بوم) original (حقیقي) Arabia (عربستان) is, because (چه) the climate of that country (آب و هواي آن ولایت)

upon the spirit (همت) and swiftness of (تيزي) that noble animal (آن حيوانِ [illegible]) an effect (اثري) has (دارد) than all (از همه) more propitious (موافق تر), although (اگرچه) indeed (في الواقع) upon its size (بر جسامتش) not so (نه چنان) The merit that ([illegible]) for the breed of the horses of Africa or Spain or England (نسلِ اسپهاي افريقه يا اسپانيا يا انگلستان را) obtainable (حاصل) is the stock thereof (مايهٔ آن) mixture of Arabian blood (خلطِ نژادِ تازي) is The Beduins (بدويان) the pedigree of (نسبنامهٔ) the blood horse (اسپِ اصيل را) memorising (بحفظ آورده) for (براي) preserving of their honours (نگاه داشتنِ اعتبارِ نسلِ آنها) an attention (اهتمامي) bordering on superstition (معروف به تعصّب) make use of (بكار مي برند) The male (نريان را) at a high price (بمبلغ خطيري) they sell (مي فروشند) but seldom (كمتر) it is (مي باشد) that the female (ماديان را) they alienate (از دست مي دهند). Among the tribes (مابينِ قبائل) the birth of a noble foal (پيدائشِ كرهٔ اصلي) the cause of (موجبِ) joy and mutual congratulation (شادماني و مباركبادي يكديگر) becomes (مي گردد) The horses in the tents of the tribe (چادرهاي قبيله) in the company of the children of the Arabs (در — بچه‌هاي اعرابيان) with (با) such (چنين) familiarity (انس) and tenderness (شفقت) training (تربيت) they obtain (يابند) that the habit of gentleness and attachment (خوي ملايمت و مصاحبت) in their disposition (طبيعتِ ايشان) occupier (جانشين) becomes. Them (ايشان را) only (محض) in (به) walking and golloping (قدم و سرعتِ رفتن) habit (عادت) they give (مي دهند) and with (با) untimely (بيگاه) using of the spur

and nutritious (مقوّي) is and the tender flesh of (گوشتِ ملایم) the young camels (بچهٔ شترها or شتربچّه‌ها) like veal (مثلِ گوشتِ گوساله) From its urine (از بولِ آن) a valuable salt (نمکِ نفیس قیمتي) they extract (برمي کشند) and its dung (پشکلِ آن) supplies the deficiency of fuel (تقصیرِ هیزم را تلافي مي نماید) and from its long hair (از پشمِ دراز آن) which each year (هر سال) falls (مي افتد) and is renewed (بارِ دیگر برمي گردد) the Beduins their garment and furniture and tents (رخت و اسباب و چادرهاي خود) they manufacture (مي سازند)

NOTES

83 Some of the phrases and idioms formed with the word سر are (i) دکاندار سراپائم را نگریست the shop-keeper stared me from head to foot (ii) سر آمدِ اقران prominent among contemporaries: (iii) ترکي سرت مي شود do you know Turkish? (iv) آمدید سرِ من you fell upon me (v) به سرِ من موکلي you set (him) at me از سرِ ما رد شد he has left us (vii) سرِ شام at the evening meal (viii) سرِ ناهار at breakfast time (ix) در سرِ دو سال at the end of two years; (x) سر و برگ means of subsistence (xi) سرِ وقت a convenient time

84. (*a*) Noun Clauses expressing that something *is* or *should be* may be illustrated thus: (i) گفت با تو حرفي دارم he said, (that) he had (lit. has) something to say to me کس نگوید دوغِ من ترش است no one says that his butter milk is sour (ii) دیدم که علومش از قبیلِ اسرار نپوشید I saw that he made no mystery of his knowledge دیدم با آن حال جاي مقال نیست I found, (that) under the circumstances there was (lit. is) no opportunity of a talk (iii) یقین میدانم

ندانم ... ورلش معلومي ديمرود I know for certain, (that) he has not improved (lit did not improve) his ignorance by a bit of knowledge, نداىست كه وي بهرام است he did not know that he was (lit is) Bahram: (iv) پنداشتم كه رانم شكسته است I thought, that my thigh was (lit has been) broken, خارين پنداشت احترازِ وى از رحمِ سناںِ اوست the thorn-bush thought (that) his avoidance of it was (lit is) due to its thorn wounds (v) ترسيدم كه دهاں بخوں آلايند I feared that they would pollute their mouth with blood, ترسم نرسي بكعبه اي اعرابي I fear, (that) thou wilt not reach the Ka'ba, O Arab! (vi) اميدوارم كه بنده نيز ازاين نعمتها بي بهره نشوم I hope, that I also may participate in these bounties, تو توقّع داشتي غير ازين نشود did you expect, (that) other than this would be? طمع مدار كزو كام دل بدست آري do not expect that thou wilt gain thy desire from him (vii) حاكم فرمود كه دستش ببرند the judge ordered them to cut off his hand, اشارت فرمود تا پيشم بردند he made a sign and they brought me before him (viii) خواستم تدبير و تزوير بيفزايم و اشرفي ديگر ازو بربايم I wished to continue the deceit a little longer and to extract another gold piece from him, مي خواهند كه اين دولت بدختره وصال ندهد they desire that this wealth may not be obtained by the girl: (ix) التماس آں دارم كه در خدمتِ سركار كارم معيّن و مواجبم مشخّص و بريده باشد I humbly request, that my duties in your honour's service should be made known and my wages defined and fixed, ملك را شايد كه گناه كار را زنده نگذارد it is right that the king should not leave the criminal alive, نگر تا مرا برخويشتن نگزيني see to it that you do not prefer me to yourself.

(b) Noun Clauses introduced by Interrogative or Exclama-

tory words, may be illustrated thus نمیدانم چرا جواب نداد I do not know why he did not answer نمیدانیم آیا مرده است یا زنده we do not know whether he is alive or dead کسی نمی داند که انجام کار چگونه باشد no one knows how the matter will end پسر برادر شما تیمور آقا به ببین چه سرکار شما بی واهمه است see how much unmindful of you your nephew Timur Aqa is ما نفهمیدیم چه شد کار شان بکجا رسید we have not understood what has happened nor how matters have gone with them نمیدانم چه بکنم I don't know what I should do نمیدانم با چه زبان شکر الطاف و احسان او کنم I do not know how shall I express my gratitude for the kindness and favour he shows me.

85 The paces of the horse are expressed by—(i) نرم رفتن to walk (ii) لُکّه رفتن to trot (iii) یُرغه رفتن to amble (iv) یورتمه رفتن to canter (v) سرشیر رفتن یا دویدن to gallop.

86. **Time till when** is expressed by تا till as این در ایران تا حال شنیده نشده است this has not been heard in Persia till now در گوشهٔ ایستادم تا غلغله و هایهوی کاروانیان فرو I stood in a corner till the noise and out-cry of the people of the caravan *had* subsided تا اورا نکشم ولایت آرام نمی گیرد دل منهم هم بجا نمی آید till I have not killed him the province will get no rest, and my mind too cannot settle down بیست سال است تا ما این خر را باو ببینیم it is twenty years that we have seen this ass in his possession

87 Sometimes **the Plural** conveys the idea of *many* or *excess* as مدّتها سر او را بدلخواه او تراشیده بود during an excessively long space of time he had shaved him to his heart's satisfaction بعد از اظهارِ شادمانی بی اعکاس after an enthusiastic expression

of excessive transports on his part , سالها سوداي آن در دماغ مي پختم for many years my brain was filled up with this idea , رنگها پريد زهرها دريد colours of many were paled, and the biles of many were rent asunder

88 Modern Persian admits of adding the plural termination to the end of *genitive phrases* which have lost their connecting *izáfat*, as from بچهٔ سگ we have بچه سگها or بچه سگان 'puppies', from سیخکباب we have سیخکبابها 'spitted kabobs', from تخم مرغ we have تخم مرغها 'eggs', from بچه گربه we have بچه گربها 'kittens', and from شاگرد آشپز we have شاگرد آشپزان 'scullions'

89 The Particles expressing *comparison* are—(1) چون or چو - همچو and چنين , as از سقفِ خانه اش دانههاي گندم چون شهابِ ثاقب از آسمان ريزان گشت from the roof of his house grains of wheat, like glittering stars from heavens, poured down , در پاي آن کوه چشمهٔ آب بود بصفا چون رخ ارهٔ تازه رويانِ گلعذار و بحلاوت چون سخن شکرلبانِ شيرين گفتار at the foot of that mountain there was a spring of water, in purity like the countenance of the fresh-faced and rosy-cheeked, and in sweetness like the words of the honey-lipped and sweet-speaking , بجثّه چو پيل و بحمله چو شير in bulk like an elephant, and in attack like a lion , همچو ابريشم زرد شود she will become yellow like silk , هرگز نه ايران را چنين شاهي و نه هرگز شاهِ ايران را چنين حکيمي بوده است never has there been in Persia a King like this , and never has the King of Persia had a physician like this (ii) مانند and مثل , as سلاحداران مانندِ جوجگانِ کبک بديسوي و آنسوي پراکنده شدند the armed guards like young partridges dispersed themselves in all directions , هر روز پارچهاي يخ زياد مانندِ کوه از شمال

مي آرد it (the river) brings down daily many pieces of ice like mountains, from the north يك طفل كوچكي دارد مثل پارهٔ ماه he has a little son like a piece of the moon كم مانده است ديوانه بشوم مثل مجنون سر بكوه و بيابان نهم little remains to make me go mad like Majnun to turn my head towards the hill and the desert.

(iii) بسان آسا سار وش رنگ كردار and وار ... بسان برق در it flashed like the lightning بسان رعد غريد it roared like the thunder توتيا آسا collyrium-like شير آسا like a lion خاكسار (lit. earth-like) humble گرگسار wolf like ديوسار demon like ماهوش moon-like; it به رنگ سبزه برخود دميد it shone forth like the verdure دهني غنچه وش a mouth like a rose-bud فرشته كردار angel like in action بكردار شير حمله آورد he made an attack just like a lion خواجه وار بر سر مسند نشاند he made him sit at the head of the throne like a lord غلام وار بخدمت ايستاد he stood in attendance like a slave

90 When the Principal Clause in a Conditional Sentence makes a direct statement, its Verb may either be in the Present Tense or in the Aorist, as (i) گر دنيا عبارت از اينست بجز خواب است يا خيال if the world means this it is but a dream or a fancy اگر تو روباهي ما پدر روباهانيم if thou art a fox, we are fathers of foxes اگر يار اهل است كار سهل است if the friend is worthy the undertaking is easy: (ii) اگر ما مردان پنجاه توماني بدست آريم خود را مالك كوه نور مي شماريم if we men scrape up some fifty tumans, we consider ourselves the possessor of the Mountain of Light اگر تقصير ندارند چرا فرار ميكنند و قايم مي شوند if they are not in fault why do they run away and hide? اگر صدا بر آري شكمت را مي درم if thou utter a sound, I will tear thy bowels.

91 In a Conditional Sentence, referring to Present or Future time, when the statement made in the Principal Clause is *conditional* or *suppositional*, then (i) an Aorist in the Conditional Clause may be followed by an Aorist or Future in the Principal Clause, as اگر گم شود تاوانش بدهم if it were lost, I should compensate for it, اگر همه یاد کنم خود کتابی باشد if I were to mention them all, they would themselves be a book, اگر این کار آن طوری که من می گویم سر بگیرد جز اینکه پول زیادی گیرم خواهد افتاد در شهر شهرت من بعرش برین خواهد رسید if this business turns out in the way I say, in addition to my getting more money, my renown in the town will reach the highest heavens (ii) or a Past in the Conditional Clause may be followed by an Aorist or Present (both in a future sense) in the Principal Clause, as اگر برادرم آمد بگویم if my brother comes (lit came) I will tell him, اگر میسر شد اقرار [illegible] را بعد از سر شاهدها می اندازیم if it is possible, we will postpone the woman's statement till after the witnesses, اگر بخت یاری کرد هرچه آوردی باید برابر خودت بمن [illegible] بدهی if fortune attend thee, whatever thou bringest thou must share equally with me (iii) or a Past (or Past Imperfect) in both the Clauses, as اگر رفتی جان بسلامت بردی و اگر خفتی مردی if thou shouldst proceed, thou wouldst preserve thy life, and if thou shouldst sleep, thou wouldst die, اگر هر کس پرده از کار خود برمی داشتی و چنانچه هست می نمودی آنوقت معلوم شدی که دنیا چیست و آهالش که if each man were to lift up the veil that hideth his own action, and show himself as he really is, then it would be known what the world in fact is and what the men of the world are! (iv) or an Aorist in the

Conditional Clause may be followed by an Imperative in the Principal Clause as اگر احیاناً بمیرم بعد به وارث شرعی من بده if I should die at any time give it to my lawful heir اگر بخود رحم نکنی بر پدر و مادرت رحم بکن if thou pity not thyself have compassion on thy father and mother

92 When the condition expressed in the Conditional Clause refers to Past Time the Past Imperfect or the Conditional Past is used in both clauses (implying that the antecedent condition is un-fulfilled) as اگر چشم وا نمی کرد تا قیامت از تماشای او دیده بر نمی کندم if she had not opened her eyes I would never have withdrawn my gaze from her اگر پای مرگ در میان نمی بود ایرانیان چه جنگها می کردند if there were no dying in the case how the Persians would have fought! اگر نصف مخترعات درویش صفر را داشتمی الان اسباب سفر در این صندوقها بسته بودمی if I had possessed half the inventions of the darvish Safar I should have been already packing up my things in these trunks اگر آنها که می دانستمی کردمی نیکو سیرت و پارسا بودمی if I had performed those duties which I know, I would have been virtuous and pious اگر نه تقدیر چنین بودی رخت خود با من عوض نمی کردی if it had not been thus (ordained) he would not have changed dress with me.

93. *Sometimes in familiar conversation the* اگر *of the Conditional Clause may be omitted* as میل داشته باشد عقدش می کنم *if* she is inclined, I will marry her پایت را برگردانی این تفنگ را در دلت خالی خواهم کرد *if* thou turnest back thy foot, I will empty this gun into thy heart ; هر چه از دستت برمی آید کوتاهی مکن do not hold back your hand from whatever it can

attain to, *if* you hold back, you are a coward , بهترميل نداشته باشد چه طور مي توانند شوهرش بدهند *if* the girl does not desire it, how can they give him (to her) as husband

94 Examples of the uses of حواه حواه (i) حواه اين نگيري حواه اين حواه آن whether you take this or that , حواه اين حواه بزرگي ديگر آنچه بدستشان مي افتد واپس نمي دهند whether he or any other man in power, they do not restore that which falls into their hands (ii) حواه ساخته حواه راستين whether real, or affected (iii) حواه ناحواه بادست حود شيريني بدهانم گذاشت whether I would or not, she thrust sweatmeats into my mouth with her own hands

95 List of Compound Verbs (continued) —(i) حاطر افتادن to be remembered , حاطر حواستن to be favourable , حاطر نشان كردن to assure any one , از حاطر محو شدن to be obliterated from one's mind (ii) حالي افتادن to happen to be empty , تفنگ حالي كردن to fire a gun (iii) حانه حراب شدن to be ruined (in fortune) (iv) حبر داشتن to have news, be informed حبردار يا حبر كردن to inform , حبر يافتن to get news (v) ختم را برچيدن to complete the obsequies of a dead person (vi) حجالت كشيدن to be ashamed · (vii) حدمت كردن to serve (viii) حراحر زدن to snore (ix) خرج كردن to expend, pay (x) حس حس كردن to sob breathlessly (xi) حطاب كردن to address, speak (xii) حفه كردن to strangle · (xiii) حلاص كردن to release, deliver , حلاص شدن to be freed (xiv) حلاف كردن to go contrary to, oppose , حلاف عرض كردن to falsify, misrepresent (xv) حلوت كردن to retire to a private place , to have a private interview (xvi) حميازه كردن to indulge in a yawn · (xvii) به حواب ديدن to dream , به حواب رفتن to go to sleep , حواب كردن

(xxxvi) دل پیدا کردن to take courage, دلداري کردن to console, دلخوش شدن to rejoice, راه بدلها یافتن to capture hearts, دل بجا آمدن to get peace of mind. (xxxvii) دم بر آوردن to draw a breath, دم زدن to boast, دم در کشیدن to hold one's breath (xxxviii) دمار از روزگارِ کسي بر آوردن to seek the destruction of or exterminate anyone, (xxxix) دين بدنيا فروختن to sell the next world for this, to be dishonest for the sake of worldly gain

12 The Barber of Baghdad —II.

A few days afterwards the wood-cutter applied himself to the barber, as if nothing had happened between them, requesting that he and a companion of his from the country might enjoy the dexterity of his hand, and the price, for which both operations were to be performed, was settled When the wood-cutter's head had been properly shaved, Yusuf asked where his companion was "He is standing just outside," said the wood-cutter, "he shall come in at once" Accordingly he went out and led in his donkey by the halter "This is my companion," said he, "shave him" "Shave *him*!" exclaimed the barber in a rage, "is it not enough that I should degrade myself by touching *you*? Must I be further insulted by your asking me to shave your donkey? Away with you, or I'll send you both to hell", and forthwith he drove them out of his shop The wood-cutter immediately went to the Khalifa and told him what had happened. "Bring Yusuf and his razors to me this instant," exclaimed the Khalifa to one of his officers, and in the course of a few minutes the barber stood before him "Why do you refuse to shave this man's companion?" said the Khalifa to the barber, "was not that your agreement?" Yusuf, kissing the ground, answered "It is true, O Commander of the Faithful that such was our agreement, but who ever made a companion of a donkey before?" "True enough," said the Khalifa, "but who ever thought of insisting upon a pack-saddle being included in a load of wood? No, no, it is the wood-cutter's turn now Shave his donkey immediately, or you know the consequences" So the barber was compelled

to prepare a great quantity of soap, to lather the beast from head to foot, and to shave it in the presence of the Khalifa and of the whole court, whilst he was jeered at and mocked by the by-standers. The poor wood-cutter was then dismissed with an appropriate present of money and all Baghdad resounded with the story and celebrated the justice of the Khalifa.

A few days afterwards (بعد از چندي) the wood-cutter like a person who (مانندِ کسيکه) might not have any expostulation and annoyance with the barber (هيچ نقار و سکرآبي با دلّاک نداشته باشد) to his shop came, saying that (که) well (خوب) O master barber (استاد دلّاک), now (الحال) I and one of my companions (رفقايم) from (از) the country (اطراف) we wish (مي خواهيم) the pleasure of thy mastery and dexterity (لذّتِ استادي و مهارتِ ترا) we may perceive (دريابيم) Our head (را) for how much (بچند) wilt thou shave (بتراشي) ? Yusuf unmindful (بي خيال) with him in settling the price for both operations (بطيّ مُزدِ هر دو عمل) arose (راست) When the wood-cutter's head clean and neat (پاک و پاکيزه) was shaved (تراشيده شد) Yusuf asked (پرسيد) that thy companion (رفيقت) where (کو) ? The wood-cutter said, here (اينک) just out-side the door (دمِ در) standing (استاده) he is at once (في الفور) I am bringing him (آورمش) accordingly (پس) from the shop he came out (بيرون آمد) and the halter of the donkey (افسار خر را) having taken hold of (گرفته) him into the shop (بدکّان) he pulled (کشيد), saying that (که) here (اينک) my companion (رفيقم) come (بيا), his head (را) shave (بتراش). Yusuf got angry (برآشفت), saying that am I to shave his head or what (سرش را بتراشم يعني چه) ? The head of

one like thee (سر مثل توي) to shave (تراشيدن) for me not enough was (كم نبود) that I must shave the head of thy ass also (بايد سر خرت را هم بتراشم), go (برو), be off with you (گم شو) or (و گرنه) thee (ترا) with this little ass (با همين خرك) to the pit of hell (بدرك) I will send (مي فرستم) This he said (گفت) and the wood-cutter (را) out of (از) the shop he drove (براند) The wood-cutter immediately (في الفور) to the Khalifa went and what had happened (چگونگي را) he told (عرض نمود) The Khalifa one of his officers (سرهنگان خود را) ordered (بفرمود) that (تا) Yusuf (را) with his shaving requisites (با اسباب سر تراشي او) soon (بزودي) they brought (بياوردند) The Khalifa turned towards him (روي بدو نمود) saying that why (چرا) the head of the companion of this man (مرد) didst thou not shave (نمي تراشي) ? Yet (مگر) thy agreement (قرار تو) for shaving of (بتراشيدن) two head has not been (نبوده است) ? Yusuf the ground of service (زمين خدمت) kissed (ببوسيد), saying that O Commander of the Faithful (امير المؤمنين) ! true (راست) it is that our engagement (قرار ما) such (همچو) has been (بوده) but till now (تا كنون) the ass the companion of man (انسان) where (كجا) has been (بوده است) ? The Khalifa said it is true enough (بس راست است) but till now the pack-saddle where part of fire-wood (جزوي هيزم) have been (بوده است) No, no (نه خير), now (حالا) the turn (نوبت) with (به) the wood-cutter is So the head of his ass (سر خرش را) thou must immediately shave (بايد في الفور بتراشي), otherwise (و گرنه) thy punishment (سزاي خويش) thou shalt see (خواهي ديد) So the barber

from fulfilling the agreement (ايفاي معاهده) having seen no escape (هيچ گريزي نديده) with a great quantity of soap (با صابون) in the presence of (در حضور) the Khalifa and all of the spectators and courtiers (حاضران و اهالي) with their jeering and mocking (با سخريه و استهزاي ايشان) the ass (خر) totally (بكلي) he shaved (تراشيد). The Khalifa the wood-cutter (را) with a reward (با انعامي) suitable to his condition (مناسب حال او) sent away (روانه كرد) and the renown of the justice of (آوازه عدل و داد) the Khalifa throughout Baghdad (همه بغداد) resounded (پيچيد)

NOTES

95 (a) چند as an Interrogative Particle may be used for both animate and inanimate objects with or without a following Substantive as تو چند روس كشتي say how many Russians hast thou kill? تو ماهوار چند است how much (or what) monthly wages hast thou? خوب آخر چند بدهي well what will you give?

(b) As an Indefinite Numeral Adjective چند may either precede or follow a Substantive in which case the Substantive must have the ياي تنكير annexed to it but in both cases the Substantive is generally used in the singular number as ميخواهم چند كلمه عرض كنم I will say a few words اتفاقا چند نفر راهزن سر راه او ريختند by chance some high-way men attacked his cart دختركي چند از دور اين حال را مشاهده كردند some of the maidens saw this from a distance بعد از دمي چند كشيدن قليان رو به كدخدا كرده after having let off several whiff from his pipe he turned towards the head-man

Sometimes, however, in modern Persian it may follow a plural noun, as من شاهدهاي چند دارم I have several witnesses, ادّعاهاي چند مي كند كه تا حال كسي در ايران نديده و نشنيده است he pretends to the knowledge of several things, which no one in Persia has yet heard of or seen.

(*c*) چندي more commonly occurs in the sense of '*a short time, a few days, for sometime*', as چندي از مريم بي خبر در آخر شنيدم كه در ايروان در سراي سردار است having no information of Mariam for sometime at length I heard that she was at Erivan in the seraglio of the Sardar, نياكانِ ما و پدرم تا چندي پيش از اين در كوههاي ممالكِ كردستان چادر نشين بودند our fore-fathers and my father till a short time before this lived encamped in the mountains of Kurdistan, چندي بعد ازين عزمِ طهران كردم a few days afterwards I started for Tehran

(*d*) It may be formed into compounds such as چندان - چندين چند آنكه and هرچند, as چندين دروغ چرا گفتي why did you tell so many lies? آن هم چندان پيداش نيست that also is not so palpable, چندان تازگي ندارد it has no such novelty, بعد از حوادثِ چندين غزلِ موزون و پيمودنِ چندين ساغر گلگون كيسهٔ اشعار خالي و شيشهٔ شراب تهي گرديد after having sung so many melodious songs and having measured so many cups of rosy wine, the purse became void of verse and the bottle of wine, چند آنكه شترمرغ آهن مي گوارد تو نقره و طلا مي گواري you can digest as much silver and gold as an ostrich can digest iron, هرچند بعمارتِ ايشان كوشي دخرابئ تو مي كوشند inspite of thy trying to contribute to their prosperity, they would endeavour to ruin thee

(c) It may also be used idiomatically as باکسانکه از حدود چوبدوی جهرلداشتند سامی و افراسیابی می نمودم he made himself out to be a Sam or an Afrasiyab before those who did not know his real character ای فرزند ! هنر چندانی نبود my son it was not much of a service بی آنکه بفهمم چیست آن را سخت در زیر بغل نهادم without ascertaining its real nature I concealed it tight under my arm-pit.

97 (a) کس (کسی and کسان) is declinable as کسی در سرای نیست there is no one in the house دل کسی مخراش do not wound the heart of anyone در تفلیس یا شهرهای دیگر کسی مرا نمی شناسد in Tiflis or other cities no one knows me دیگر راه زنی نمی کنم و کسی را لخت نمی کنم I will never again be a highway man nor rob any one

(b) کس is also used in the sense of *a person of worth consequence* to which is opposed ناکس *a no-body* as ناکس بتربیت نشود کس a worth-less person will not, by education, become a person of worth کس و ناکس noble and plebeian high and low every body

(c) It forms the Compound Relatives کسیکه and کسانیکه as هرکه را میخواهی بده give to whom-so-ever you wish کسانیکه دزدی و دلکی نمی کنند و بصنعت و تجارت مشغول اند چه قدر آسوده و خوش گذران اند do you not hear how those, who do not rob nor commit crime and are employed in trade and commerce lead happy and contented lives?

98 The idiomatic uses of the word شکر (sugar) are (i) شکرخنده a sweet smile (ii) شکرآبی a falling out coolness

between friends; (iii) شکر بار raining sweet, mellifluous, (iv) شکر خواب a sweet sleep, (v) شکرریز طرب tears of joy, (vi) شکرلنگ some-what lame

99 ماضي احتمالي (the Past of Probability) is used (i) to denote a *conviction* in the mind of the speaker as to the occurrence of a Past event, as آنجه رز بعرمائید ازین مژده چه قدر باید خرسند شده باشم conceive how great must have been my joy on hearing these glad tidings, لهذا بالضرور بايستي مرده باشد therefore he must have been dead necessarily, خلاصه بقول او هر صفتي كه بايد اسب نداشته باشد داشت in short according to his assertion it had every quality that a horse ought not to have (ii) to denote the *probability* of an event having occurred, as هيچ نوميد نبودم كه روزي بيكي از اهل شرق رسيده باشم كه سرگذشت خود را چنانچه بايد نوشته باشد I was quite sanguine that some day or other I would meet with a native of the East who might have written out his own story properly, شاه خواسته بود كه تا مراجعت او از اردو زينب قابل حضور او شده باشد the king had wished that till his return from the camp Zainab might be made fit to be brought to his presence, (iii) to denote the *possibility* of an event having occurred, as حكيم چوب خورده باشد the physician might have been flogged, چارهٔ درد من ديدار كسي است كه از ايران آمده باشد the remedy for my pain is a sight of the person who might have come from Persia. (iv) to signify an *indirect* or *implied condition*, as هركه اين قنديل طلسمات با خود داشته باشد رويين تن است every one who might have on his person such a talisman is invulnerable, كارهائيكه عادي طبيعت كسي شده باشد محال است كه از ذهن او بيرون رود it is impos-

sible that the deeds which might have become habitual to a person be eradicated from his nature, (v) in Conditional Sentences where the Conditional Clause deals with something *improbable* or *uncertain* as اگر واقعاً رفته باشد خبر بقونسول فرستاده باشد if he should really have gone, he would have sent word to the Consul.

100. The Vocative is formed (i) by prefixing اي to the Nominative, as اي مردان بكوشيد O men! make an effort or (ii) by affixing an الف to it, as خدايا جانش بستان O God! take away his life بلبلا مژده بهار بيار O nightingale! bring good tidings of the Spring or (iii) by simply using the Nominative as سعدي ره كعبهٔ رضا گير Sa'di! take the path of the Ka'ba of Divine favour, رفيق حقيقت اين است كه اگر پول نقد نداريد بيهوده زحمت مكشيد friend! the real fact is this that unless you have money in cash do not disturb yourselves for nothing

101 The uses of the Passive Construction which is comparatively rare in Persian may be illustrated thus (i) كم مانده بود كه كارش ساخته شود little had remained that his work (or life) would have been finished اگر مي رفتم شايد كشته مي شدم if I had gone, perhaps I would have been killed تفصيل قضيه را چنانكه واقع شده نه بلكه چنانكه گفته شده بود گفتم I described the details of the occurrence not as it had really happened but rather as it had been (already) told (ii) گرهي كه از دست گشوده مي شود چرا بايد بدندان زحمت داد why must one take the trouble to apply the teeth to a knot which could be opened by the hand? آن بايست از جانب دولت داده شود that must be supplied by (or on the part of) the

(ii) to represent the Accusative or the Dative case as نكي از رقيبان زهرش داده one of her rivals has administered poison to her در لباس ارمنيس ديدم I saw her in the dress of an Armenian بهترين زنانش يافتم I found her to be the best of women (iii) as an affix to the Imperative to form Verbal nouns as بخشش charity آسايش ease آرايش adornment سوزش burning and كوشش endeavour

105 اينك is a strengthened form of the demonstrative اين by suffixing ك to it and means 'lo! here' (is) or here (is) or behold this' (is) &c. as (i) اينك من آن سگ behold, I am that dog اينك اين فرشته پسر فلان قمسلوي behold this angel is the son of so and so of Qamshalau (ii) اينك شرح حال علي العموم this is a statement of things in general اينك سرگذشت من this is my story اينك سبب فرستادن من this is the cause of sending me اينك وقت آنست كه باعتقاد خود عمل كني this is the time when thou shouldst act according to thy belief (iii) اينك من و اينك او here am I and here is she.

106 The uses of the particle وگرنه may be illustrated thus as اگر دهان داري بر آر وگرنه چشم بپوش و بصبر بكوش if you have the power enjoy it, otherwise give it up and try to be patient as راستي خوب است كه با شخصي طالبي باشد وگرنه چه فايده از آن truth is an excellent thing when it suits one's purpose otherwise of what use is it? تاريكي شب هم بعزيزم رسيد وگرنه پريدن رنگ و دست پاچگي و نالش بخطر مي انداخت the darkness of the night also helped me, otherwise the paling of my countenance, my precipitation and anxiety would have endangered me.

107. (*a*) The letter ک as a Diminutive Suffix is applicable to both animate and inanimate objects, as این دخترک بدقماش نیست this girl is not a bad bit of stuff (*familiarity*), میمون جانورک معقوبیست the monkey is a disgusting creature (*contempt*), مگر این بزک شما سحر می کند does this wonderful goat of yours perform any magic (*surprise*)? چند از این تصنیفکهای هرزه به بچه‌ها یاد داده است he has taught the boys some of these low vulgar songs (*contempt*), سوادکی پیدا کردم I acquired a little education (*small amount*)

(*b*) It may also be added to Adjectives, as شیرینک sweetish, کمترک a little less, آن طرف ترک a little more that way, فراترک a little higher, مزد حمام را بدک ندادم I paid rather a good sum to the manager of the bath.

108 (*a*) In Persian the Direct form of Narration is more commonly used, but in connection with Verbs of '*ordering*' the Indirect form is preferred to the Direct, as instead of saying پادشاه فرمود تا غلام را بدریا بیندار (the King ordered, saying, 'throw the slave into the sea') we should say پادشاه فرمود تا غلام را بدریا بیندازند the king ordered to throw the slave into the sea

(*b*) Further instances of the use of the Indirect form of Narration are (1) سوگند خورد که چون بیابد بیک درم بفروشد he swore an oath that when he should find it he would sell it for a diram, (ii) باید اقرار بکنی تاجری thou must confess that thou art a merchant (iii) از سگ کمترم می گویند they say that I am less than a dog, (iv) یکی از آن میان بساحت که از ، تکاب حکیم شاهم one

among them recognised me as one of the dependants of the King's physician

109. The uses of مگر as an Interrogative Particle may be illustrated thus (i) مگر دیوانه شده are you gone mad? مثل او جوانِ پاکدامن درست قول در همهٔ ایلهای ما مگر هست is there any such honourable youth like him, and so true in what he says in all our village? (ii) مگر لقمهٔ زیاد سرمی شکند will a little extra morsel break your head? مگر گران بنظر آمد does it appear to be dear to you? (iii) مگر جوانان نیستید are you not young men? مگر من هم مثل شما مسلمان نیستم am I not a Musalman like you? مگر این شعر حافظ را نشنیده hast thou not heard this verse of Hafiz? مگر او را نمی شناسی که چه قدر لجوج است don't you know how self willed he is?

110. List of Compound Verbs (continued) (i) از ذهن ساقط شدن to be obliterated from memory (ii) راست گفتن to speak the truth (iii) راضی کردن to satisfy راضی شدن to be satisfied (iv) راه افتادن to set out راه انداختن to set going راه بردن to manage راه خود پیش گرفتن to pursue one's journey راه دادن to admit راه رفتن to walk راه زدن to commit high-way robbery راه نمودن to point out the road to guide (v) رجوع کردن to consign refer, appeal to (vi) رحم کردن to have pity on (vii) رخت از جهان بستن to die (viii) رحل بجای کشیدن to remove to a place (ix) رد کردن to reject رد شدن to be rejected (x) رستگار فرمودن یا نمودن to liberate, set free (xi) رشوه خوردن to take a bribe (xii) رقم زدن to write (xiii) رم کردن to run away (*horse*): (xiv) رنگ از رو پریدن to grow pale رنگ دیگر گرفتن to wear another aspect (*business*) رنگ ریختن

to feign (xv) روا داشتن to allow, sanction (xvi) رواج داشتن to be current (xvii) رونما شدن to be made public, روي درهم کشيدن to frown, رو گردانيدن to desert (xviii) روزه گرفتن to fast, روزه خوردن to avoid fasting (xix) روشن کردن to light up, render clear (xx) رها کردن to release (xxi) رهن دادن to give in pledge (xxii) ريز ريز کردن to tear into pieces (xxiii) درِيش خود خريدن to accept as one's due (xxiv) زالو انداختن to apply leeches (xxv) زائده شدن to be born (xxvi) زبان دادن to promise, دربان آوردن to speak, say, زبان کشادن to open one's mouth, speak (*polite*), زبان گرفتن to stammer, زبان گرفتن to hold one's tongue (xxvii) زحمت دادن to give trouble, زحمت کشيدن to take trouble (xxviii) زمين زدن to throw down (xxix) زن خواستن to wish to marry, زن گرفتن to marry (xxx) زنده کردن to animate, enliven, زنده گشتن to revive, come to life (xxxi) زوزه کشيدن to howl (*jackal*) (xxxii) زور زدن to hit hard, زور کردن to force, بزور گرفتن to seize by force (xxxiii) سبقت بردن to excell, surpass, سبقت گرفتن to take precedence of, to anticipate (xxxiv) سپر انداختن to submit (xxxv) سراپا گوش بودن to listen with absorbing attention بسرآب رفتن to go to the lavatory (*polite*), سر از پا نشناختن to be utterly confused, سر برداشتن to raise the head, to rebel سر بر زدن to happen, occur, سر پائين انداختن to hang down the head, سر در کشيدن يا سر پيچيدن to disobey سر دادن يا سر کردن to let loose, to discharge (*a fire arm*), سر دست افشاندن to be in a rage, سر فرو بردن to be ashamed, سر فرود آوردن to bow the head سرِ قولِ خود ايستادن to keep to one's word, بسر زدن to put on the head (*hat*), از سر گرفتن to begin at the beginning سر و صورت دادن to accom-

plish سرزور کردن to be angry at, rebuke (xxxvi) سرپرس از روی سر ا عورس (xxxvii) to lift up the veil from an affair کار بر داشتن to freeze (xxxviii) سکه زدن to strike coins (xxxix) سخت کردن to stipulate سودا در داغ پختن to entertain desire for a thing (lx) سوگند خوردن to take an oath سوگند یاد کردن to vow (lxi) سیاه شدن to become black, to be afflicted (lxii) سیر کردن to go for a promenade, to go on (*foot*) سیر آمدن to be tired disgusted (lxiii) سینه سپر کردن to stand in the foremost ranks without flinching سینه گشادن to be happy

13. Socrates —I

Socrates was born at Athens 498 years before Christ. He received the best education which an Athenian could obtain. He first learnt sculpture, in which he acquired some reputation. He then served his country as a soldier according to the duty of all Athenian citizens He displayed much fortitude and valour in all the expeditions in which he was engaged He was as brave as a Senator as he had been as a soldier He possessed that high moral courage which can brave not only death but adverse opinion. He could defy a tyrant as well as a tyrannical mob When the admirals were tried after the battle of Arginusae, for not having rescued the bodies of the slain, Socrates stood alone in defending them The mob were furious He was dismissed from the council, and the admirals were condemned Socrates then devoted himself to teaching He stood in the market places, entered the workshops, and visited the schools, in order to teach the people his ideas respecting the scope and value of human speculation and action He insisted upon moral conduct as alone guiding man to happiness here and hereafter Socrates went about teaching Wise men and pupils followed him Aristippus offered him a large sum of money but the offer was at once declined. Socrates did not teach for money but to propagate wisdom He declared that the highest reward he could enjoy was to see mankind benefited by his labours. He was of opinion that the only valuable

philosophy is that which teaches us our moral duties and religious hopes

Four hundred (چہار صد) and sixty (شصت) and eight (هشت) year (سال) before (قبل از) the birth of (ولادت) Christ (مسیح) Socrates (سقراط) in the city of Athens (شهر اتاییه) was born (زائده شد), and an education and training (تعلیم و تربیتي), that during that time (در آن زمان) for the Athenians (اهل اتاییه را) possible (ممکن) was, in the highest degree (بدرجهٔ اولی) obtained (یافت) First (ابتدائیں) the art of (صنعت) sculpture (کالبدگری را یا نقّاشي را) he learnt (بیاموخت) till (تا) in that some reputation (شهرتکي) he acquired (حاصل کرد) Then (بعد از آن) as a soldier (بحیثیت سرباري) which one of the bounden duties of (یکي از تکلیفهاي لازمي) every one of the people of Athens (همهٔ اهل اتاییه) was, in the service of his own Government (بخدمت دولت خود) connected (منسلك) he became (گشت), and in every one of the battles in which (در همهٔ کارزارهایکه) in that (در آن) his participation (شرکتش) happened (اتّفاق افتاد) the dues of fortitude and valour (داد شجاعت و مردانگي) he gave (بداد), and when he was given a place among the senators (در سلك ارکان مشورت داخل شد) the same (همان) intrepidity (دلیري) and zeal (غیرت را) he made use of (بکار برد) because (چه) man (مردي) was so (چنان) possessed of constancy (اولو العزم) and full of courage (پر همت) that not only (نه تنها) from death but (بلکه) from adverse opinion (رائ مخالف) also (هم) a fear (باکي) he used not to have (نداشتي) and against (بر) the actions of every oppressor

(ازرهائي هر روستي) whether he be a single individual (خواه از شخصي تنها باشد) or a numerous mob (خواه انبوهي عديد) the power of resistance (تابِ مقاومت) he used to bring forward (حاضرمي ، Such as (چنانچه) at the time when (وقتيكه) after (بعد از) the battle of Arginusae (جنگِ ارغنسه) the admirals (دريا بيگيان را) for the crime of leaving behind the dead bodies of the slain (بجرمِ ترکِ نعشهاي مقتولان) they were trying (محاكمه با مواخذه مي كردند), Socrates all alone (يک و تنها) pleaded for them (براي ايشان حجت بر آورد), so that (تا) mob of the common people (انبوهي از عوام الناس) furious (سخت اى) becoming (شده) at length (آخركار) Socrates (را) from the council (مجلس) they dismissed (معزول ساختند) and upon (بر) the admirals they condemned (بحكم كردند) Then (پس) at that time (آنگاه) Socrates in teaching and guiding of the people (بتعليم و هدايتِ الناس) became engaged (مشغول گشت) In the market places (چهارسو ها) he would stand (بايستادي) and inside the workshops (درون كارگاه ها) he would go (رفتي) and to the schools ([illegible]) he would frequent (آمد و شد كردي), so that the questions of the limits of the speculations and actions of men (تا مسائلِ حدودِ تفكّرات و عملهاي انساني) and their results and uses (نتائج و فوائد آنها را) according to his own idea and belief (حسبِ خيال و عقيدهٔ خود) to the people (به مردمان) he might teach (بياموزد) and with most decided injunction (با تأكيدِ اكيد) he used to say (مي گفت) for happiness here and hereafter (خرسندي دنيا و آخرت را) except (بجز) moral conduct (= holy living and continence پارسائي و پرهيزكاري) there is no other way

(هیچ طریقي دیگر نیست). Socrates teaching (هدایت کنان) went about (دور مي نمود) and men of wisdom (اربابِ خرد) and pupils (تلمیذان) used to follow him (در پئ او مي رفتند) Aristippus (ارسطیفس) wished (مي خواست) a large sum of money (مبلغ خطیري) he may offer him (پیش کش بیارد) but Socrates quickly (سریعاً) refused (انکار کرد) saying that (که) my desire (مدّعاي من) by (از) this teaching and instruction (تعلیم و تعلّم) not (نه) the getting of money (تحصیلِ زر) but (بلکه) pure (محض) propagation of wisdom and philosophy (انتشارِ دانائي و حکمت) is The reward (مزدي) which to me (نزدِ من) than (از) all more precious (عزیز تر) is, this is that I may see (ببینم) by my labours (از جدّ و جهدم) for mankind (بني نوعِ انسان را) a benefit (منفعتي) obtained is (حاصل شود), and also (نیز) he used to say (مي گفت) only (تنها) that which (هرچه) from the knowledges (علوم) and sciences (فنون) purity of morals (پاکیزگئ اخلاق) teaches (بیاموزد) and religious aspiration (حوصلهٔ دیني) and religious zeal (اشتیاقِ مذهبی) originates (پیدا کند) for us valuable (مفید) is and enough (بس)

NOTES

111 The following examples illustrate how to express '*Time how long before or after*' (1) پنجاه سال قبل ازین fifty years before this, هفت و هشت ماه قبل از وبا seven or eight months before the plague, چند روز قبل از ورودِ او a few days before his arrival یک هفته پیش از فوتِ حاجي غفور a week before Haji Ghafur's death شبِ پیشِ روزِ سفر on the night before the day of starting (ii) چند روز

بعد از آن a few days after that بعد از چاردہ روز در ساعتِ معیّن after fourteen days at the appointed hour بعد از وفات او بصد سال after his death by a hundred years.

112 Relative Clauses (or Clauses introduced by a Relative Pronoun) may be classified into —

(a) *Attributive Relative Clauses* مثل آدمی که حرف آقا و مردان بسند سرع ندارم I can point out no man who could oppose Aka Mardan صورت گلهای ملکی دنیا که در با عجایبات پارس بی رود در پشت آن بسته شده on its back are drawn the forms of the flowers of the New world which grow in the Garden of Wonders in Paris هر چه روی بر سرم چو در بیندی را است every thing which happens to me if thou approve of it is right مطلب ی آغاز کرده ام باید ساتمام I must end the crime which I have begun اوّل دیداری که ببینم روی نسقچی بود the first sight which I saw was the face of the Nasaqchi هرچه می گویم درست می گویم whatever I say I say correctly رکه دلش ماهی نخواهد عرض را باید سرد می زند he whose heart desires a fish would throw him cell into the cold wat

(b) *Temporal Relative Clauses* as لعنت بدان روز که من شاه را بخانهٔ خود مهمان کرده‌ام cursed be the day on which I invited the King to my house روزیکه این اتفاق افتاده است سه تا سوار پر اسباب و یراق رفتی که از دهٔ شما پائین می رفتند دیده اند the day on which this took place three men on horse back well-armed were seen as they went down from your village

(c) *Adverbial Relative Clauses* as در دکان درآن بود که کتابی گرشیای نابیقه را در آنجا نگاه می داشت in the shop there was h

cup-board wherein the roast-meat-seller kept the uncooked meat اطاقي كه همانجا مرده است ديده شد we saw the very room where he died, از راهي كه آمدة برگير go back by the way thou camest

(*d*) *Continuative Relative Clauses*, as قفسهاي متعدد ديديم كه در هريك انواع حيوانات بود we saw numerous cages in which (or *and in each*) were various animals, رسيديم بفوارة بزرگي كه سي ذرع آب آن مي جست we came to a large fountain the water of which (or *and its water*) shot thirty ells into the air, ناگاه مردي مهيب بلند قامت كه از ديدارش بابا عبدل را سراپا لرزه گرفت داخل شد all on a sudden an awe-inspiring person of tall stature entered, at whose sight (or *and seeing him*) Baba Abdul began to tremble all over

(*e*) *Causal Relative Clauses*, as من كه مثل تو يار زيبا دارم حوريان بهشت بچشم نمي آيد I, who (or *because I*) have such a lover as thou, would not look at the nymphs of paradise, پادشاه امر فرموده بود سر آغاي ينكچيريان را كه آنروزها فساد بزرگ مي كرد ببريد the King ordered and they took off the head of the Agha of the Janissaries who (or *because he*) was creating a great disturbance in those days, يكي بمن بده كه سخت درمانده ام give one to me who (or *because I*) am in great distress

(*f*) *Consecutive Relative Clauses*, as كسي نباشد كه موت خود بر زندگي ترجيح دهد there cannot be any one who (or *such that he*) would prefer death to living, كم كس است درين شهر كه اين خررا نشناسد there are few people in this town who (or *such that they*) would not recognise this ass.

Abstract Substantives may be formed (1) by adding

ـش at the end of certain Adjectives as گرمش warmth heat (from گرم) (ii) by adding ش at the end of the Imperative stem of certain Verbs as تپش palpitation (from تپیدن) خورش food (from خوردن) (iii) by adding ـش after the Imperative stem of certain Verbs as افزایش increase (from افزودن) پرورش nurture (from پروردن) (iv) by adding ی to Substantives Adjectives, Pronouns Participles &c. as دوستی friendship (from دوست) دزدی robbery (from دزد) خوبی beauty excellence (from خوب) دشواری difficulty (from دشوار) منی egoism (from من) گم شدگی the being lost (from گم شده) نیستی non existence (from نیست) هستی existence (from هست) هنرمندی cleverness (from هنرمند) بندگی service (from بنده) زندگی life (from زنده living)

114 Phrases and idioms formed with the word دولت are (i) دولتخانه or دولت سرا a house (polite) (ii) دولتخواهی well wishing (iii) دولت پناه the asylum of the Empire (sovereign) (iv) دولت برانداز destroying the Government (v) دولت معتدبی a considerable fortune (vi) دولت عالیه the exalted state (vii) دولت عثمانیه the Ottoman Empire (viii) دولت علیهٔ خود مان our own exalted Government.

115. Adjectives of Possession are formed by annexing the following suffixes (i) مند as خردمند intelligent wise (from خرد) دانشمند learned, wise (from دانش), برومند fruitful (from بر fruit) تنومند stout, strong (from تن body) (ii) ور or ور as امیدوار hopeful (from امید hope) هنرور skilful, clever (from هنر skill) رنجور afflicted (from رنج pain) (iii) یار as بختیار fortunate happy

(from بخت fortune) شهريار a king (from شهر town), (iv) ناک, as دردناک painful (from درد pain) ترسناک timid (from ترس fear)

116 The uses of the word "تنها" may be illustrated thus (i) چون تنها ماندم باخود گفتم when I was left alone, I said to myself, ما تنها نه ایم رئيس داریم we are not alone, but have a chief روزی نور جهان را دیدم تنها بازار روان one day I saw Nurjehan going out alone to the market (ii) دیدارش تنها کافیست مفسدان را رام the mere sight of him is sufficient to bring the evil minded to order, تنها جواب "بلی بلی" می گفت he was merely saying in reply "Yes! yes!", راست است تو حکیمی امّا حکیم تنها نه it is true you are a physician but you are not a mere physician (iii) شاهزاده تن تنها بر صف دشمنان زد the prince all alone rushed upon the enemies' rank راهب تک و تنها در آمد the monk came out alone and unattended, بعد از طی دو فرسنگ راه خود را تنها و وارسته دیدم after having traversed a distance of two parasangs, I found myself alone and saved (iv) همین که سواد اعظم و بلد معظّم استنبول را دیدم نه تنها متحیّر بلکه دلگیر و متاثّر گردیدم now that I had seen the great and magnificent city of Constantinople, I not only became astonished but also mortified and affected, برای تشخیص مرض نبض گرفتن تنها نیست باید زبان بیمار هم دید in order to judge of an illness one must not only feel the pulse (but) also see the tongue of the patient (v) تنها وارثش تو هستی thou art his only heir, تنها محرمان بدانجا راه داشتند only intimates were allowed access to that place

117 The Turkish termination "بیگی" (from بیگ a thousand) is used in Persian to form certain compounds, as ایلبیگی the

the chief of a nomadic tribe بیگلربیگی the chief *Beg* or a provincial Governor دریا بیگی a naval commander دیوان بیگی a police agent.

118 Phrases and idioms formed with the word " دیوان " are (i) دیوانِ خاص the privy council (ii) دیوان خانه a presence chamber (iii) دیوانیان officers of justice (iv) دیوانِ همایون the august or imperial court (v) تسلیمِ دیوانش می دهد he hands thee over to justice (vi) دیوان بظلم کردن to give an unjust sentence.

119. Compound words and phrases formed with the word چهار or چار are (i) چار بالش a throne (ii) چار پایه or چهار پایه quadruped (iii) چار تکبیر بر او زد he repeated four *takbirs* over him (i.e. abandoned him as dead) (iv) در چار سو on all sides (v) چهار سوی جهان the four quarters of the globe (vi) چار طاق a tent with four doors (vii) چار چشم meeting, interview (viii) چهار دانگ the four quarters of the world, (ix) چهارسو or چارسو a square or market-*place* (x) چهارسوق a place where four roads meet, (xi) چهار یار the four friends (i.e. Abu Bakr Umar, Usman and Ali).

120. The uses of the word دیگر " may be illustrated thus (i) آدمِ دیگر روانه کن او را بیاورد send another man to bring him این حرف دیگر است this is another matter وزرای دیگر در خلوت گفتند the other ministers said to him in private (ii) دیگر دلِ من چه می خواهد what more (or else) should my heart desire? دیگر عرضم ندارم که بکنم I have nothing more to say گویا که دیگر در ولایت حق و حساب نیست may be that in the country there is no more right or reckoning بار دیگر تقصیرکاری نیست بگو و گرنه bearing a

look of meditation, I once more felt the pulse of the Banou (iii) گناهاری بس است دیگروقت توبه درنشب دیگر at the next sitting , است there has been vice enough, next is the time to renounce wicked ways (iv) من هرگز باین حرفها دیگر ساکت نمي شوم I will never again be silent over such words , بعد از تو من چرا باید دیگر در دنیا زنده نمانم after thee why should I remain longer alive on earth ? اصفهان مرا دیگر نخواهد دید مگر با قوّت و قدرت باشد Ispahan shall never again see me unless I come as one bearing authority (v) این گلها رنگ و بوي دیگردارد these flowers have brighter colour and sweeter perfume , نفسِ طایفهٔ اناثیه تاثیرِ دیگر دارد the words of women have a greater effect (vi) مادام که این یکي درخاست آن دیگري درپاست so long as the one is quiet, the other is astir , یکي بحیرت مي نگریست و دیگري دشنام مي داد the one was gazing with surprise while the other was abusing me , دست و بازوش از دست و بازوي دیگران مطلقاً کوچکتراست dost thou think his hand and arms are smaller than those of others ?

121 The Imperfect Statical Participle (اسم حالیه), ending in ان , is used as a Descriptive Adjective expressing the continuance of the action implied by the Verb from which it is derived , as تفکّر کنان بگردش رفتم I went out for a walk, pondering , دیدندش گریزان و اُفتان و خیزان مي رفت they saw him going along running and stumbling , ترسان و هراسان با حالتیکه جاي رشک نیست آمدند they came, fearing and dreading, in no enviable state of mind, لنگان لنگان داخلِ اطاق شده he enters the room, limping

122 The idiomatic uses of the word " محض " are (i) محض خاطرِ شما purely for your sake , هراهي بادي که در حقِّ حقیر

بفرمائید محض لطف و التفات است whatever kindness you will be pleased to bestow upon this humble one would be pure favour and condescension (on your part) (ii) بمحض دیدن موسیو ژوردن و شنیدن اصطلاحاتش از همه رسوم آنها بلدم from merely seeing Monsieur Jourdan and hearing his conversations I have become acquainted with all their customs (iii) بمحض دیدن تو همه فرار خواهند کرد they will run away as soon as they see you بمحض دیدن دست در گردنم انداخته و در کنارم گرفت as soon as she saw me she threw her arms round my neck and drew me to her embrace پدرم بمحض پدیدار شدن اصل مرحله را دریافت as soon as *they were seen, my father understood the matter*

123 Compound Verbs (continued) (i) شاخ زدن to butt with the horn شاخ و برگ لباس to embellish with details (ii) شرط کردن to make a stipulation, to promise (iii) شروع کردن to begin (iv) شدت کردن *to increase* (*pain* or *illness*) (v) شام خوردن to dine (vi) شعر خواندن to recite poetry (vii) شکار کردن to hunt (viii) شکایت بردن از to complain against (ix) شک زده شدن to feel suspicion (x) شکست دادن to defeat, — خوردن to be defeated (xi) شنا کردن *to swim* (xii) شوخی کردن to jest (xiii) بشوهر دادن to give in marriage شوهر کردن to take a husband (xiv) شهادت دادن to give evidence شهادت بردن *to* bring in evidence (xv) شهرت دادن to divulge, spread abroad (xvi) تلخ را شیرین خوردن *to make the* best of a bad job (xvii) شیلانی کشیدن to give an entertainment (xviii) شیون کردن to mourn lament (xix) صادر شدن *to* arrive, occur (xx) صبر کردن یا نمودن to have patience (xxi) صحبت کردن to converse (xxii) صدا کردن to call out (xxiii) صدمه زدن to

beg; (xxiv) صرافت انداختن to get out of a person's mind. (xxv) صرف شدن to be spent, صرف کردن to spend (xxvi) صف کشیدن to draw up in a line (xxvii) صلح کردن to make peace, (xxviii) صورت دادن to carry into effect or arrange, صورت پذیرفتن to assume shape, to be carried out (xxix) صهیل کردن to neigh (xxx) ضایع شدن to be spoiled, destroyed or lost, ضایع کردن to spoil, destroy (xxxi) ضرب خوردن to get a strain (xxxii) ضرر خوردن to suffer wrong (xxxiii) طاقت آوردن to be able to bear (xxxiv) طرح افکندن to lay the foundation of, to practise (xxxv) طفره کردن to make a pretence, to evade, put off. (xxxvi) طلب داشتن to send for (xxxvii) طناب انداختن to strangle, to bow-string (xxxviii) طول کشیدن to be delayed, protracted (xxxix) طي کردن to fold, to travel (xl) ظاهر شدن to appear ظهور آوردن to create, make (xli) ظفر یافتن to be victorious

14. A Sailor and a Shop-keeper

A sailor, who had lived a long time in foreign parts, at last returned to his native land Once there he soon wasted all the money he had saved from his earnings, and was reduced to extreme poverty and impecuniosity One day he entered a small village where he went to a well-known shop-keeper and asked him for a dozen cooked eggs on credit Having got the eggs, he dined upon them, and next morning went off to his own village Sometime elapsed, and the sailor would not pay his debt The shop-keeper, therefore, laid a complaint in writing against him to the head-man of that village to the effect, that such and such a sailor had bought on credit from him a dozen cooked eggs, and until then had not given the money for them Thereby the sailor had caused him a great loss, for from those twelve eggs he would have got twelve chickens and every chicken on becoming a hen, would have ere this laid at least some hundreds of

eggs, from which a large number of other chickens would have come into existence. Thus the covetous shop-keeper claimed an enormous sum. When the impecunious sailor heard this, he went into a wine-shop to forget his ill-luck in drink. There he happened to meet a clever attorney who having come to know of the state of affairs said to him "Dear friend, let your mind be at ease for if you put your affair into my hands, every thing will turn out all right. The sailor thanked him heartily and then went to the head man and told him that such and such a person was his attorney who would soon be present to answer in his stead. The head-man waited for him for a long time and when he did not come, he sent for him When the attorney came, the headman said to him "Well, gentleman, why have you wasted my time? I have been looking out for you for sometime." The attorney replied 'Sir, I was cooking peas, for I want to plant them in my garden and to see what will come of it." The head-man laughed aloud and said 'You fool, don t you know that cooked peas never grow?' He said 'Sir if it is so then when does a chicken come out of a hen s egg that has been cooked?" On hearing this, the head man rejected the shop-keeper s complaint.

A sailor (ملّاحی) who a long time (مدّتِ مدید) in distant countries (ممالکِ بعیده) and foreign climes (اقالیم غریبه) had lived (بسر برده بود) at last (آخرالامر) to his familiar native land (بوطنِ مألوفِ خود) returned (مراجعت نمود) and in that place soon (بزودی) all the money (تمام پولهایرا) which from his earnings (مداخلِ خویش) he had saved (اندوخته بود) having wasted (تلف کرده) to the extremity of poverty and impecuniosity (بنهایتِ مفلسی و بیچارگی) he reached (رسید). One day having entered a small village (داخلِ دهِ کوچکی شده) to a well known shop-keeper (نزد بقّالِ معروفی) he went, and from him a dozen (دوازده دانه) cooked eggs (تخم پخته) asked on credit (نسیه خواهش) That eggs (را) having taken (گرفته) at the time of dinner (در وقتِ طعام)

he ate (نحورد) and the next morning (بامدادان) having set out (راه افتاده) to his own village (بده حود) he went When sometime elapsed (نگذشت) and that sailor his own debt (قرض حود را) was not paying (ادا نمی کرد) that shop-keeper before the head-man of that village (پیش کدحدای آن ده) in writing (مکتوباً) against him (ار وي) to this effect (بدین مضمون) laid a complaint (شکایت برد) that such and such (فلان) a sailor from the slave twelve cooked egg has bought on credit (نسیه کرده است) and until now (تاکنون) the money of it (پول آنرا) has not given (نداده) and on that account (ار آن سبب) to the humble one (باین حقیر) a great loss (خسارت بلیغي) has caused (رسانیده است) for (ریراکه) from that twelve egg for me (براي من) twelve chicken (جوجه) was being produced (پیدا مي شد) and every chicken becoming a hen (مرغ گردیده) at least (اقلاً) some hundred egg (چند صد دانه تخم) had brought (آورده بود) that from them (آنها) a large number of other chickens (بسا جوجه هاي دیگر) was coming into existance (پدید مي آمد), and in this manner (بدین طور) that shop-keeper of covetous habit (دکان دارِ طامع کار) an enormous sum (مبلغ خطیري) was claiming (ادّعا مي نمود) When that impecunious sailor (ملّاح بینوا) this (را) he heard, having gone into a wine-shop (داخلِ میخانه شده) he desired (خواست) that having drunk wine (شراب خورده) his own ill-luck (بدبختي خود را) he may forget (فراموش کند) There by chance (اتّفاقاً) a clever attorney (وکیلِ زرنگي را) he met (ملاقات کرد) who of the state of affairs (ار چگونگی) apprised (مطلّع) having become (شده) to him said O dear friend

(اي دوستِ من) thy mind (خاطرت) be at ease (جمع باشد) for (چه) if thy affair (امر خويش را) to me (بمن) thou then trustest (بسپاري) every thing (هر چيز) to good (بخير) the ending (مي انجامد). The sailor sincerely (مخلصانه) having thanked (اظهار ممنونيت كرده) to the head-man he went and said that such and such a person (فلان شخص) my attorney (وكيل من) is and in my stead (بعوض من) soon having become present (حاضر شده) answer (جواب) will give (خواهد داد). The head-man till a long period (تا مدّتِ دراز) having waited for that attorney (منتظرِ آن وكيل شده) when he did not come (نيامد) after him (عقب او) he sent (فرستاد) and when he came (آمد) from him he asked (پرسيد) that O such a one (اي فلان) why (چرا) my time (وقتِ مرا) thou hast waisted (ضايع كردي) because it is some time (مدّتي است) I have been looking out for thee (انتظار ترا مي كشم). He said O sir (اي آقا) I (= the slave) pea (نخود) was cooking (مي پختم) for (زيرا) I wanted (مي خواستم) it (آنرا) in my own garden (در باغچهٔ خود) having planted (كاشته) I may see (ببينم) what (چه) will be (خواهد شد). The head-man a loud laughter (قهقههٔ بلندي) he struck (زد) saying that, O fool (اي احمق) dost thou not know (مگر نمي داني) that cooked pea (نخودِ پخته) never grows (هرگز نمي رويد). He said O Sir if it is so (اگر چنين است), then from a hen's eggs (تخمِ مرغ) that cooked (پخته شده) is (باشد) chicken when (كي) does come out (بر مي آيد). The head man this (را) having heard (شنيده) that shop-keeper's complaint (شكايتِ آن دكّاندار را) rejected (ردّ نمود).

NOTES.

124 (*a*) '*Place where*' is expressed by the preposition در, as در شهر کاشان زائیده شدم I was born in the city of Kashan, در ورشو زبان فرنگ آموخته بود he had learnt French in Warsaw, در خانهٔ حکیم بجز خاموشی چیزی نبود there was nothing but silence in the house of the physician, آخر میسر شد که در زیر این درخت بلوط ترا به بینم at last I have managed to see thee under this oak-tree

(*b*) '*Place whence*' is expressed by the prepositon از, as از سمنان شادان بیرون آمدم I came out of Samnan with a light heart, کسی از اصفهان خربزهٔ گرگانی برای شاه آورده است some one has brought for the King some Gurgan melons from Ispahan, از طهران باستنبول رفتم from Tehran I went to Constantinople

(*c*) '*Place whither*' is expressed by the preposition به, as لشکر بهرات کشید he led an army to Herat, اولین عزم به مصر بود my first journey was to Egypt, بی چشم زخم بطهران رسیدیم we reached Tehran without any mis-hap, پیرزن مرا از حیاط کوچکی باطاقی برد the old woman took me through a small courtyard to a room

125 The uses of the word 'زود' may be illustrated thus (i) تو زود آنهارا بشکن break them open quickly, زود سکینه خانم پنجره را پائین می کند Sakinah Khanam quickly lowers the lattice زود برخاسته فرار می کند he runs away, rising in haste (ii) دعا کن برای ما زود تر تمام شود pray that our suit may soon come to an end, زلیخا را زود تر روانه کن send off Zulaikha quickly (iii) بزودی سر معامله را بهم بسته راه بازار گرفتم concluding the bargain quickly I took the road to the market, دعا کنم بزودی بآرزوی خود برسی I pray that you may soon attain to your hope (iv) عنقریب به این زودی سر

عروسی زودی می کند یا نه does thy bridal take place soon or not ? که در صحت افزود در فراغی کست when at ease it diminished as rapidly as it had increased while in pain (2) که هرچه زود تر شما را به بیند he wishes to see you as quickly as possible! تعجیل تعجیل باشد quick, quick! be cautious

126 (a) As a Substantive سلام may be used (i) as a noun with or without an izafat, as سلامت وجود مبارک دارد it comprises all of the phrases of equity این نام سلام تمامی عمر با من می بود this name has stuck to me through the whole of my life تمام کوه و زمین تاکستانی است the whole hill-side and the plain is one (continuous) vineyard, or (ii) as a adjective, as تمام ترسایان دل بدو دادند the Christians, all gave their heart to him, دد و دام و مرغ هوا را تمام نیست جز حرص خوردن دام wild and rapacious animals and fowls of the air all naught but greediness into the snare.

(b) As an Adjective it usually follows the Substantive, as نیم پخته تمام خوردیم we ate it half-cooked with perfect appetite با احترام تمام پیش طبیب نهادند they placed it very respectfully in front of the physician حکم را با احترام تمام گرفته نشستم I received the Order with the utmost respect and sat down

(c) It may also form a part of a Verb, as این مجلس ما تمام شد this completed our party تا تمام نکنی خواب حرام است till you have not finished the work you shall have no sleep به یک تیرباران ترکمانان کار ما تمام شد on one shower of arrows from the Turkomans, it was all up with us هنوز تمام نیست it is yet unfinished

127. The Ablative is formed with the preposition از, and may be used (i) with verbs denoting *removal*, *taking away* or *separation*, as اسب را از جا برانگیختم I made my horse start from the place, تا کی از نا مربوط گفتن دست بر نمی داری how long will you not take away thy hand from using improper talk? سرت را مثال سر گنجشک از جای بر می کنیم we will separate your head from its usual place just as that of a sparrow, شش هفت تن از ایشان جدا شدند six or seven persons separated from them (ii) with verbs denoting *delivering*, *freeing*, *bringing* or *fleeing*, as بدین تدبیر گریبانم را از چنگش برهانم I will thus free my neck from his clutches, باید بیرون کشیدن ازین ورطه رخت خویش one must drag out his own chattels from this whirl-pool, بهزار مشقت از دستش گریخته است with thousand efforts he has fled from his hands, از آنجا کاسهٔ چینی بروم برم I will take China cups from there to Rum, من از بام فرار کردم I fled by the roof (iii) with verbs denoting *inability* or *defect*, as از آن کار عاجز ماندم I was unable to perform that work, سمند بادپا از تک فرو ماند the fleet horse could not keep up the pace, کاری از دستم بر نمی آید I cannot do anything (iv) with verbs denoting *with-holding*, *leaving behind*, or *abandoning*, as دست از طعام کشید he drew back his hand from the food, برو بگو از این خیال بیفتد go and tell him to abandon this idea, مدتیست از وکیلی دست کشیده است for a long time he has given up pleading (v) with verbs denoting *informing*, *displeasing*, *committing*, *revolting against*, *abstaining from*, &c, as آمدم سکینه خانم را از خیال آنها خبردار کنم I have come to inform Sikinah Khanam of their thoughts

روحِ همهٔ مُردهای ما را از خانوادهٔ ما بیزار کنی you will displease the spirits of all our dead relatives against our house-hold , چه تقصیر از من صادر شده است what fault has been committed by me ? او بر آن پادشاه خروج کرد he revolted against that monarch , زبان نگاه سخن نگاه کن abstain from uttering such words , من از او خوشدلی ندارم I am not in good terms with him من دو سال است از مکتب بیرون آمده ام it is two years that I have left school از دهنت بوی شیر می آید the smell of milk comes from your mouth در این روز تنگ اعانت خود را از من مضایقه نکنی in this evil day you will not refuse me your assistance زنانِ ما همیشه خود شان را از مردها پنهان می کنند our women always conceal themselves from men ممکن است این تقصیر از زیبا خانم سرزده باشد it is possible that this offence might have issued from Ziba Khanam

128 The uses of the word غایت may be illustrated thus (i) مشکی در غایتِ بزرگی پُر از آب بر دوش an immense sack full of water on the back (ii) در آن منزل مندبه از غایتِ دلتنگی و مفارقت شنمبه در گذشت at that stage Mandabah from excess of weariness and separation from Shanmbah expired ; (iii) تا روزیکه احتیاج بغایت و ضرورت بنهایت رسد از آن فائده تواند گرفت so that when extreme need and utmost necessity should arise he could reap benefit therefrom (iv) آن کوهی بود بغایت بلندی و رفع that was a mountain of extreme height and elevation (v) امروز مورد عنایاتِ بغایاتِ جهانداری گشتم to-day I have become the object of endless royal favours

129 The Locative is expressed by the preposition در or بر بر در آن مکتب گذر کردم 23 به I passed by the door of that school ; می ترسم در وقتِ مراجعت قادر بر اظهار نباشد I fear lest at the time of

یکروز از دروازهٔ طوقچی بیرون شدیم one morning at dawn we went out by the Tawaqchi gate با طلوعی - زود بر استرم یک نیزه آفتاب بلند شده بود مسافتی از قم را پیموده بودم having mounted my mule at break of day I was considerably advanced on my way to Kum ere the sun had risen to the height of a spear (ii) بامداد بدیدن وی رفتم next morning I went to see him

132 While translating an English sentence in the Indirect form of narration it should be first changed into the Direct form of narration, and then rendered into Persian as he asked who that person was (= he asked who that person is) پرسید که آن شخص کیست they said that they wanted to wait (= they said we wanted to wait) گفتند که می خواهیم صبر کنیم he said that he would come to-morrow (= he said I will come to-morrow) گفت فردا می آیم

133 Examples of the uses of the word الحال are (i) الحال مسافر حکومتی خود است در مشهد می رود now he is proceeding to Mashhed the seat of his government در خود الحال نیروی جوانی در می یابم now I find in me the strength of a youth و الحال اینم که می بینی now I am such as you see me (ii) الحال مدتی که در مشهدم it is now sometimes that I have been at Mashhed, تا الحال هم در آن سایه زندگانی می کنم I am still living upon the shelter of this (reputation)

134. In Concessive Clauses the concession is expressed—(i) by اگر - اگرچه or با وجود or هر چند, as اگر یک چشم ما در خواب باشد دیگری باز است although our one eye is asleep, the other is open اگر چه درع و الباس سپید شد آهوان چنگیز و هلاکو هنوز باقی است

although the blood of Turaj or Afrasiyab is cold, the descendants of Changiz or Halaku still survive , اگر چه در عالم کم خُلقي او چوب و ملک مضایقه ندارد امّا شیرین زبان و دلخواست although in times of ill-temper he is nothing loath to make use of flogging, yet he was sweet-speaking and amiable , با آن کس همان کنم که با این سگ کردم اگر هم فرزند و برادرِ من باشد I will treat that man exactly as I have treated this dog, even though he were my child or my brother (ii) by باوجود or چندانکه , as باوجود این صفاتِ پسندیده بعدم رحم و قساوتِ قلب مشهور بود , inspite of these laudable qualities he was notorious for mercilessness and hardness of heart , چندانکه ملاطفت کردند آرام نگرفت inspite of all their attempts to soothe him, he received no comfort

135 Arabic Nouns in the Accusative (ending in *tanwin*) are frequntly used in Persian as Adverbs as غالباً probably , حقاً truly , عمداً or تعمداً intentionally , احیاناً at times , دائماً continually , اصلاً never , انصافاً justly , اولاً firstly , ثانیاً secondly , فوراً at once , حقیقةً in truth , صراحةً clearly , ظاهراً manifestly openly , غفلتاً negligently , مجدداً anew, newly , حقّاً justly, righteously , خصوصاً especially ; واقعاً really

136 Compound Verbs (cotinued) (i) عادت کردن یا داشتن to make a practice of (ii) عازم جائي بودن to be bound for a place (iii) عائد کردن to return (iv) عذر خواستن to beg pardon ; عذر نهادن to excuse (v) عرض کردن to make a petition, to say (*polite*) (vi) عرق ریختن to perspire , عرق کشیدن to distil spirituous liquor (vii) عروسي کردن to make espousals , (viii) عطائ کسي را بلقاي او بخشیدن to refuse one's gift (ix) عطسه کردن to sneeze ;

(x) عقب جستن to jump back تعقب کردن to follow [illegible]
تعقب کشیدن to draw back (xi) عقد بستن to betroth, to [illegible]
(xii) عمل کردن to act, perform عمل آمدن / to come in [illegible]
بعمل آوردن to carry out (xiii) عوض کردن to change [illegible]
(xiv) عهده برآمدن / از عهده to fulfil a duty عهده گرفتن to make a [illegible]
take a responsibility (xv) عیب داشتن to matter [illegible]
quence عیب گرفتن to find fault (xvi) غارت شدن to [illegible] un-
dered غارت کردن to destroy (xvii) غرقه دادن to [illegible]
(xviii) غرق شدن to be drowned (xix) غرض آمدن to [illegible]
(xx) غفلت کردن to neglect (xxi) غلط کردن to make a [illegible] to
commit a crime (xxii) غم خوردن to sorrow grieve (xxiii) غضب آمدن
to get into a passion (xxiv) عاشق گرفتن to be a lover (xxv) عاشق
کردن to divulge (a secret) (xxvi) فاش کردن [illegible] take [illegible]
(xxvii) فحش دادن to abuse (a *person*) (xxviii) فدا کردن [illegible]
fice oneself (xxix) فرار کردن to flee بفرار نهادن to take to
flight (xxx) فراموش کردن to forget (xxxi) فرش انداختن to [illegible]
a carpet (xxxii) فرصت کردن to get a chance فرصت را غنیمت شمردن
فرصت کردن to take advantage of an opportunity (xxxiii) [illegible]
[illegible] to make a duty of it, to take for granted (xxxiv) [illegible]
آوردن to hang down the head (xxxv) [illegible] [illegible] cry or
shout out (xxxvi) فریب خوردن to be duped (xxxvii) فکر کردن to
reflect فکر داشتن to give thought to, to take care of از فکر افتادن
to give up an idea (xxxviii) فوت شدن to die (xxxix) [illegible]
to be at a loss (xl) قایم کردن یا شدن to establish or be established, to hide or be hidden (xli) قبول کردن to accept [illegible] قبول
کردن to take one at his word قبول خاطر کردن to be liked

universally (xlii) قدغن شدن to be interdicted (xliii) قرار دادن to fix, قرار گرفتن to establish oneself firmly (xliv) قصد کردن to make an attempt on a man's life or honour (xlv) قرض دادن to lend, قرض گرفتن to borrow (xlvi) قسم خوردن to take an oath (xlvii) قسمت کردن to partition, allot, divide (xlviii) قطع کردن to cross, traverse (xlix) قمار باختن to gamble (l) قلم دادن to give oneself out as so and so, قلم درکشیدن to obliterate (li) قول دادن to give one's word, promise (lii) در قید بودن to be in the hands of

15. Socrates.—II.

In his seventy second year Socrates was brought before the judges The accusers stated their charge as follows "Socrates is an evil-doer, and corrupter of the youth, he does not receive the gods whom the state receives but introduces new divinities" He was tried on these grounds and condemned to die He was taken to his prison, and for thirty days he conversed with his friends on his favourite topics Crito provided for him the means of escaping from the prison, but he would not avail himself of the opportunity He conversed about the immortality of the soul, about courage and virtue, and temperance, about absolute beauty and about absolute good, and about his wife and children He consoled his weeping friends, and gently upbraided them for their complaints about the injustice of his sentence He was about to die Why should they complain? He was far advanced in years Had they waited a short time, the thing would have happened in the course of nature No man ever welcomed death as a new birth to a higher state of being with greater faith The time at length came when the gaoler presented him with the cup of hemlock He drank it with courage, and died in complete calmness "Such was the end" said Pheado, "of our friend, whom I may trully call the wisest and justest and best of all the men whom I have ever known"

At the age of seventy two (در هفتاد و دو سالگي) Socrates (ﺭ) having brought before the judges (محاکمه کشیده) thus (چنین) they accused (متّهم ساختند) that one of the wicked (يکي از بدکاران) he is, who ignorant youths (جوانان ناشی را) leads stray (ازره) منکر خدایان (در مي برد) and denier of the gods of our state (دولت) becoming (شده) with other gods (با خدایان دیگر) he joins (مي پیوندد). Then Socrates (ﺭ) for the crimes stated (بجرائم مذکوره) they tried (درس کرده) and with the punishment of death (بسزاي موت) they condemned (محکوم کردند) After that Socrates (ﺭ) to prison (بزندان) they took (بردند) wherein (که درآنجا) for thirty day (تا سي روز) with his friends and followers (با دوستان و معتقدان خود) having conversed (صحبت داشته) on his favourite topics (در باب معانیهاي مرغوب طبع خود) of the kind of the immortality of the soul (از قبیل ابدیت روح) and the excellences of the qualities of courage and virtue and temperance (فضایل شمائل شجاعت و تقوی و ریاضت) and the substance of absolute beauty and absolute good (ماهیت حُسن مطلق و خیر مطلق) and about his wife and children (در خصوص زن و اطفال خود) he was talking (سخنها مي راند). Crito (قریطو) for him (براي او) the means of escaping from prison (اسباب گریختن از زندان) had provided (آماده کرده بود) but he did not wish (نمي خواست) that he would avail himself of it (از آن بهره بگیرد) and his weeping friends (یاران اشکبار خود) he was consoling (تسلّي مي داد) that why (چرا) about the injustice of this sentence (از بیداد این حکم) that passes over me (که بر من مي گذرد) do you complain (ناله و فریاد بکنید), for (که) I am a person

about to die (من شخصي مردني ام) and the period of my life has reached the limit (ايّام عمرم بپايان رسيده) Then what is the complaint (پس شكايت يعني چه) ? If a short time (قدري) they had waited (توقّف كرده‌دي) my death (مرگم) naturally (طبعاً) would have happened (اتّفاق افتادي) Moreover (علاوه برين) (ايمانم) is upon this (برايناست) that death a new birth itself is (موت عين ولادت جديده است) which us (مارا) to a higher state of being (بمرتبۀ اعلي تر) make reach (برساند), and with a stronger faith (با اعتقاد قوي تر) than (از) this my faith no man ever welcomed death (هرگز هيچ انساني موت را نپذيرفته) At the appointed time (در وقت معيّن) that at length came (دررسيد) the gaoler (زندانبان) before him (پيش وي) a cup full of deadly poison (قدحي پُر از سم قاتل) presented (اظهار نمود) that drink (بنوش) Then Socrates it (آنرا) with perfect courage (بجرأت تمام) he drank (بنوشيد) and in extreme calmness (در غايت خود داري) gave up the ghost (جان بحق تسليم نمود) Phaedo (فيدو) was saying that thus (همچنين) came to end (اختتام يافت) the dear life of that friend of ours (عمر عزيز آن دوست ما) concerning whom (كه در خصوص وي) truly (براستي or بدرستي) I can say (مي توانم بگويم) that a man (انساني or مردي) was wisest (دانا ترين) and justest (عادلترين) and best of (گزيده ترين) those whom (آنانكه) in my own life (در عمر خود) I have seen or heard of (ديده و شنيده ام)

NOTES

137 (a) Participles of Agency are formed in Persian—(1) by adding نده to the Imperative stem, as داننده knower (from

بالیدن) رونده goer (from رفتن) , زننده thrower or shooter (from زدن) بیننده seer (from دیدن) اندازنده thrower (from انداختن)
(ii) by adding the suffix کار or گر at the end of words as زیانکار doing harm (from زیان) شتابکار acting hastily (from شتاب) خواستگار demander (from خواست) آفریدگار creator (from آفرید) پرهیزکار abstaining from (from پرهیز) ستمگر or ستمکار tyrannising (from ستم) آهنگر working in iron or blacksmith (from آهن)
(iii) by adding the suffix ار or دار at the end of words, as خریدار purchaser (from خرید) دادار creator (from داد) قلعه‌دار the fort-keeper (from قلعه) ملکدار possessing kingdom (from ملک)
(iv) by adding an Imperative stem at the end of nouns as خبردار having information ; پیدا کن maker کاردان knower of work, experienced دعویدار claimant.

(b) These participles may be used—(i) as substantives, as پول پیدا کن است he is a money maker پای مقدّس و دعویداری بس را نیز بدکان خود بکشید he attracted to his shop even the priests and those who have any pretensions to religion • شنیده ام تو پیش عمه ام خواستگار فرستاده‌ای از بابت من I have heard that you sent to my aunt to demand me in marriage (ii) as adjectives, as این کتاب را مفید تر و ارزنده تر سازم I will make this book more useful and worthy. دختر صرّافی توانگر را خواستگاری کرد he asked in marriage the daughter of a rich banker

138. The uses of the word راه may be illustrated thus (i) در راه ناخوش بستری افتاده درین کاروانسرای پهلوئی منزل دارد having taken ill on the way and been confined to bed he has taken up his abode in this adjoining caravanserai از میان راه گرد

و عماري عظيم درجاء from the middle of the road a great cloud of dust arose, دور از راه در درۀ خلوتي آتشي افروخت he lit a fire in a solitary glen at a distance from the road, در عرض راه هديه‌ها را گرفتم on my way I received many presents; پس من اين همه راه آمده ام كه تو مرا بجاي خر نگهداري then am I come all this way that you should make an ass of me? (ii) زن نوش در آن هم همراه بود his new wife accompanied him on that journey, خود را در يک تير پرتاب روبروي رهگذران ديديم we found ourselves face to face with the travellers at a bow-shot distance, راه طلب سعادت مردم مختلف است يكي شاه راه مي گيرد يكي كورۀ راه يكي از راه نو مي زود there are different ways by which men seek to obtain happiness, one keeps to the high road, some takes to the by-path and another strikes out a new path for himself (iii) چشم براه من نشسته بود he was waiting for me with great impatience, امّا كم كم راه شرعي جستن آغازيدم but little by little I began to find out legal excuses for my conduct; اگر دكان براه مي اندازم كرايه زمين مي مائد; if I set up a shop, I shall have to pay rent for the land, بدلها راه توانی يافت you can find access to hearts of men, راه اصفهان را پيش گرفتم I started for Ispahan, بيست ويكم ربيع الاول چهل و پنج دقيقه پيش از طلوع آفتاب براه افتاد on the twenty-first day of the Rabiul-awwal, forty-five minutes before sunrise he took to the road, (iv) راه اعتبار مسدود شد the way to the people's confidence was shut up, شاه راه اعتبار و احترام برويم گشوده شد the road to the highest considerations was open to me, اگر از تو خوشنود شود هنر خود را بتو بياموزد كه راه مداخلي برايت خواهد شد if he be pleased with you, he will teach you his profession which will be a source

مستغلی و وجوه زیادی به معلمی مقدّ باشی را پیدا کنیم of income to you by flattery and glibness of tongue I obtained access to the society of the chief priest (i) مدعو بچل ترانی را منظور نمود که بالتنا بگیه پس است for this purpose they offer to them money on board until the *Pasha* will say stop ... می شد جدا به روی مطلوب I would sacrifice my life for his sake می کنم خود سوار تکی می کنم for the sake of God I shall lend you money upon my mules (gratis) (ii) ... اسباب و مرا ... در بعد in short sometimes taking to the main road and sometimes going out of it, we reached the frontier of Persia without any hindrance ... by the main road and short cuts he brought me to this place ... of her and then the way was filled with poor women who went to the doctor's residence with children to have them vaccinated (iii) او را تنها ... I left him to himself in order that he might obtain a knowledge of the localities ... you may thoroughly learn the where withals of a priest.

139 The uses of خود may be illustrated thus (i) ... if thou give me leave I will not with this grief remain one day alive ... you have given yourself a good deal of trouble ... I thought in my mind (ii) ... in all his life he has never hunted a sparrow ... اما but since thou

hast confessed thy fault in a manly way, I pass by thy crime ; بخواهش خود باین زودي زن نخواهم برد of my own free will, I will not marry so soon , من با همین لباس بحضور شاه خود مي روم in this very dress I go to the presence of my own king (iii) خود علي محمد است it is Ali Muhammad himself , خود ضعیفه سه تومان از جیب شوهرش در آورده بود the woman herself took three *túmáns* out of her husband's pocket , بحرف خود شما رسوم آنها را نیز باید دانست by your own saying one should know their customs too , هر طوریکه دل خواه خود تست این کار را صورت بدهد he will manage this affair for you in any way you may wish (iv) خودت بعجز و التماس مارا اینجا آورده thou thyself with entreaties and prayers hast brought us here , هرچه خود تان وعده کرده اید whatever you yourself have promised , من براي دیگري چاه کندم خودم بچاه افتادم I dug a pit for another, but have myself fallen into the well , درد خودم براي خودم بس است my own grief is enough for me , خلق را بخودمان بخندانیم we shall make all the people laugh at us , بچه شیرین زباني خودش را کنار مي کشد the sweet-tongued child draws herself aside , شما که میرزا سلیم پسر وزیر قدیمي را بنوکري خود آورده (v) you have taken into your service Mirza Salim, the son of the late vazir , اینها چه حرفهاست بپیش خود مي سازي what speeches are these that you are concocting ? درد را بپاي خود مي آورد it will make the thief come of his own accord , از حسن نتیجه تقدس فروشي خود بر خود بالیدم I hugged myself in the success of my attempt to appear pious , پس از اندکي بخود آمد he came round shortly (vi) عمه ام حرف بیهوده زده باشد my aunt may have said foolish things , از این حرفها تیمور آقا نمي تواند از خنده خود داري کند at these words Timur Aqa

becomes unable to contain himself with laughter از تلخکامی خود داری نمی توانستم کرد out of disappointment I could not keep myself calm بی اختیار باد کرده اظهار خود فروشی نمودم involuntarily I felt a pride and affected a certain tone of superiority in my manners من برای خودنمائی — مصطبهٔ قهوه خانه را گزیدم for exhibiting my person in public, I chose the *mastabah* of a coffee-house.

140 Arabic broken plurals when used in Persian, may admit of the Persian plural suffix ان or ها as اربابان lords (from ارباب plural of ربّ) امرایان nobles, princes (from امرا pl of امیر) اطرافها sides (from اطراف pl of طرف) عجایبها wonders (from عجایب pl. of عجیب)

141 The Sociative Case (or the case of associated circumstances) is expressed in Persian by the Preposition با, as با درویش بدین ممالک و اراضی بسیار پیمودم I travelled many countries and regions in company of the dervish Bedin خلیفهٔ بزرگ ارمنیان با توابع و خدم حشم از رهبان و سایر کشیشان در آنجا می نشیند the head of the Armenian church, with subordinates and retinue consisting of the priests and monks, resides therein زبان با ملک و دل با دشمنان ملک in speech he is with the king, but in heart with the king's enemies با دبدبه و طنطنهٔ تمام داخل مشهد شدیم we entered Mashhed with all the noise and pomp با رفیق خود می گفت he was talking to his fellow, قلمدانی آوردند با ورقی بزرگ از کاغذ they brought a pen-case with a big piece of paper لباس خود را با تکلّفی بیشتر از رسم معهود در بر ، I dressed myself with more care than usual.

142 (*a*) The Verb-Adjective formed by suffixing ي to the Infinitive may by used (i) to mark an action as '*to be done*', as آنچه کردني بود کرديم we did what was to be done (ii) to signify '*propriety*', as اين چنين سخن گفتني نيست such a speech is not proper to be spoken, (iii) to show '*fitness*' of an action, as آبِ اين جوي خوردني نيست the water of this stream is unfit for drinking (iv) to indicate '*sufficiency*', as پولِ رفتني طهران ندارم I have not money enough for the journey to Tehran (v) to show the '*possibility*' of an action, as از تو جدا شدني نه ام it is not possible for me to be separated from thee (vi) to indicate '*futurity*', as که من رفتني ام for I am about to depart, در اوّلِ بهار کاروان رفتني بود the caravan was about to depart in the early spring

(*b*) This Verb-Adjective may also be used as a substantive, as اين قدر خوردني تبرک بپذير accept this much food as a present, خوردني زياد پوشيدني فراوان more than enough *to* eat and plenty of clothes, جز از رستنيها نخوردند چيزي they ate nothing but plants.

143. The letter م is used —(i) to denote the possessive pronoun '*my*', as رختم نو است my dress is new, في الفور يک طلا بدستم نهاد immediately he placed a gold piece in my hand (ii) to represent the Accusative or the Dative of the first person singular, as تکانم داده انداخت he threw me down with a push, چه مي فرمائيم what art thou ordering me? پادشاه خلعتم بخشيد the king gave me a robe of honour اي قناعت توانگرم گردان O contentment, make me rich (iii) as a Verbal ending for the

first person singular as امشب همه پانزده تومان را باختم to night I have played away all the fifteen *tumans* نمی دانم دیگر چه می کند I dont know what else he may do (iv) in the sense of *I am* as اینجا منتظرم I am waiting here دو ماه است ناخوش بسترم for two months I am sick on bed من سگ که ام whose dog am I ? (v) to form Ordinal Numerals as بآسمان پنجم to the fifth sky گفتار یازدهم the eleventh discourse ; مجلس دوم the second act درجهٔ دهم the tenth class بیست و یکم محرم the twenty-first day of Muharram : (vi) to form Prohibitive Imperatives as زبان را بر مگردان dont turn your tongue round غم مخور have no sorrow ازین ار جانب من هرگز قمار بازی مکنید never after this gamble in my name : (vii) to form the Feminine gender of certain words of Turkish origin as بیگم lady (from بیگ) خانم princess (from خان) (vii) to form an Arabic Noun of *place instrumentality* or *agency* as مسجد a mosque, مدرسه a college مفتاح a key , مطرب a musician

144 The uses of the word قدر may be illustrated thus : (i) قدر نعمت بعد زوال the worth of a blessing (is best appreciated) when it is no more بقدر سر موئی باور نمی کنند they dont believe it a single hair's end بقدر لزوم آنها گوش و دم را تکان میدهند they will wag their ears and tails according as it may be necessary اسبان را بقدر طاقت و توان تازانیدیم we made the horses run according to their power and strength (ii) یعنی من آنقدر احمقم که اینرا باور می کردم that is to say I am such a fool that I should have believed this اگر بقراباغ نمی آمد این قدر دولت را از کجا بدست می آورد if he had not come to Karabagh how could he

have obtained such riches? هرقدر برادرت بمن ستم کرده بجدائي ما تلاش مي کرد من همان قدرها پاداري نموده جوراو را مي کشيدم however-much your brother cruelly sought to separate us, remaining equally constant, I bore his violence (iii) پسرها چه قدر آدم بي غيرتيد boys, what unambitious men are you? ازاين جا بدهٔ شما چه قدر راه است how far is it to your village? چه قدر مهيب شدي how terrific thou hast become! از اين حرکت تو چه قدر زياد تر درجهٔ من رتبهٔ تو خواهد شد how much both my rank and your position will increase thereby! (iv) قدري حرف زد he said a few words, قدري دوا از صندوقچهٔ خود باو تعارف کردم I presented him with a small quantity of medicine from my box, دلم مي خواهد باتو قدري گفتگو کنم I wish to speak a little with you, دريغ که قدري زود رسيدم it is a pity that I reached a little too early, عيب ندارد قدري گشاد و بلند بدوزند no matter, if they make it a little too broad or too long.

145 The Comparative Construction in Persian may be expressed (i) by putting the Noun denoting the object with which the comparison is made in the Ablative case with از, as آبرو بهتر از مال است honour is better than wealth, از لقمان دانا تر است و از جالينوس بالاتر he is wiser than Luqman and superior to Galen, اورا از ديگران استوارتر بسته بودند they had bound him tighter than the others, اين بيش از آن به کمين پايه ترين شعرا داد he gave more than that to the humblest of poets (ii) by expressing the '*than*' of the comparison by که following the Adjective, as مردنت به که مردم آزاري thy death was better than afflicting mankind, درکوهستان گرسنه تاب برهنه ودر بي خانمان گرار چرانيدن بهتر که در پرنيان و حرير زير دست و بيعار بودن it is better to live a swine-herd in

the Georgian mountains, naked and houseless, than be a hanger-on in all these allka بازوی بخت به که بازوی سخت the fortunate arm is better than the strong arm (iii) sometimes by using the Comparative Adjective without any comparative particle as راست گفتن در همه وقت بهتر است و شخص راستگو در هر دو جهان عزیز و برتر it is better to tell the truth at all times and a truthful person is honoured and exalted in both the worlds بدشواری آشکار می توانستند داد که در تیغ زنی چیره ترم یا در سخندانی it could with difficulty be said whether I was more accomplished as a barber or as a scholar

146 Some of the uses of the word جان may be illustrated thus (i) عمو جان قربان سرت dear uncle, may I be the sacrifice for thy head بجان پدر و مادرت by the life of thy father and mother آقا جان دعوی تو سر چه my dear sir what is the ground for thy claim? (ii) با جان و دل برای انجام فرمایشات سرکار حاضرم I am ready with life and heart to carry out the orders of Your Excellency مال فدای جان است goods are a sacrifice for life مگر دل شیر داری یا از جانت نمی ترسی but have you a lion's heart or have you no fear for your life? روح القدس بدمیدن جان در بدنم آمد the angel of life came to blow a fresh soul into my body (iii) برای مثل شما جوانان رعنا یکی بیست سی تومان خرجی دادن از جان می کند he roots up his life to give the expenses of twenty or thirty *tumāns* to such fine young men as you میرزا آتش بجان شده بخانهٔ زنبورکچی باشی تاخت the scribe, fired with zeal, made directly for the house of the general of the camel artillery (iv) با از دست از جان دست شسته گفته ام having given up the hope of life, I have

spoken to him , برو دعا بجانِ این مرد کن go and pray for the life of this man , همهٔ شکایتها را بجانِ او بستند they attached all the grievances to him , با آنکه او شیرازي و من اصفهاني دوست جاني شدیم although he was from Shiraz and I from Isphan, yet we became intimate friends , جواني ارمني جانِ خود را براهِ من نهاده بود an Armenian youth had placed his life at our disposal , مارا آفتِ جاني است he is our mortal enemy , ابراهیم در میدانِ جنگ جان داد Ibrahim lost his life in the field of battle , شاد باش که از جان گذشتیم و جا بتو گذاشتیم be of good cheer, I give up my life and leave the place to you (v) باین جانثاري در نزدِ امثال و اقرانِ خود رو سفید گشتي on account of this devotion you have become distinguished among your equals and peers , نسیم جان پرور a soul-nourishing breeze , بمجرد یک نگاهِ جانکاه طائرِ دلش اسیرِ دام آن مشکین موي گردید immediately on one soul-piercing glance his heart became enamoured of this black-haired beauty

147 (a) The Superlative construction is expressed (i) by joining the Superlative Adjective by an *izáfat* to the Noun in the plural denoting the object with which the comparison is made , as او آن مبلغ را بگرانمایه‌ترینِ شعرا داد he gave the amount to the best of poets , لباسش عجیب ترین و مضحک ترینِ البسه که در عمرِ خود دیده ام his attire was the strangest and funniest of all those I have ever seen , حجرهٔ توانگرترینِ بازرگانان را مي دانستم I knew the rooms of the richest of the merchants (ii) by putting the preposition ' از ' after the Superlative Adjective , بهترین از پادشاهان بود he was the best of kings (iii) by putting the Superlative Adjective before a singular Noun , در واقع کمدل و کم زهره

الحق ترسوترین مردم بود in reality he was the most cowardly man, تتلی فروشِ مشهد برآمدم I became the foremost vendor of smoke in Meshhed (iv) by putting the Superlative Adjective after a singular Noun connected by an *izáfat* as این دیدارِ آخرین است this is the last interview بندهٔ کمترین ملّا می باشم I the humblest servant am a priest.

(b) Certain Comparative constructions have the force of the Superlative as از برترین برتر است he is higher than the highest جایش از همه بهتر و بالاتر بود his place was the best and highest آبِ من از آبِ همه گرانه مند تر بود my booty was the most considerable راستی رختی به از رختِ من نیست truly my attire is the best of all (lit. no attire is better than mine)

(c) The utmost possible degree is expressed by prefixing هرچه to the Comparative Adjective as هرچه زود تر شتابید hasten as quickly as possible برگ و سازش هرچه گرانبها تر بود his trappings were as costly as possible.

148 Compound Verbs (continued) —(i) کار از پیش بردن to carry out or succeed in affair بکار کسی خوردن to be useful to one کار پیش آوردن to occupy a person with anything از کار گذشتن to drop a matter کارسازی کردن to be repaid (ii) کج نگاه کردن to look askance at, to glance at (iii) کرامت کردن to give in mercy to vouchsafe (iv) کورنشی کردن to make a low prostration (v) کشتی با هم انداختن to make others wrestle کشتی گرفتن to wrestle (oneself) (vi) کف زدن to foam froth (vii) کلاهِ کسی برداشتن to get the better of a person (viii) کم آمدن to be insufficient, کم کردن to diminish (ix) کنار جستن to jump aside کنار کشیدن to

draw aside, to get away (x) کوتاه کردن to cut short (xi) کوچه علطي نمودن to mislead (xii) کور کردن to blind (xiii) کوک کردن to wind up (*a watch*), to tune (*a musical instrument*) (xiv) کول زدن to strike on the back (in the sense of admiring), کول گرفتن to take by or on the shoulder (xv) گرد آمدن to gather round, گرد کردن to surround, to invest (xvi) گردن زدن to strike off the head, گردن گرفتن to undertake responsibility (xvii) کنار گرفتن to chum with (*some one*) (xviii) گریه کردن to weep (xix) الدیر کردن to clean (*corn*) or sift (xx) گلوله باریدن to pour forth shots (xxi) گم شدن to be lost, to go away (xxii) گمان بردن to believe, suspect, بدگمان شدن to suspect evil of (*a person*) (xxiii) گمراه نمودن to lead astray (xxiv) گوش دادن to listen, attend to (xxv) گول خوردن to be deceived (xxvi) گوي بردن to excell (xxvii) گیر افتادن to become enured, گیر آوردن to obtain, get, گیر کردن to get into a difficulty (xxviii) لاف زدن to brag of, to boast (xxix) لازم داشتن to want, require (xxx) لخت کردن to rob, despoil (xxxi) لشکر کشیدن to lead an army against, to attack (xxxii) لنگ کردن to halt (xxxiii) مات ماندن to be struck dumb with surprise (xxxiv) مالامال بودن to teem with (xxxv) مأمور فرمودن to give orders, to be employed or despatched (xxxvi) متحیر ماندن to be astonished (xxxvii) متفرق شدن to disperse, separate (xxxviii) متوجه شدن to pay attention to, (xxxix) مجادله کردن to dispute, to have an altercation (xl) مجال کردن to be able, or be in a position to (xli) محافظت کردن to guard, preserve (xlii) محبت ورزیدن to display affection (xliii) مخالفت کردن to resist (xliv) مراجعت فرمودن یا نمودن to return (xlv) مسوده نمودن to

prepare a rough draft (xlvi) نسخه زدن to box (xlvii) مشغول شدن to be occupied with (xlviii) مشکل پسندی کردن to be fastidious (xlix) مشهور کردن to make well known (l) مصروف شدن to be spent (li) مقابله کردن to oppose, refuse (lii) مضحک شمردن to regard as rediculous (liii) معامله کردن to trade, negotiate (liv) معانقه کردن to embrace (lv) معذور داشتن to excuse (lvi) معرفی شدن به to make oneself known to (lvii) معزول ساختن to dismiss (from service) (lviii) معطل شدن to be delayed معطل کردن to delay (?) to put in doubt (lix) معلوم شدن to be known, to be evident (lx) قصد رفتن to be denounced قصد خود دانی to denounce oneself (lxi) مقصر شدن to fail in duty, مقصر کردن to reproach with neglect or fault (lxii) ملاحظه کردن to look at, to pause, to think (lxiii) ملول شدن از to be tired of a thing, to feel *ennui* (lxiv) منت بر کسی گذاشتن to please anyone (lxv) منتظر بودن to be waiting for (lxvi) منظور نظر خاص گردیدن to become a special favourite with (lxvii) مورد قبول عامه شدن to be popular مستحق مکافات بودن to be entitled to reward (lxviii) مهمانی رفتن to go as a guest (lxix) از میدان در رفتن to give up a contest بدنبال کسی رفتن to follow some one's track از میان برداشتن یا دور کردن to get rid of (lxx) میل داشتن یا ... یا کردن to be inclined, to desire.

16 The Character of Nadir Shah

Born of low rank, Nadir appears to have owed the distinction, which he early obtained among his rude associates, to his uncommon bodily strength, his determined courage, and a strong natural sense, which, though afterwards improved by experience, was never cultivated by education. The wretched

condition of his native country was calculated to excite in his ardent mind the noblest ambition, and when we reflect on the success which attended his first efforts against the Afghans, we are almost reconciled to his usurping the name of that sovereignty, the substance of which he had long enjoyed, and which he could not have resigned without extreme danger to himself, and to a nation that had been saved by his valour and his genius The riches and renown, which he obtained by his expedition to India, gave him great means of restoring Persia to her ancient splendour, and his invasion of Bokhara, while it was the best and indeed the only way to secure the continual tranquillity of his own possessions, added, perhaps, still more to his fame and power Hitherto this monarch, whether we consider the noble and patriotic object which first stimulated his ambition, the valour and ability he displayed, the comparative moderation with which he used his success or the glorious deeds he performed, is entitled to great, if not unqualified admiration But a dreadful change took place in his disposition and character From the time when his mind was subdued by avarice and suspicion, he became one of the most cruel of tyrants; and Persia by a strange destiny, seemed doomed to receive her death from that hand, to which, a few years before, she had owed her existence The character of this wonderful man is, perhaps, exhibited in its truest colours in those impressions which the memory of his actions has left on the minds of his country-men They speak of him as a deliverer and a destroyer, but while they dwell with pride on his deeds of glory, they express more pity than horror for the cruel enormities which disgraced the latter years of his reign, and neither his crimes, nor his attempts to abolish their religion, have subdued the gratitude and veneration for the hero, who revived in the breasts of his degraded country-men a sense of their former fame, and who restored Persia to independence

As (چون) Nadir (نادر) worthy lineage (نسبی شایسته) had not (نداشت) thus it appears (می نماید) that early (در اوایل حال) his uncommon bodily strength and courage and fixed determination and intelligence and natural sense (قوت بدنی نادر الوجود و شجاعت و عزم ثابت و ذکا و کیاست طبیعی او) the cause of distinction

(صیتِ امتیاز) among his rude associates (ما بینِ همسران و انبازانِ غیر) (ملحوظِ خود) became and the sharpness of his genius and natural sagacity (حدّتِ ذهن و فراستِ ذاتی او) although afterwards (پس بعد) by experience (بالتجربه) it improved (زیاده شد) yet (امّا) never by education culture it received (هرگز بالتربیت ترقّی به نیافته). The wretched condition and confusion of his native country (خرابی و هرج و مرج وطنِ خود) in his ardent mind (در دلِ پر غیرتش) noble ambition (همّتِ بزرگ) excited (برانگیخت) and when the efforts that (که او) regarding the driving out of the Afghans (در بابِ اخراجِ افاغنه) he did and his success (فیروزی وی) in this respect (در این باب) is reflected on (ملاحظه شود) one can say that usurping of the name of sovereignty (غصبِ نامِ پادشاهی) improper (بیجا) it was not (نبود) for the reason that (بسبب اینکه) it was long (مدّتها بود) that in reality (در حقیقت) this affair (امر) with him was, and he could not resign it (نمی توانست آنرا ترک کند) because (چه) such step (این حرکت) the cause of great danger and painful injury (باعثِ خطرِ عظیم و ضررِ الیم) would have become (شده باشد) both for himself and for a nation (هم بجهتِ خود او و هم) (بجهتِ ملّتی) which by his valour and genius (بشجاعت و کاردانی او) from the claws of enemies (از چنگِ اعدا) freedom (خلاصی) had obtained (یافته بود). The riches (دولتی) that the expedition to India (از هجوم کشورِ هندوستان) he obtained (بچنگ آورد) and the renown (شهرتی) that by this means (بدین منوال) he secured (حاصل نمود) the cause of this (علّتِ این) became that the ancient splendour of Persia (تجمّل و احتشامِ قدیمِ ایران را) he restored (تازه کرد), and the invasion (تاخت و تازی) that upon the country

of Bokhara (سلاد بخارا) he made, firstly (اولاً) the best way (بهترين وسائي) and indeed (في الواقع) the only means (واسطهٔ تنها) for the sake of continued tranquillity of his own possessions (بسهت آرامئ پايندهٔ ممالک خود) was, and secondly (ثانياً) added still more to his power and fame (بر قوت و آوازهٔ اش ديگر افزود). Whether (خواه) upon the actions that a nice sense of honour of the country (حميت ملک) and patriotism (حبّ الوطن) in the beginning (در اوايل) him upon that (در آن) kept (داشت) or (يا) upon the valour and bravery and knowledge of affairs (بر شجاعت و شجاعت و کاردانی) which during life-time (در ايام حيات) from him appeared (ظاهر شد) we observe (نظر کنيم), or (خواه) upon the courtesy (مروت) and politeness that (مداراتيکه) in every one (هريک) of his victories (در فتوحات خود) he displayed (آشکار کرد) or (يا) upon the glorious deeds (کارهاي بزرگ) that he performed (از وي صادر شد) we consider (تأمّل کنيم), in every way (بهرحالت) although (اگرچه) for the sake of this monarch (براي اين پادشاه) unqualified praise and approbation (کمالِ ستايش و تحسين) may not be permissible (روا نداشته باشد) but undoubtedly (بی همه چيز) entitled to great respect and eulogy (مستحق و سزاوارِ تکريم و تمجيد سزاوار) is, but (لاکن) the dreadful change (تغييري خطرناک) which in the latter days of life (اواخرِ عمر) in his disposition (مزاجش) took place (پيدا شد) and the avarice (حرص) and suspicion (بدگماني) which upon his nature (طبيعتش) conquered (غلبه کرد) him among (از) the cruellest of the tyrants (بيرحم ترينِ ظلمه) made (ساخت), as though (گويا) it had been destined (مقدّر شده بود) that Persia from the same hand (از همان دستي) as (که)

a few years before (سالي چند مال ازين) the beverage of his (شربت حمام) it received (نمد) the blow of death (ضربت ممات) should receive (بايد). From the impressions that (که حالتي) the memory of the actions and deeds of this wonderful man (ياد افعال و کردار اين مرد غريب) on the minds of his country men has produced (بر ضماير همرطنانش ايجاد کرده است) the estimate of the goodness and badness of his character (اندازهٔ خوبي و زشتي سرشتش را) as it ought to be (کماينبغي) one can do (مي تواند بکند), so that (چنانچه) him both deliverer and destroyer of Persia (هم رستگار و هم تباه کار ايران) they say but on his deeds of glory (بر کارهاي بزرگش) they dwell with pride (افتخار مي کنند) and upon his grievous enormities and oppression and tyranny (بر گناهان شنيع و ظلم و تعديش) that the latter years of his reign (اواخر عهد سلطنتش را) defiled (ملوث ساخت) in place of expressing of horror and malediction (بجاي اظهار وحشت و نفرين) for the most part (بيشتر) they express pity (تأسف مي خورند) Neither his crimes (نه گناهاني که از وي صادر شده بود) nor (و نه) the extreme efforts (کوششهاي بليغ) which for changing the religion of the inhabitants of Persia (که براي تغير دادن مذهب اهالي ايران) he made use of (بکار برده بود) the gratitude and veneration (سپاسداري و احترام‌را) from their mind (دلشان) has obliterated (محو کرده است) which is due to that hero (که سزاوار آن بهادر شجاع است) who on the minds of his degraded country men (بر دلهاي هموطنان افتاده خود) the former fame of (ننگ و ناموس قديم) Persian (را) revived (تازه کرد) and the government of (حکومت) Persia (را) again (باز) independent (مستقل) he made (گردانيد)

NOTES

149 Some of the uses of the word 'وجود' may be thus illustrated (i) عشقِ وطن سراپاي وجود اين جوان را مسخّر داشت the feeling of patriotism enthralled the whole frame of this young man from head to foot, وجودش مرجعِ سر بلندي و مباهاتست his personality is the cause of honour and glory (to the nation), با وجودِ تو کسی لقمان را بچيزي و بقراط را به پشيزي نمي شمارد as compared to yourself neither Luqman nor Hippocrates is of any account (ii) وجود ندارد it does not exist, وجودِ شما غنيمت your presence is a gain, در تمام ايران از وجودِ قانون احدي خبر نداشت through-out the whole of Persia not a single person was aware of the existence of Law (iii) بدانند وطني که بحبِ آن مأموريم همانا خاکِ پاکيست که در آن بعرصهٔ وجود آمده ايم let them know that the birth-place to the love of which we have been commanded is verily none other than the holy land on which we have come into existence, ضعف بر وجودش مستولی شده از پاي در افتاد weakness having overpowered him, he fell down, شارعِ مقدّسِ ما چه صدمات بگرامي وجودش روا داشت what pains and troubles did our holy law-giver hold permissible to his gracious person

150 Examples illustrating the uses of the word 'غير' are (i) ديگر غير از اين چاره نمانده است there is no other help for it but this, غير از شما ديگران بچّه را در بغلِ او ديده اند others than you have seen the child in his arms, غير از اين چه حرف زده است besides this what has he said? اين راز را غير از من و او کسی نمي دانست no one save him and me knew this secret (ii) يقين است غير ازين نيست it is certainly not otherwise, گله و ايلخی که از پدرم مانده بدست غير

بیفتد the flocks and horses my father has left should fall into the hands of others (iii) امّا شما بخاطر بعضی آرزو های دور و دراز ی خواستی اورا بآن مرد مرحوم بدهی but you by reason of certain further and ultimate aims wished to give her to that defunct of accursed memory باید مردمانِ بی اطّلاع غیر کافی و باغرض را از ریاست خلع کند he must of necessity set aside un informed, incompetent and interested individuals from (the duties of) the state مرتجل و غیر مرتجل بنظمِ قطعه و غزل می پرداختم I engaged myself in composing quartets and odes either extempore or otherwise

151 **Time Future** may be indicated by the Adverbial phrases (*a*) من بعد as من بعد وزارترا بهر کس که سزاوار میدانید بدهید as for the future give the vizir ship to whomsoever you may know to be fit من بعد نمی توانم اورا اینجا بگذارم hence-forward I cannot leave her here and (*b*) بعد ازین پس از این as بعد از این پس از این دیگر اسم مرا بزبان نیاور after this do not mention my name چه خواهم کرد after this what shall I do?

152 The uses of the word هرگز may be illustrated thus (i) هرگز ایران را چنین شاهی نبود Persia never had such a monarch تا این زمان در یوروپا هرگز مشهور نبود up to this time it was never known in Europe هرگز بدزدی نه رفته بودم I had never been out to rob چون اهلِ این شهر هرگز ایرانی ندیده بودند از ملاقاتِ ما خیلی متعجب بودند as the people of this city had never seen a Persian, they were much surprised at the sight of us (ii) من آنمردکه را هرگز ندیده ام I have never seen that mannikin من در عمرم هرگز گردش نرفته ام in my life I have never been on an expedition, من هرگز آدمی باین منکری ندیده ام I have never seen such obstinate a man

(iii) عمّوم هرگز نخواهد که مرا بدیگری بدهد my uncle will never give me to another, بمرگِ تو هرگز راضی نمی شوم I will never consent to thy death, بارواح پدرم که هرگز نخواهم بخشید by the soul of my father never will I forgive him, هرگز عصیانِ ملک نیندیشم I never contemplate treachery against the king (iv) هرگز ناقمه نفرموده ام که با شمشیر پیش من بیائید did I not order you, never to come into my presence with a sword? هرگز دزدی رفتهٔ hast thou ever committed, robbery? هرگز خدا راضی می شود و شهباز برود پاریس پی خرشگذرانی بچّهٔ پانزده سالهٔ گل رخسارهٔ ام آه بکشد و از دیده خون بریزد should ever God permit Shahbaz go to Paris in pursuit of enjoyment, and my rosy-cheeked child of fifteen would heave sighs and would pour blood from her eyes?

153 The 'instrument,' 'means,' or 'the thing with which any action is performed' is commonly expressed in Persian by the particle به or با, and sometimes by از, as (i) بنام تو درِ را بمن باز کردانید with thy name they made me open the door, خودت بعجز و التماس مارا تا اینجا آوردهٔ thou thyself, with entreaties and prayers, hast brought us here, قضا این درویش را بمارسانیده تا بجادوی او آنجا را کوبیده خراب کنیم fate has brought this darvish to me that we may ruin that place by his magic, سلطان محمود غزنوی برای این جرم یکی از مقرّبانِ خود را بدستِ خود گردن زد Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni, with his own hand, struck off the head of one of his courtiers for this crime. (ii) چپوقِ خود را با آتشِ اجاقِ یانقو بر افروخت he lighted his pipe with Yanqu's charcoal fire, سررا بر زمین انداخت و با نوکِ پا غلطانید he threw the head on the ground and made it roll with the tips of his foot, با دستِ خود سفارش نامهٔ نوشت

he wrote a letter of recommendation with his own hand رقعلی
با حیله و ستله به نامهٔ درست کرد her pleader by trickery prepared
a deed of gift (iii) مر حرم آنکه از شفعتِ درحق نامهٔ خود مائی بار سده
است هم را خوانده و آموختهٔ all this thou hast read and learnt in the
colleges which have been opened by the kindness of our
own exalted Government ' بارس برس و آ وختنِ زبانِ فرنگ
و بدولت ستانتی این مرد مشهور می شوم by being taken to Paris
and learning the French language, and by being introduced
to the State by this man, I shall become known

154 The uses of the word چنگ may be illustrated thus
(i) راستی مرا از چنگِ این عربِ بیمروت آزاد کردید truly you have freed
me from the clutches of this inhuman Arab بحقِ ربي و دانگی
من زن را از چنگِ سردار برهان by the dues of manliness and humanity rescue this female from the grasp of the Sardar گناه من نه
آن که اورا از چنگ دشمن بُردم بلکه چرا نقابش کشودم my crime consisted
not in forcing her away from the clutches of the enemy but in
removing her veil (ii) ممدن که طلوبِ حکیم باشی بچنگم آمد برخاستم
I rose to depart, as soon as the object of the chief physician's
desire came to my grasp بتفصیل بیان خواهم کرد که بعد از آن چگونه
بچنگِ حکیم افتادم I shall narrate (to you) the particulars, how after
that I fell into the hands of the physician (iii) الوقت جائی امید آن
بود که دامن مقصود بچنگم آید at the time it was hoped that the skirt
of desire might come to my grasp در آنجا وسائل را بچنگ می آوردم
at that point I used to take them in آوازِ او چنگ بدل نمی زند
his voice doth not attract در سرایِ حکیم بارها زن مستشم ولی
هیچکس چنگ بدل من نزده in the inner court of the physician's

house, I saw several females, but they were not particularly attracting

155 Examples illustrating the uses of the word بیشتر are (i) حقِ من در او از همه کس بیشتر است my claim over it is superior to every one else's, دیدم فالگیر و رمّال در مشهد از سگ بیشتر است I saw that in Mashhed astrologers and sooth-sayers were more numerous than dogs (ii) هرچند یک دو صاحب بیشتر خرج می شود امّا از هر گزند آسوده میشوید although it will involve an expense of one or two *mináts* more, yet you will be safe from all sorts of trouble, می بینید که دو تن بیشتر نیستیم behold, we are not more than two individuals (iii) برای یک زبان زیاده دانستن عقل بیشتر نمی شود wisdom is not increased by knowing one more language, میلِ من باو الله بیشتر بود I certainly had a greater inclination towards him (iv) گذشته از آن این جاها را که می بینی بیشتر همه وادیِ لم یزرع و خالی از سکنه بود previous to it, these places that thou seest were all mostly barren and uninhabited plains, هر چند که خانه را خانهٔ خود می دانم ولی نبودنِ صاحب خانه بیشتر سبب خجالت شد although I regarded (his) house as my own, yet the absence of the host became the principal cause of (my) embarrassment

156 Some more examples of compounds formed with the prefix هم are (i) همزبان, as در پردلیِ آنان همه همزبان بودیم we were of one tongue as to their being brave (ii) همراه - همدرد, as سایر همدردان و همراهانرا دور دست تر از ما درمیانِ قبایل پراگنده ساختند they dispersed all (our) fellow-sufferers and companions further away from us among the tribes (iii) همکاسه, as از همان روز همکاسه ام ساخت from that very day he made me his messmate,

(iv) هموطن , as هر کسی را دیدی از وضعِ وطن و حالِ هموطنان پرسیدی be used to enquire of every person he met with concerning the situation of his native country and the condition of his country men (v) همسری ، همکار as حاصلی که فهمیدم تجربهٔ این بود که بعد ازین با هموطنان و همکاران چگونه حرکت کنم the one thing I understood was this experience how I should hence forward deal with my countrymen and fellow workers (vi) همسلک as شارعِ مقدّسِ اسلام حبِّ ترا همسلکِ ایمان قرار داد the holy Law-giver of Islam has placed the love for thee (or one's own country) in the same category as faith (itself) (vii) همکیش as—

اسبِ تازی را در روزی بهبندی پیشِ خر
رنگ ار همکیش نگردد طبع او همکیش شود

If thou bindest an Arab horse along with an ass,
(Although) their colour might not become the same their
disposition would turn out similar

157 The uses of the word غریب may be illustrated thus (i) من غریب در دیارِ غریب آنان مردمانِ غریب I a stranger in a strange land, and they a strange people یا امام رضای غریب تو دادِ غریبان را بگیر O Imam Reza, the stranger! pray take retaliation for (us) strangers غریب الغربا داخلِ شهر شدم I entered the city a total stranger (ii) مگر از مرگِ غریبِ او خبر نداری hast thou no knowledge of his strange death? حدیثهای غریب از او نقل می کنند wonderful stories are told about him اسبِ لشکری را با لباسِ غریب بمن تسلیم کرد he made over to me the horse of the body-guard with strange accoutrements (iii) عمّه ، غریبی می کنی بمن you inflict a strange trouble upon me, aunt در پیشِ تو مردم بازیِ غریبی

آورده بودند on the route the people had devised a singular pastime, هلهلهٔ و ولولهٔ عریبی برخاست an unusual uproar and tumult arose (iv) در پلهٔ سیاه هم دیده شد از افریق که خیلی عریب و مهیب بودند two black leopards from Africa were also seen, which were very singular and terrific, هیأتِ خود را قلندرانه و عجیب و عریب آراسته بودم I had attired myself like wild darvishes in strange and extraordinary garb, عجب مضامینِ بدیع و معانیِ عریب بنطم آوردهٔ what wonderful imports and marvellous ideas hast thou expressed in thy poem!

158. List of Compound Verbs (concluded) (i) نابود شدن to disappear, نابود کردن to destroy (ii) ناپدید شدن to disappear (iii) ناچار ماندن to become helpless, to be obliged to do a thing (iv) ناخوش شدن to fall ill, ناخوش ساختن to make (one) ill (v) ناخن گرفتن to pare the nails, ناخن زدن to stir up strife (vi) نام آوردن to become famous, نامزد کردن to betroth, نام گذاردن to name (vii) نامربوط گفتن to talk nonsense (viii) نان خوردن to have a meal, to accept hospitality, نانِ کسی در روغن افتادن to hold one's fortune to be made (ix) نجات دادن to set free, liberate, نجات یافتن to be liberated, rescued (x) ندیده انگاشتن یا گرفتن to pretend not to see (xi) نزول نمودن to alight (xii) نسبت کردن to ascribe, refer (xiii) نشان دادن to show, point out, to impress (*stamp*) (xiv) نشست و برخاست کردن to conduct oneself (xv) نصب کردن to plant (*flag*) (xvi) نصیحت کردن to admonish (xvii) نظر انداختن to cast a glance, نظر آمدن to appear (*to a person*), نظرِ کسی نمود کردن to attract the eye, excite wonder (xviii) نظور کردن to look after, take care of (xix) نفس زدن to breathe, pant, نفس گرفتن to hold one's breath (or tongue) (xx) نفرین کردن to

curse (xxi) نفس بر آب کشیدن to engage in fruitless pursuit نقش بستن to engrave or draw a picture نقش دوختن to embroider (xxii) نقل کردن to copy to tell a story (xxiii) نُقل مجالس شدن to be talked of everywhere (xxiv) نگاه داشتن to with-hold preserve, take care of نگاه کردن to look at (xxv) نگران بودن to be anxious (xxvi) نمک شناس بودن to be grateful, or faithful نمک ناشناسی to behave unfaithfully be treacherous (xxvii) نوش جان فرمودن to eat *(polite)* (xxviii) نشخوار کردن to chew the cud to ruminate (xxix) نهان شدن to hide *(oneself)* نهان کردن to conceal *(a thing)* (xxx) واپس آمدن to come back (xxxi) وارد شدن to arrive, وارد کردن to cause to arrive (xxxii) وارونه کردن to turn upside down وارونه گشتن to be upset, overturned (xxxiii) واصل شدن to reach *(a letter)* (xxxiv) واقع شدن to occur take place (xxxv) واقف شدن to be apprised of (xxxvi) وام دادن to lend *(money)* وام گرفتن to borrow *(money)* (xxxvii) وصلت دادن to arrive, be joined: (xxxviii) وطن کردن to make a home (xxxix) وعده خواستن to ask a promise *(of a visit)*; وعده کردن to give a promise وعده گرفتن to take a promise (xl) وعظ کردن to preach (xli) ول گفتن to speak loosely to talk rubbish (xlii) ور زدن to chatter (xliii) هار کردن to turn a person's head (xliv) هلاک شدن to be killed هلاک کردن to kill (xlv) هبه کردن to bestow give (xlvi) یاد آوردن to remember یاد دادن to show teach, instruct یاد گرفتن to learn by heart (xlvii) یاوه گفتن to talk nonsense (xlviii) دست یکی کردن to make common cause (xlix) با خاک یکسان کردن to throw down (l) یله کردن to be a vagabond to rove.

SECTION—II

1 Domestic Life in Persia.

The Persian women are very fond of their children, and pet them greatly The love of the Persian for his mother is very great When grown up he never leaves her to starve and her wishes are laws to him, even when he is an old man, and she an aged crone The mother is always the most important member of the household, and the grand-mother is treated with great veneration. Mothers-in-law are not laughed at or looked down on in Persia; their presence is coveted by their sons-in-law who look up to them with respect. Black slaves and man-nurses are much respected while the wet nurse is looked on as a second mother and usually provided for for life. The slaves in Persia have a good time: well fed, wellclothed, treated as spoiled children, and given the lightest work they have the certainty of comfort and a well-cared for old age. They are always looked on as confidential servants are entrusted with large sums of money and the conduct of the most important affairs and they seldom abuse their trusts. Strange as it may appear to the mind of any one who has not lived in Persia slavery in that country to the African is an unmixed good.

The Persian women— زنان ایرانی

To be very fond of— سخت علاقه داشتن (کسی را)

To pet— نوازش کردن

The love of is very great = and the children also

towards their mother affection and love (مهر و محبت)

to the highest degree (بدرجهٔ اتم) have

To grow np— بزرگ شدن

Translate 'her' as 'their own mother

To leave— گذاشتن (use 3 pl. of حال)

Io starve— گرسنگی کشیدن (use 3 pl. of مضارع)

Her wishes are laws to him—

هرچه خواهششان باشد آنرا دستور العمل کارهای خویش گردانند —

از آنچه خواهششان باشد سر موئی خلاف ننمایند —

They— خودشان Old man— ریش سفید .

Is = become *(pl.)* She = their mother

Aged crones— عجوزگان سفیده پوش

The most important member of the family—

گرامیترین اجزای خاندان

Grand mother— جده (را)

To treat with veneration— محترم داشتن (use act. voice 3 pl. of حال)

Translate 'Mothers-in-law are not &c.' **thus:** in Persia any (هیچ) son-in-law towards his mother-in-law (مادرزن) with ridicule and laughter behaves not (بریشخند و استهزا حرکت نماید) and at her with the eye of contempt (حقارت) looks not (نگاه نکند) but (بلکه) her presence (وجودش را) knowing a gain (غنیمت دانسته) engage in venerating and honouring her (بتکریم و تعظیمش پردازد) .

Black slaves— سیاهان . Man-nurses— للایان .

To respect— عزیز داشتن (use act. voice 3 pl. of حال).

Wet-nurse— دایه - شیرده .

Translate 'is looked on &c.' **thus:** second mother (مادرِ ثانی) regarding (شمرده) usually till life continueth (مادام الحیات) surety for bread and expense (کفیلِ نان و نفقه اش) they become

Have a good time = life (زندگی) they have quite (بس) happy and pleasant (خوش و خرم)

Well-fed— خوردنی زیاد Well-clothed— پوشیدنی فراوان

Treated as spoiled children—وضعِ شان وضعِ بچگان بد نه بالا آورده

Given the lightest work— لی نه هرگز دشوار کسنده 1 IIC

They have the certainty &c.—

بوسیله استکمال راحت و فرحت و بعرصه سرستی هاداری و بیکاری دارند—

Translate They are always &c thus they servants are confidential (راز دار و سپهسالار) such that (که) large sums of money (پولهای کثیر) and important affairs (سیاهی خطیر) they entrust them with (حوالهٔ ایشان بکمارند)

They seldom abuse their trusts—

کمتر باشد که بخیالت و غدر دیانت متهم می گردند—

Translate strange as it may appear &c. thus although this statement (سخن) the cause of surprise and wonder of those (ر حیرت و تعجب آنان) may be who have never lived in Persia (هرگز در ایران نمانده اند) yet the truth is this that for the African (اهل افریقی) slavery (بندگی) in that country (ولایت) the cause of good-fortune (وسیلهٔ خوشبختی) unmixed (محض) is

NOTES

1 The uses of word سخت may be illustrated thus (i) دیدم که سخت بلائی دوچار شدم I found that I had come across a grievous danger ... میرا سخلی لرشه د I drank a cup of strong coffee ... بعد از کرنشی سخت از روبروی پادشاه می گذشت after a very low obeisance he passed by the front of the king, حریف را سخت دید he perceived (his) antagonist to be (too) powerful زلیخا خیلی سخت شدا Zuleikha, thou hast become very stingy; (ii) آخر الامر 1C ... سخت ناگوار از ... at last he made a very disagreeable proposal چون این قصیدهٔ بگوش مبسوط پادشاه رسید سخت لنگر ... when this ode

reached the auspicious ears of His Majesty, he extremely approved of it, تو سخت بجا بچنگم افتادي thou hast most opportunely come to my hand, شما اهل ایران سخت بیرحم مردمانید you Persians are very cruel men, این روزِ اولین دیدار برای ما سخت مسعود شد it proved a lucky day for us when we saw each other first (iii) كاغذهاي شكل را سخت بچنگال کرده زیرِ پایش می ریزد seizing firmly the papers with the pictures, she throws them under her foot, از دو تنِ ایشان سخت تظلم نمودم I bitterly complained against two of them, دستي سخت بازوم چسپید a hand seized me roughly by the arm اشرفیها را بکمربندِ خویش سخت بردوختم I tightly sewed the ducats inside my girdle

2 Some examples of the uses of the word 'سفید' are (i) تا چشم کار می کرد چادرِ سفید بر افراشته بود as far as the eye could see white tents had been pitched, مردکه با این ریش و پشم سفید حیا نمي كني O man, art thou not ashamed with these white beard and hair? روبندِ زن سفید و جابجا خونین و دریده the woman's veil was white, and here and there stained with blood and torn (ii) پسرم! رویت سفید که روي مرا سفید کردي my son, may thy face be whitened (or may thou prosper) as thou hast brightened my face, ترا که گاو سفید پیشانی خواهند گرفت you who are a conspicuous character will be easily caught (iii) گیس سفیدي دیگر یعنی فرتوتي پرگوي کمشنو بود there was another grey-haired decrepit old woman, talkative and hard of hearing, ریش سفیدان قبیله را جمع آوري نموده گفت having called together the elders of the tribe, he said, مردي ریش سفید محترم پیش آمد a venerable man with grey beards stepped forward, غول زني است چادر سفید با مردي در پناهِ

بدیوار پنهان شده (what seemed to be) the *ghol* was a woman white veiled, hiding with a man under the shade of the wall.

3 The uses of the word سیاه may be illustrated thus (i) دیدم که کلاهِ صاحب پنجاه اشرفی در گوشهٔ چادر بخاکِ سیاه افتاده I perceived the cap containing the fifty ducats lying on the dark ground in the corner of the tent غلامِ سیاه با نیمِ شمشیر وتفنگی بی چخماق سیاهیِ لشکر شد a black slave with half a blade of sword and a trigger less musket gave the confused appearance of an army ما سیاهان سگمان بشما می ارزد a dog of us the blacks is worth (all of) you یکی از ایشان یک کیسهٔ بزرگِ پولِ سیاه آورده بود one of them had brought a large bag full of copper coins (in) مرا دور بری روزگارِ مادرم سیاه می شود if thou carry me far away my mother's life will be darkened روزِ مرا سیاه کرده صبر و آرام را بریده he has made my day dark, has cut off my patience and ease of mind سیاه روزی بسیار نزدیک است the dark day (of misfortune) is very near

2. A Thief Caught.

One night a thief stole a man s horse from the stable and rode away with it. However much he searched the owner could find no clue to the horse or the thief So he started for the place where they sold horses, to buy another When he came to the horse-market, he found his own horse among those for sale He seized the horse by the bridle and cried "This is mine" "It can't be yours," said the thief who was there to sell the horse, "for I have had it more than a year" The real owner then put his hands over the eyes of the horse, and said: If this is your horse, tell me which of its eyes is blind" The thief who had not looked at the horse with care did not know what answer to make at last he said It is blind of left eye" You are wrong said the owner "O no!" said the thief "I spoke too soon! That's a slip of tongue I meant to say the right eye" The owner then removed his hands from the eyes of the horse, and said: "You are a thief; the horse

is not blind of either eye I asked the questions simply to take you in and prove the truth" "Caught! caught!" cried all the men who stood by They then brought the thief to the Police Magistrate who sent him to prison, and restored the horse to its rightful owner

Translate 'one night a thief' &c. **thus:** it is said that one night a thief &c (آوردهاند که شبی دزدی الخ)

Stable— اصطبل - طویله

To steal— دزدیدن (use ماضی معطوفه)

Rode way with it— . در آن سوار شده برفت

He (=the owner)— صاحب اسب However-much— هرچند

He searched— تکاپو نمود و جستجو کرد

He could find no clue to the horse or the thief—

نه از اسب ، اثري يافت نه از دزد سراغي —

To start for (a place)— سوي (مكاني) شدن

The place where they sell horses (=a horse-market)—

— میدان اسب —

Among those for sale— درمیان اسبهای فروختنی

Translate 'He seized the horse &c' **thus:** and seizing its bridle (لگامش را سخت چنگال کرده), cried out (فریاد بر آورد) that it is from my possession (آن من)

Who was there to sell the horse—

— که در آنجا موجود بود و خواست که اسب را بفروشد —

This can't be yours— این اسب نمی تواند از آن تو باشد

For— چه

I have had it more than a year—

— بیشتر از یک سال است که پیش منست —

The real owner— مالک صحیح (یا حقیقی)

To put— گذاشتن (use مضارع امر)

Which of its eyes is blind— کدام چشمش نابیناست

With care— از روی خبرداری (با دیدبانی)

To look at— مرور کردن

To make an answer— پاسخ دادن (use 3 sing, aor)

Left— چپ Blind— کور

You are wrong— غلط گفتی، اشتباه کردی

I spoke too soon— پر زود گفتم

That's a slip of tongue— زبانم بلغزید

I meant the right eye— مرادم چشم راست است

It is not blind of either eye— هیچ یک از چشمهایش کور نیست

Translate I asked these questions &c.' **thus** this question and answer (سؤال و جواب) for this was, that I may take thee in (دست بهلک آرم) and prove the truth (حقیقت را تصدیق نمایم)

All the men who stood by— همهٔ تماشاچیان

Caught— قاپی شد گرفتار شد

Police Magistrate— داروغه

Prison— زندان خانه محبس To restore— استرداد نمودن

NOTES

4. In Persian it is customary to begin a story with such phrases as در امثال روایت کنند که حکایت کنند که گویند که آورده اند که شنیدم که گفته اند که آمده که etc.

5 Words denoting *time* may be used with or without Preposition as (i) در ظرف دو شبانه روز وارد اسلامبول شدیم we reached Istambul in two days and nights تا الحال دو روز از دوست خبری نشد

there was no news of Joseph till the end of day , از صبح تا‌بحال در اندرونِ شاهي آوازِ ندبه و زاري گوشِ گردون را كور مي كرد from morning till now the clamour of lamentation and sorrow in the Royal seraglio was rending the air , صبح تا شام در این شهر هرجا میروی صحبتِ این جوان است from morning till night-fall wherever you may go in this town there is talk about this youth امید دارم بدختری قبول کرده درین روزِ تنگ اعانتِ خود را از من مضایقه نکنی I hope that you will look on me as a daughter, and in this evil day not refuse me your assistance (11) آنشب حکیم از هرشب دیرتر از درخانه برگشت that night the doctor came back later than usual from his attendance at the court , حمّام زنان اکثر صبحگاهان است the baths are open to the women mostly of a morning , باید فردا صبح در آنجا باشیم we should be there by to-morrow morning , همه شب مقراض در دست فتیلهٔ شمعها را مي برید the whole night with scissors in hand he used to cut the wicks of the lamps , دو ساعت از روز گذشته براه افتادیم we took to the road two hours past day-break , شبِ دیگر بام در آمدم the next night I ascended the roof

6 Some more examples of the uses of the word 'پیش' are (1) دلیلِ آن پیشِ خودم است the reason is with me myself, برو پیشِ اسبها منتظر باش go and wait by the horses , من هرگز پیشِ او نخواهم رفت I will never go to him , دو سه روز پیش از حرکت هواي این مسافرت بسرم افتاد the desire of this travel came to my head (just) two or three days before starting , کاغذِ پریروزي در پیشت است is the letter of day-before-yesterday with you ? بیش از پیش لات و لوت ماندم I shall turn out a greater beggar than before,

درین ظاهرحساب دربعضی اس و آن را لازم است money is necessary to appear respectable before the public (ii) سب بعض اوقا عصر ناهار سحراب درسلاده بندید the night before he had been sent to the Royal castle of Shimran چرا تو کمی پیشترها نیامدی why didst not thou come a little sooner? بستر درست مي در ان لنگه آن دید خوابیده است walking further I found a lad sleeping on one side of that carpet به نظر من ممکن نیست مختلف امروز آنچه now a days its sale is not one per cent of that of the previous times پیش از همه وقت وجود او همه را ضبط کرده بود he had already taken possession of all that I had in way of clothes &c. با همه اول بخاطرم رسید که همه جیب های مرده را بگردم I thought in my mind that first of all I should search a little the pockets of the deceased (iii) چنان پیش بینی کرده بود که سردار هیچ بند لنگ he had anticipated things in such a way that the Sardar was completely baffled پیش دوید که دست بدهد he ran forward to shake hands دیگری هرچه باد باد گویان پیش میرود another proceeded on indifferent to all consequences, آنچه بسرش آمد از پیش دید he foresaw all that would necessarily fall upon his head! حرفه او را پیش گرفتن adopt his profession در وقتیکه پیش من میرفت صورتم را ملتفت نشد as she was walking in front of me she did not observe my face I wondered in my mind what a marvellous production (of God) the human species is پیش خود حساب میکردم که این نوع بشر چه تحفهٔ غریب است فردای آن روز وداع ابدی با تبریز گفته راه تفلیس پیش گرفتم the day after that bidding an eternal farewell to Tabriz I took the road to Tiflis راهی پیش پایم بگذار من آنرا پیروی کنم set a path before me and I will follow it بر خود واجب دانستم که پیش از رفتن

۱۰۶ را از حیلهٔ او خبردار کدم I considered it my duty to inform you of his plot before-hand, (iv) یکی از پیشخدمتان دران کار مامور شد one of his body-servants was placed in charge of that affair, لشکر ایران تا در هفتهٔ دیگر سوی هرات درحرکت آمده تسخیر تمامی هندوستان را پیشنهاد همت خود خواهد ساخت the Persian army, within the next two weeks, moving towards Herat, will make the conquest of the whole of India the object of their ambition, بهرجا می رود شادی پیشاپیش او می رود wherever he goeth, joy attends him before-hand, من در نوروز کنیزی بشاه پیشکش کردم on New-year's Day I presented a female-slave to the King, این وقائع راه پیشرفت من می شود these events opened my way to promotion, جمعی انبوه به پیش و پسم افتاده اند a large crowd of people has been pursuing me from all sides

3 The Three Sons of Faridun.—I.

Faridun had, we are told, three sons The two elders—Selm, and Tur, were by one mother, the daughter of Zohhak; the youngest Erij, by Iran Dukht, the daughter of a Prince of Persia After these three princes had been united in marriage to three daughters of a king of Arabia, Faridun divided his wide dominions among them To Selm he gave the countries comprehended in modern Turkey, to Tur, Tartary and part of China, and to Erij, Persia. The princes departed for their respective governments, but the two elders were displeased that Persia, the fairest of lands and the seat of royalty, should have been given to their younger brother, and they combined to effect his ruin They first sent to their father, to reproach him with his partiality and injustice, and to demand a rivision of his act, thereatening an immediate attack, if their request was refused The old king was greatly distressed He represented to them that his days were drawing to a close, and entreated that he might be allowed to depart in peace Erij discovered what was passing, and resolved to go to his brothers and resign his crown and throne that had been the cause of

disunion amongst them. So he started with a letter from their parent to Selm and Tur the purport of which was a solicitation that they should live together in peace. This appeal had no effect and Erij was slain by his brothers who had the barbarity to embalm his head and send it to Faridun. The old monarch fainted at the sight; when he recovered, he seized with frantic grief the head of his beloved son placed it on his bosom and holding it in his raised hands he called upon Heaven to punish the base perpetrators of so unnatural and cruel a deed

Translate Faridun had &c. a Prince of Persia **thus** in the traditions (اخبار) it has come (آمده) that Faridun (فریدون) three son had Selm (سلم) and Tur (تور), his elder sons (پسران بزرگش), by (از) the daughter of Zohhak (ضحاک) and Erij (ایرج), his younger son (پسر کوچک) by Iran Dukht (ایران دخت) the daughter of one of the princes of Persia (از اعاظم فرس),

To unite in marriage— مزاوجت دادن (use 3 sing past act voice with 'princes as object)

A king of Arabia— یکی از سلاطین عرب

His wide dominions— ممالک وسیع خود را

To divide— (در) قسمت کردن

Translate 'to Selm he gave &c. **thus** in this wise (باین طریق) that the country (بلادی) which now-a-days (امروز) under the government of the Turks is (در تحت ریاست ترکست) to Selm and the country of Tartary (ممالک توران) and some part of China (بعضی از ممالک چین) to Tur and Persia (را) to Erij he gave away (وا گذار کرد)

Their respective governments— ایالتهاي مخصوص خويش

Were displeased— دلتنگ و آزرده خاطر گرديدند

Translate 'Persia, the fairest of lands &c' **thus** : Persia, that both (هم) the fairest of lands (خوشترين ممالك) and (و هم) the seat of Government (قرارگاه سلطنت) is, to their younger brother might be given (داده شود)

To effect his ruin— در استيصال وي

To combine— دست يكي شدن - بايكديگر اتّفاق كردن

First— اوّل Sent to their father— به پدر پيغام كردند .

Translate 'to reproach him &c' **thus** : and him for his partiality (جانبداري) and injustice (بى انصافي) they reproached (ملامت نمودند), and said that if alteration of (تغيير) this act (عمل) be not made (نشود) immediately (بى تأمّل) troop (لشكر) upon thy head we would lead (خواهيم كشيد)

Translate 'the old king was &c' **thus** : from this remark (مقوله) the old king (ملكِ كهن سال) was greatly distressed (رنجشِ بغتي يافت)

To represent— اطلاع نمودن

His (= my) days were (= are) drawing to a close—

— ايّام عمرم نزديك به پايان رسيد

— وقتِ حياتِ من نزديك بخاموشي است

Translate 'and entreated that he &c' **thus** : you should withdraw the hand from this sort of acts (بايد ازين گونه حركات دست برداريد) that I may be able (مي توانم) in peace and safety (راحت و امنيت) from this perishable

world (جهانِ ثاني) I may depart (رحلت بكنم)

What was passing— كيفيت واقعه

To discover (= be aware of)— (از) مستحضر شدن

To resolve— عزم كردن

Translate 'to go to his brother &c. **thus** that himself (خود) near the brothers having gone from crown and throne (از تاج و تخت) that the cause of dissension among them (مادّة فساد و مايهٔ نزاع ايشان) is, he would resign ([illegible] جريد)

With a letter from their parent— نامهٔ از پدر گرفته

The purport of which &c. in peace—

كه مضمون آن ترغيب بصلح و اتفاق بود —

To Selm and Tur— بجهت ايشان

To start— روان گشتن

Translate 'this appeal had no effect &c. **thus** but (ولي) upon this deliberations (تدابير) no effect having appeared (اثري مترتّب نگشته) Erij at the hands of the brothers to slaughter (بقتل) reached (رسيد)

Who = and they

Had the barbarity (= their transgression to such a limit was that)—

تعدّي ايشان بحدّي بود كه —

To embalm — [illegible] لموميا

At the sight (= when his eyes fell upon the head of his son)—

چون نظرش بر سر پسرش افتاد—

To faint— از خويش رفتن   To recover— بخود آمدن

With frantic grief— دیوانه وار Beloved son— جگر گوشه اش را
Holding it in his raised hands— به هردو دست آنرا بالا برداشته
Translate 'he called upon Heaven &c.' **thus:** from the revengeful God (جبار منتقم) retaliation for the unnatural and cruel behaviour of this oppressive evil-doers (کیفر کردار این بدکاران جفا پیشه را که چنان در نظر انسانی مذموم و از جادهٔ مروت دور بود) he implored for (مسئلت نمود)

NOTES

7 The idiomatic uses of the word 'خاطر' may be illustrated thus (i) خاطرمرا می خواهد he is fond of me, تو کی شنیدی من خاطرش را می خواستم how did you hear that I was fond of her? خاطرم نماند I did not remember, نذری که در راه کرده بودم بخاطرم آمد I remembered the vow that I had made on my way (home), باری رضای خاطر ترکان بجا آمد after all the wishes of the Turks were fulfilled, گذشتهایت را بخاطر بیاور recollect thy past adventures, (ii) ای مرد بخاطر خدا این اسبرا برگردان O man, for the sake of God, turn this horse, تدبیری بخاطر اندیشه ناکم رسید a plan came into my troubled mind, نامش از خاطر مبارک محو شده his name has been obliterated from (thy) auspicious mind, بیچاره میمون را بی هیچ دغدغهٔ خاطر سر برید he cut off the head of the poor monkey without the least compunction of heart, پیاده بمیل خاطر از عقب می آمدند the infantry was coming from behind as well as it could (or would) (iii) خاطرت جمع باشد let thy mind be at ease, می خواست خاطر خواه مرا از دستم بگیرد he would have taken my beloved out of my hand, اکثر مرد و زن بزرگان بخاطر خوبیهای پدرم

اخلاص قلبی بمن دارند the greater part of the people and all the nobels have hearty devotion to me for the sake of my father' good deeds, در همچو خاطر جمع چرا اینجا می آئی why do you come here in this imperturbed way? بخاطرخواه خود مقدار نقد موعود افزودیم we raised the amount of promised cash to our heart's wishes از رعیت احدی از آن مرحوم و کسانش آزرده خاطر نشد not a single person from among the subject people was ever displeased at heart from the behaviour of the defunct of blessed memory and his men.

4 The Boy and the Cat.—I

In ancient times in the city of London there was a wealthy merchant, who took into his house a poor orphan and brought him up. Although this child was so young that the merchant did not appoint him to any work yet he himself being diligent, and having devised some work for himself busied himself in collecting lost pins. When he had picked up a number of them he brought them to his master and gave them to him. The merchant was pleased and said Please God by and by this boy will turn out a trustworthy and economical man.' One day in that house a cat gave birth to some kittens and that orphan obtained permission to rear one of them for himself. When the kitten grew up one day it happened that the merchant, having laden one of his ships with various kinds of merchandise was sending it to a distant country and he wished to go on board the ship and see whether every thing was right On the way as he went he met the boy holding his cat in his arms He said to him: Child hast thou not something too to send across the sea for sale?" The boy said: Sir you well know that I am destitute and have nothing but this cat" The merchant said Well, send this cat that it may be sold and its price brought back to you" The boy handed over his cat to one of the sailors and asked that they should sell it for him and the ship started

In ancient times— در قدیم الایام

A wealthy merchant— تاجر دولتمندي

Took (= having taken) into his house— در خانهٔ خود جا داده

To bring up— پرورش نمودن

Young— کوچک . To appoint to a work بکاري گماشتن

He himself— خودِ وي

Being diligent (=loving toil)— محنت را دوست داشته

To Devise— انديشيدن

Translate 'busied himself &c' thus became engaged in this (مشغول اين شد) that lost pins (سنجاقهاي گم شده) he might collect (جمع کند)

A number— مقداري To pick up— برچيدن

Please God— انشاء الله By and by— بعد از چندي

A trustworthy and economical man— مردِ معتمدِ صرفه جو

To obtain permission— اذن يافتن To rear پرورش دادن

Kitten— بچّه گربه It happened— چنين اتّفاق افتاد

Various kinds of merchandise— اموال و اجناسِ تجارتي

To load— انباشتن

To go on board the ship— داخلِ کشتي شدن

And see whether everything was right—

تا ببيند که آيا هرچيز به ترتيب است —

To meet— (با کسي) برخوردن ,

Holding = who had In his arms— در بغل

Translate 'hast thou not something &c' thus. (آيا) thou too (نيز) something hast not (نداري) that for sale (فروش) to that side of the sea (بآن طرف دريا) thou mayst send

Well— بخوبي   Destitute— مفلس

Translate that it may be sold &c.' **thus** that that (تا) having sold (فروخته) its price (را) for thee they may bring back (باز آورند)

To ask— درخواست کردن

NOTES

8 The idiomatic uses of the word خوش may be illustrated thus (i) هر چيز در وقت خودش خوش است every thing at its proper time is good من چون ايشانرا همرنگ خود مي ديدم خوشم مي آمد I was delighted to find them similarly situated with myself ديدم يارا خوش آمدي را خوش نيامد I observed it was not pleasant to some خوش آمدي سايه ات از سر ما كم مشود thou art welcome may thy shadow be not lessened from over our head از سر گذشتم خوشش آمد he was pleased with my story — از پرگوئي خوش نبود he was not addicted to too much talking سفر ما خوش گذشت our journey was propitious (ii) بخوش نويسي نويسانديم we had it written by a good calligraphist تو از ايشان اندكي خوش طالع تري thou art somewhat more fortunate than they خوش وقت سفر نزديك شد خوشوقت شدم I was delighted when the time for starting came near مرغوبي خوشي شما بود my motive was thy happiness بلد با مردي خوش سر و وضع بسي ناصحي the conductor with a man, well-turned out as to head dress and apparel, rode towards me بسوي من پيش آمد پدرم بسبب نيك مردي و خوشرائي مطبوع طبع همه كس بوده است my father owing to his gentleness and good nature had been a great favourite of all (ranks of people) دستم از خوشگذراني كوتاه گرديد I was deprived of the means of leading a life of pleasure كس همه ابرقباني

امروز مثلِ من خوش بخت شوند would that every Persian had had the good-fortune which had befallen me to-day, از وضع و طورم خوشنود گشته he was delighted with my appearance and bearing نورجهان خوش حال بود چراکه هوادار من است Norjehan was delighted as she was a well-wisher of mine, بسیار خشنود میشوم که پول بگیرم I shall be very much satisfied to take money, درین صورت خوشگل یا بدگل چه تفاوت دارد in that case what difference will it make, if she is pretty or not? ولی نقد باید با پول حکیم خوش بگذارم but now let me enjoy myself at the doctor's expense, از مصاحبتش خیلی خوشوقت شدم I was much pleased with his company, او نیز از من خوشنود نیست he is not also satisfied with me

5. The Three Sons of Faridun II.

The daughter of Erij was married to Pushang, the nephew of Faridun, and their young son, Manuchehr, proved the image of his grand-father The child became the cherished hope of the aged monarch; and when the young prince attained manhood, he made every preparation to enable him to revenge the blood of Erij Selm and Tur trembled as they saw the day of retribution approach, they sent ambassadors with rich presents to their father, imploring pardon for the past, and entreated that Manuchehr might be sent to them, that they might stand in his presence like slaves and wash away the remembrance of their crimes by tears of contrition Faridun returned their presents with indignation, and replied to their message in unflinching terms "Tell the merciless men," he exclaimed, "that they shall never see Manuchehr but attended by armies and clothed in steel" A war commenced, and in the first battle Tur was slain by the lance of Manuchehr Selm retired to a fortress, but he was ultimately seized upon by Manuchehr, and made one with his brother. When Manuchehr returned in triumph, the venerable Faridun advanced on foot to meet him, the prince dismounted when he approached, and, after kissing the ground, received his congratulations Faridun

soon afterwards died; but before he expired he established the grandson of Erij firmly on the throne, and advised him to attend to the council of Sam a nobleman of great wisdom and high birth who was the hereditary Prince of Seistan

To be married to— در حبالهٔ ازدواج کسی درآمدن

Their young son Manuchehr—

پسری منوچهر نام که از ایشان در وجود آمد—

Was the imag of their grand father—

در صورت و سیرت با جدّ خود مشابهت تام داشت —

The child became &c of the aged monarch—

آن شاه پیر را همهٔ تعلّقات قلبی و امیدهای
دلی بآن پسر وهبی وابسته شد —

When he attained manhood—

چون از سنّ صبی بحدّ بلوغ آمد —

He made every preparation &c. the blood of Erij—

تهیه و تدارک حرب را علی وجه الکمال دیده او
را بانتقام خون ایرج قادر و مستعد گردانید —

As they saw the day of retribution approach—

چون دیدند روز انتقام را در یافتند —

They trembled—

از بیم و هراس آب در دهانشان یخ زد —
برخود لرزیدند —

Ambassador— سفیر ایلچی Rich presents— هدایای ملوکانه

To their father— بدربار پدر Sent = having sent.

For the past— از افعالِ گذشته

To implore pardon— [illegible] (use 3 pl. past)

To entreat— معروض داشتن

Translate 'that they might stand &c. thus in the Direct

form of narration that slave-like (بنده وار) in the presence (در حضور) having stood (ایستاده), we may do him service (خدمتش را بجا آریم) and the remembrance of our crimes (یادِ جرایم خود مان را) with tears of contrition (اشک ندامت) we may wash (شوئیم)

With indignation—با قهر و تنفّر

To return— رد نمودن (use ماضي معطوفه)

Replied to their message in unflinching terms—

پاسخِ پیغام شان با الفاظِ بیباکانه داد —

Merciless men— بي رحم مردمان They = their eye

But attended by armies and clothed in steel

بعد با عساکر در جلو و سلاح در بر او —

War— جنگ Battle— معرکه ,

Tur was (=having) slain *by the lance of Manuchehr*—

تور بنیزه منوچهر بخاک هلاک افتاده —

Fortress— قلعه . To retire— پناه بردن

To seize upon— بتصرف آوردن (use act voice ماضي معطوف with منوچهر as nominative)

Made one with his brother— ببرادر ملحق ساخت

Translate 'when Manuchehr returned &c' **thus :** Manuchehr victorious and triumphant (فیروز و مظفّر) having returned still on the way was, that through excess of joy (از فرط انبساط) Faridun, the venerable (محترم), for meeting him (برای استقبالش) on foot (پیاده) advanced (پیش رفت)

To approach— نزدیک شدن

To dismount— پیاده شدن (use ماضي معطوف)

Translate after kissing the ground &c. **thus** the ground of service (زمین خدمت) he kissed and with the congratulations (تهنیت و مبارکبادي) of the king became dignified (مشرّف گشت)

Soon afterwards— چلدي بعد ازین

To die— باسلاف خویش پیوستن

Before he expired— پیش از آنکه اجل گریبان گیر حیاتش شود

To establish firmly on the throne— بر سریر مملکت متمکن ساختن (use ماضي معطوف)

Translate 'advised him to attend to the council of Sam &c. **thus** him in honouring and venerating (باحترام و اعلزام) and accepting the good counsels of Sam (قبول نصایح سام) who with right opinion (باصالت رای) and with nobility of birth (اصالت خانواده) qualified (موصوف) and father upon father among the rulers of (حکّام) Seistan was, he advised (وصیت نمود).

NOTES

9. The idiomatic uses of the words آب may be illustrated thus (i) چون کسي آب گوید بدانار—ي با عبارت آبدار بگو when any one demand water speak (to him) in flattering and pleasant language خراسانید از آب انبار آب ندهند they would not give me water from the reservoir با نقوديکه از آب و فرلي سقّالي اندوخته بودم حالم به از وقت ورودم امشهد بود with the money that I had accumulated by the business of a water-carrier I was better off (now) than when I (first) came to Meshhed, تا کیسه آبدرولي غلام از حس ۵۰ کم I

broke the bowl from which my mistress used to drink water , حیاط را جاروب و آب پاشی کردند the courtyard was well-swept and sprinkled with water , بارانِ شب دوشین بآن آب و تابِ تازه داده بود last night's rain had given it a new brilliancy and splendour , بقدر خوردن میوه و نوشیدن آبِ دوغی خوا[ستم] I asked for enough fruit to eat and curds to drink , شاهزادگانِ والا تبار با آب و رنگی بیشتر از آب و رنگِ جواهر و مرواریدِ آبدار بر بالای پادشاه از چپ و راست صف زده the Princes royal, more beautiful than the blazing pearls and jewels of the finest water adorning the Royal person, stood in rows to the right and left , تمامی باغات را از چاهها آبیاری می کنند all the gardens are supplied with water from the wells , آب و هوای این منزلگاه خیلی بد بود the climate of this station was very bad , اولاً بی اختیار لرزه ام گرفت چنانچه آب و توشم نماند at first involuntarily I was seized with a trembling, making me lose all my power and strength , از وضع و خداوندی در شگفتی اندر شدم که در نهادِ این مشتی آب و گل که آدمیش نامند چگونه این همه قدرت و قوتِ مادی و معنوی را خلاق فرموده I was struck with wonder to contemplate how He had created all these physical and mental powers and capacities in the nature of this handful of water and earth, called man , امین الدوله را با من شکرآبی درمیان بود Aminud-Dowlah and I had a disagreement between us (11) پیراهنِ قصبِ آبی خریدم I bought a blue muslin shirt , باید که نیم تنه زری آبی در رشت بدهی بدوزند you must get a blue gold-embroidered jacket made in Rasht , من با جوابهای آب ندیده بمقابله پرداختم I engaged myself in answering him with plain unvarnished language , اگر سرت بزرگ و تنت کوچک و بینیت پهن می بود امروز سرت در آب ... می ... had thy head been large,

and thy eyes small and thy nose flat to-day thy head would have been pickled in salt د دلد له حرف آبِ دىدى اسى they perceived the rival to be too strong علي الخصوص سملى آغا كه لعست از بيم جان آب دردهانس بعـ through fear of life water dried up in the mouth of Usman Agha particularly زينب ﺑ ديده ﻧﮕﻔـﺖ تا آب از آسيا افتاد Zainab pretended not to see me till every thing was still مر لرد خانم زيرآبِ شيرين ﺑ ميزند she reports to our mistress against Shirin حالا نزدِ خانم كره اش خيلي آب ا برمي‌دارد now she is high in favour with our mistress ميكرد دلم چاك و زهرم آب شد on hearing this story my heart was torn and my bile turned into water از ترسِ اينكه مبادا آبِ رفته ام باز بجوي آيد ا افسوس بيرونم كرد fearing lest I may regain my lost position, she contrived to drive me out of the harem علي كور پسر رب و شوهر بجاي شكم آب رفته بود Ali Kur had gone to the lavatory بآب زني كلاغشد husband and wife gave themselves up to gobbling all that comes to hand ريشه ات ﺑ بآب ميرساند they will entirely up-root and destroy thee شايد بار آبي بروى كار آيد perhaps my affair may again prosper اگر آنوقت حالت آن بيچارگان را ميديدي دلت كباب و جگرت آب مي شد if thou hast then seen the miserable condition of those helpless ones, thy heart would have burned and thy liver turned into water عهد كردم بآب قناعت آتشِ حرص و طمع ﺑ فرونشانم I vowed to quench the fire of avarice and greed with the water of contentment.

10 Some examples of the uses of the word خاك ale (i) تو اوّلين كس ديدم كه خاك وطن خود ﺑ گرامي داشتي thou art the first person I saw who respects the earth of the native-land

در خیال آن بودم که سر بر سنگ بر روی خاک بخوابم I was contemplating to sleep on the ground with my head on a stone (ii) یک هیئت از ملّت ژاپون بعزم سیاحت وارد خاک المان شد a body of persons from the Japanese nation arrived in the country of Germany with a view to travel , ای وطن عزیز و گرامی ! تن و جانم فدای خاک تو داد - خاک تو مایهٔ زندگانی و هوایت رشک هوای بهشت جاویدانیست O dear and venerated mother-country ! may my body and soul be the sacrifice for thy soil, for thy earth is the source of our life and thy atmosphere the envy of the air of the eternal paradise , خاک و حالیهٔ ایران بقدر ربع خاک فرانسه سکنه و جمعیت ندارد the country and environments of Persia do not possess a quarter of the population of the country of France (iii) بحساب گورکنان تا دیروز ششصد نفر بخاک سپرده شده است according to the reckoning of the grave-diggers, till yesterday six hundred individuals have been consigned to the earth , هیچ خبرداری که کنیز کرد چه خاک عالم در سر من ریخت do you know what world of ashes the Kurdish slave-girl has heaped upou my head ? عزیز من چه خاک بر سر خود کنم my dear, what ashes should I sprinkle on my head (iv) فردا صبح تفصیلی در آن باب بخاکپای همایون عرضه دارم to-morrow morning I shall submit to His Majesty the details of that affair , آنقدر بخاک خارجه ریخته متحمل اینگونه خواری و رنجها اند so many of them having fled to foreign parts endure these sorts of disgrace and hardships , بسیار بزرگ را در ایران سراغ دارم که بآتش اکسیر سوخته تودهٔ خاکستر شده است I know many rich people in Persia, who, having been burned with the flame of elixir, have turned into heaps of ashes.

6 The Boy and the Cat —II

After some months the vessel reached an unknown island and cast anchor When the sailors disembarked they were told that a sovereign reigned there When the king heard that some foreigners had arrived in his country he commanded that they should be invited to lunch with him. But when they sat down at the royal table they saw that although there was plenty of food, yet it was impossible to eat as much as even one morsel in comfort because the king's palace was full of mice and rats, which were so daring that they would snatch the morsels from the hands of the guests. The sovereign was ashamed and declared that he should give a large sum to any one who would discover a remedy for this calamity Then one of the sailors said : " May it please your Majesty I have a beast of prey which, if you permit will in no time completely destroy all these mice The king gave permission, and they brought the cat, that busied herself in such a manner that after half an-hour no mouse dared to show its snout The king was extremely pleased, and purchased the cat for a sack full of gold ; and thus the orphan was very much enriched

The vessel (= that vessel)— آن کشتی

An unknown island— جزیرهٔ غیر معلوم

To cast anchor— لنگر انداختن To disembark— به خشکی آمدن

To be told— مطّلع گشتن Sovereign— سلطان

To reign— پادشاهی کردن Foreigners— اشخاص اجنبی

To arrive in a country— وارد ملکی شدن

Translate he commanded that they &c. thus he commanded (امر فرمود) so that them they invited (دعوت کردند) that with him lunch (ناهار) they may eat

Royal table— خوان سلطانی Plenty of food— فراوانی خوراک

Was (= is present)— موجود است

It was (= is) impossible— ممکن نیست

In comfort— با آسودگی As much as— حتّی

A morsel— لقمه Because— از آنرو که ، از بسکه

Mice and rats— موشهای خرد و درشت   Was (= is) full— مملو ...

Which were so daring &c —

که آنها باین حد جرأت کرده لقمه‌هارا از دست مهمانان می ربایند—

To be ashamed   خجل گردیدن

Translate 'declared that he should give a large sum &c

thus : he said, that whoever (هرکس) the remedy of this calamity (علاج این بلا را) may discover (دریابد) a large sum of money (مبلغی عظیم) to him I shall bestow (خواهم بخشید)

A beast of prey— حیوان درنده   If you permit   اگر اذن باشد

All these mice— جمیع این موشهارا   In no time— بتعجیل تمام

To destroy—نیست و نابود کردن   To bring— حاضر نمودن

That = and the cat   Engaged herself— مشغول شکار شد

Half an hour— نیم ساعت

No mouse dared to show its snout—

هیچ موشي زهرهٔ آنرا نداشت که پوز خود را نماید —

For a sack full of gold— بغوالي پر از طلا

To be enriched— دولتمند گردیدن

NOTES

11 The uses of the word 'خشک' may be illustrated thus (1) چوب تررا بهر قسم که میخواهند مي پیچند امّا چون خشک شود بغیر آتش راست نمي گردد a green stick can be twisted whatever way one wishes, but when it gets dry it will not become straight without fire, لب خشک مظلوم را گو بخند bid the dry lip of the oppressed one laugh, من مانند پارچهٔ چوبي درجاي خشک I was transfixed like a piece of dry wood, ازجاي خشک و خالي چه فائده

what benefit will accrue from a life dry and empty ? روزي هوا از همه روز گرمتر بود on a certain day the weather was more than usually sultry دماغت خشك شده بود had thy brain been dried up ? (ii) درحقيقت اين كشتي عمارتِ بحريِ اعلحضرتِ پادشاهِ انگليس است كه همان طوركه در خشكي عمارت دارند in fact this ship is an ocean-palace of Her Majesty the Queen of England just as she possesses palaces on dry land از جانبِ جنوب ايران خبر خشكي و آثار قحطي بهر سوي پراكند from the southern portion of Persia the news of want of rain and forebodings of famine spread in all directions (iii) سقّايانِ مشهد را همينكه چشم برمن افتاد آبِ دهانشان خشك شد as soon as the water-carriers of Meshhed perceived me they were stung with jealousy همه ساله مقدار كلي گزاف خشكبار از آنجا بخارج مي رود the whole year round an immense quantity of dried fruits is exported from this place در ايّام امارتِ جهانگير خشك سالي پديد آمد during the reign of Jehangir a famine appeared

12 Some examples of the use of the word امر are (i) برحسبِ امر بار به بقچه نهاد according to order he replaced it in the bundle اگر براي خاطر من نبود امر قبلهٔ عالم از كجا مي آمد had it not been for me how the command of His Majesty would have been fulfilled ? مگر من مرده بودم كه تو بايد امر بمعروف و نهي از منكر را بجاي آوري was I dead that thou must take upon thyself the lead in matters of religion ? (ii) دربارهٔ بعضي امور كلّي گفتگو نمائيم we will converse about certain important affairs اختيار كلّ امور بعهدهٔ كفايتِ او نهاد he placed the control of all the affairs in his able hand (iii) امر نمود كه يك توپ ماهوت بمن دادند he ordered a piece of cloth to be delivered to me بسكارهٔ ربع امر كلم گرديد مرحبي ازدل

را بزند I shall order the planet Mars to strike off Monsieur Jourdan's head, امر فرمود که آن مرد بعد از طرف پادشاه هرگز شرط نباید he commanded that the man should never afterwards lay a wager on behalf of the king

13 Some examples of the use of the word 'علاج' are (i) علاج درد دندان مخصوص است باین it is a special cure for tooth-ache, (ii) اورا علاجي بغير داغ نيست it has no remedy save branding, (iii) اجل علاج ندارد death has no remedy, (iv) بترتیب علاج و تدبیر منع مرض بپردازند they should engage in preparing remedies and guarding against illness, (v) علاج این همه غمها چیست what is the remedy for all these sorrows? (vi) در دورهٔ اوّل علاجش سهل است at the beginning its cure is easy, (vii) از براي انجام این مطلب جز این علاجي پیدا نیشود to accomplish this object there appears to be no remedy but this

7 The House-dog and the Wolf.

A lean hungry wolf chanced one moon-shiny night to fall in with a plump well-fed house dog After the first compliments were passed between them, "How is it, my friend," said the wolf, "that you look so sleek? How well your food agrees with you! and here am I striving for my living night and day, and can hardly save myself from starving" "Well," says the dog, "if you would fare like me, you have only to do as I do" "Indeed!" says he, "and what is that?" "Why," replies the dog, "just to guard the master's house and keep off the thieves at night" "With all my heart, for at present I have but a sorry time of it This desert life, with its frosts and rains, is sharp work for me To have a warm roof over my head and a bellyful of victuals always at hand will methinks, be no bad exchange" "True," says the dog, "therefore you have nothing to do but to follow me" Now as they were jogging on together, the wolf spied a mark in the dog's neck, and

having a strange curiosity could not forbear asking what it meant. Pooh! nothing at all," says the dog "Nay but pray —says the wolf "Oh! a mere trifle perhaps the collar to which my chain is fastened—" "Chain cries the wolf in surprise you don't mean to say that you cannot rove when and where you please?" "Why not exactly perhaps; you see I am looked upon as rather fierce so they sometimes tie me up in the day time but I assure you I have perfect liberty at night, and the master feeds me off his own plate and the servants give me their tit bits, and I am such a favourite and—but what is the matter? where are you going?" "Oh, good night to you," says the wolf; "you are welcome to your dainties; but for me a dry crust with liberty against a king's luxury with a chain.

One moon-shiny night— شبي مهتاب

A lean hungry wolf— گرگي لاغر و گرسنگي بيتاب

A plump well fed house-dog— سگي خانگي سمين و بسيار خوار

To fall in with— با كسي بر خوردن

After the first compliments &c.—

از با انجار انكي مراسم دستانه و تعيات مستعمله لمرده —

My friend = my old friend

That you look so sleek— كه بدين بدين آب و تاب مي نمايد

To agree with— باكسي ساختن

Translate and here am I striving &c. thus and here (اينك) I who night and day in search of living (تلاش معاش) confounded (سرگردان) and distracted (پريشان) that a mere subsistence (لُقمه نانِ بخور) I may secure (بدست آرم) and alas (حيف) that this even to my hand does not reach (نمي رسد)

To fare (well)— خوش زندگاني نمودن (use aor 2 sing after present tense 2 sing of خواستن)

You have only to do as I do— بايد بكني آنچه من بكنم

Translate 'Indeed! and what is that?' **thus** thy work (تکاپوت را) dost thou say (مي گوئي) and that what is?

Translate 'just to guard the master's house &c' **thus**: at night it is necessary (بايد) guarding of the master's house (پاسباني خانهٔ آقا) thou mayest do (نمائي) and the thief (را) from that mayest keep off (باز داري) and enough

With all my heart (I agree)— با جان و دل راضي هستم

I have but a sorry time of it— بعد از اوقاتِ تلخي و گرسنگي هيچم نيست

Translate 'this desert life, with its frosts and rains &c' **thus** the calamities and hardships of this desert life (مصائب و درشتيهاي اين زندگاني بياباني) with the violence of the rain (شدّتِ باران) and the sharpness of the frost (حدّتِ سرما) hath reached my soul (بجانم رسيده), how nice (خوش) it would be (بود) that my condition (رسمم) being changed (تبديل شده) for my head (سرم را) a shelter (پناهي) may be under a roof (زير سقف) and for my stomach (شکمم را) plenty of food (خوردني زياد) in the palm (در کف)

You have nothing to do but to follow me—

بايد هيچ، بلكي بعد از دنبالِ من بيآئي

Translate 'now as they were jogging on together &c' **thus** the wolf agreeing (اجابت کنان) both were jogging on (هر دو خرامان خرامان مي آمدند) when (که) the eye of the wolf upon a mark (داغي) upon the neck of the dog having fallen (افتاده) a strange curiosity (کنجکاوي عجيبي)

upon him dominant (مستولی) became, that he could *not restrain himself* (نمی توانست خود داری بکند) and asked, that this mark of thy neck what thing is.

*Pooh— به   Nothing at all— چیزی نیست

Translate Nay but pray &c. **thus** but on the persisting of (اصرار) the wolf seeing no help (چاره ندیده) said &c.

A mere trifle— چیزی مختصر   Perhaps— مگر

Collar— طوق

To which my chain is fastened— که زنجیرم را بآن می بندند

Translate Chain ! cries the wolf in surprise &c. **thus** from hearing of the word of chain (از شنیدن حرف زنجیر) the wolf in surprise (در تعجّب) having fallen (افتاده) interrupted his speech (قطع سخنش نمود) that chain or (یعنی) what ?

You don t mean to say— مگر می گوئی مگر مرادت نیست

You cannot rove when and where you please—

هرگاه و هرجا که می خواهی بی هیچ مانع نمی توانی گردش بکنی —

Not exactly perhaps— نه مگر بعینه چنین است

Translate 'you see I am looked upon as rather &c. **thus** know you (بدانید) that rather (بیشتر) they look upon me as fierce (درنده ام میپندارند) so the day-time (هنگام روز) sometimes (گاه گاه) me they tie (می بندند) but (ولی) upon my life (بجان خودم) night the whole night (شب همه شب) like the wind (باد) am free (آزادم)

Off his own plate— از بشقاب خودش

To feed عذا دادن (use 3 aor sing with به)

Their tit-bits— از لقمهٔ ایشان چیزی

Favourite— منظور نظر همه

What is the matter— چه شده است

Good-night to you شب شما خوش باد - خدا حافظ شما

You are welcome to your dainties— بروید لذائذ تان را بخورید

For me, a dry crust with liberty &c —

براى بنده نان خشک در آزادگي به از صد
عیش و نوش ملوکانه با زنجیر و پاي بندي —

NOTES

14. The idiomatic uses of the word 'دل' may be illustrated thus (1) از شنیدن این خبر دلش انبساط یافت on hearing these words his heart was delighted, دلش از این خبرهاي خوش لبریز بود his heart was full to the brim with these glad tidings, دلم تنگ گردید و آهي بي اختیار از دلم سر مي زد my heart was tightened and involuntarily a sigh escaped therefrom, از دیدن این حال دلم بهم زد on seeing this state of things my heart was rent, زنگ غم رنگ چهرهام را تار و دلم را تیره ساخت the rust of sorrow darkened my face and blackened my heart, هرچه بیشتر در آنجا ماندم دلم از شغل خویش بیشتر را زده گردید the more I stayed there, the more did my profession seem repugnant to my heart, دلش میخواهد برود پاریس را به بیند his heart desires to go and see Paris, هرکه دلش ماهي بخواهد خودش را باب سرد مي زند he whose heart desireth a fish throws himself in cold water, از شنیدن این - تنها آهي چنان - از

این حرف را که از من شنید از ته دل آه کشید on hearing this he would heave such a deep sigh from the depth of his heart that I trembled all over (iii) آقا حالا این وضع را که می بینم دلم خون می شود Sir my heart bleeds to observe these circumstances دلم خیلی تنگ است my heart is distressed what a bad luck I have had شاید دل خانم بحالش بسوزد perhaps the ... heart may soften at her condition (۲۵) چشمش به سر بریده افتاد ناگاه suddenly a glance of his eye having fallen on the dead man's head, his heart lost its place دلش از جا برآمد چند بار بدلم آمد که از اصفهان بیرون بروم several times it came to my mind that I should leave Ispahan unknown to anybody و کسی را خبر نکنم (۲۶) اول دلم بحال هر چه از دست داده بودم میسوخت at first my heart burnt for all that I had lost then the tranquillity of my heart was somewhat restored دلم قرار یافت وقتی که در حالت او فکر می کردم دلم خون می شد I contemplated his state my heart used to bleed (iii) از شدت دلتنگی بگوشه کجاوه رفته خوابیدم having retired to a corner of the waggon, I slept from excessive distress of heart دل بخواه خبر گرفتیم we got information to our heart's content; از قلب خود دلش غنج میزد he inwardly exulted at having ... one of his oppressors دیگری را دلداری دادم I coaxed the second; فرصتی چنین دلکش و دلربا کم دست می افتد an opportunity full of such pleasure and attraction rarely occurs بفرمائید تا بجان و دل خدمتی که دارید tell me the service you require of me that I may strive to do it with heart and soul

15 Examples of the uses of the word 'چشم' are (i) بلی چشم yes, on my eyes be it Sir I take my leave مرخص میشوم

تاروردي بچشم او بقدر پشّه نمی آید Tarwardi is not worth a gnat in her estimation, روشنئ چشم همین یک پسر را دارم I have only this son, the light of my eye, اینها همه برای آنست که شهباز یکروز از پیش چشمان کنار نباشد all these are for this that Shahbaz may not be out of our sight even for a day, خوش آمدید صفا آوردید قدم بالای چشم you are welcome, you have brought pleasure, your step is on our eyes, امّا بچشم سر آنچه میگذشت میدیدم but still I saw what was going on, چشمت روشن خان مفتي بدر بردی may thy eyes be brightened, thou hast got off very cheaply (ii) گناه این همه را از چشم من باید دید the sin for all these should be ascribed to me, امان از چشم بد که مرا بستوه آورده است save me from the evil eyes that have embittered my soul, میباید که مهمانيِ او خار چشم دشمنان و گلِ باغ دوستان شود his entertainment ought to be the object of envy to his enemies and that of congratulation to his friends, دیدم که حکیم را بچشم کسی میدیدند که کار نکرده مزدی خواهد و مرا بچشم کسي که کوه ابو قبیس را با دعا از جا تواند کند I perceived that they looked upon the physician in the light of a person who wanted payment without doing any work, while I was regarded by them as a divine person able to root out the mount Abu Qubais with prayers, مادر برای فرزندِ خود دعاي چشم زخم می خواست a mother wanted protection for his child from the evil eye (iii) حالا چشم بکشا که بعد از این دیگر از این کارها نکني now open your eyes and be warned hence-forward not to do such acts, اینست که چشم بتو انداختم this is the reason why I set my eye upon thee, چنانچه باوامرتان گوش دادم بالتفاتتان چشم دارم as I have listened to your orders, I am hopeful of your favours, چشمم در قبول عامّه بود my look-out was popularity, این زن وقتي چشم و چراغِ اندرون

پادشاه قاجار بود this woman was once the principal favourite in the seraglio of a Kajar king (۱۲) این زن از حرم یکی از زنان عمده بود

خون گرفته است see how your eyes have become blood-shot through anger چشمش به ایشان افتاد his eyes fell upon them چشم بد

هم چشمی باز کرد he also opened my eyes to a great extent

همه چشم بدان بام دوختیم we all fixed our eyes on that roof ارسطوی

خود و بادلی سکون غرور که چشم جلی را لمی شد having been filled with pride on finding myself on horse back while others were trudging on foot I stuck up my nose in the air از نخوت و چشم

همه حکیم باشی را بسامحلم I recognised the chief physician from the attention and fixed stare of all به با من هم چشمی نمیتوانی کرد

thou canst not bear rivalry with me سبیلی که بود هم چشمی چه درد

بیدرمانی است dost thou not know what cureless disease the pain of envy is? تا چشم برهم زدنی تا لب کوه پیش روی ما در رفت till the eye could wink once he got to the top of the peak before our presence

8 Astronomy

The wisest and greatest of men both amongst the ancients and moderns, have confessed themselves charmed with the beauties of this science. To contemplate the grand spectacle of the heavens has ever been considered as the noblest privilege of our nature. For it is here that we discover the wonders of the Deity and see his wisdom in the works of creation. Nor is there any knowledge attained by the light of nature that gives us juster ideas of this great Being or furnishes us with stronger arguments by which to demonstrate his existence and attributes. 'The heavens' as the Psalmist observes, declare the glory of God, and the firmament sheweth his handi-work, day unto day uttereth speech and night unto night sheweth knowledge and there is no speech or language

where their voice is not heard' Thus Astronomy is not only valuable as it affords us such exalted ideas of God and his works, but it also improves the mind, and increases the force and penetration of the human understanding For, by means of this science, we are taught to discover the spring and fountain of all the celestial motions, to follow the footsteps of the Creator through the immense regions of his empire, and to trace the secret causes by which he regulates the great machine of the universe. Were a knowledge of this kind attended with no other advantage, it has rendered essential service to humanity, by dissipating our superstitious opinions and vain fears.

• Both among the ancients and moderns—

هم از متقدّمین و هم از متأخّرین —

Translate 'have confessed themselves charmed with &c' **thus** confessing (معترف) upon that are (برآنند) that Astronomy (علم هیئت) a knowledge is full of fascinating subtleties (پُر از نکته های سحرآمیز) and enchanting beauties (لطافتهای دلاویز).

To contemplate the grand spectacle of the heavens—

مشاهدهٔ تماشای غرائبِ دوّار و عجائبِ فلکیات را —

As the noblest privilege of our nature

از اعلی ترینِ امتیاز های طبعِ بشریه —

To consider— نگرند (use 3 pl. pr. tense act voice)

It is here = through this science (علم) it is

Translate 'we discover the wonders of the Deity and see &c' **thus** we can (مي توانيم) the wonders of the power of the lord of the world (عجائبِ قدرتِ خداوندِ عالم را) we may find out (دريابيم) and his perfect wisdom (حکمتِ كاملهٔ اورا) that on the pages of creation (صحائف مخلوقات) inscribed is (مندرج است) under-

perusal (بر تصفحِ مطالعه) we may bring.

Attained by the light of nature—

ممکن‌الاکتساب از ضیای طبع —

- Nor is there— پیدا نیست

Translate that gives us juster ideas of this great Being &c. **thus** that better (بهتر) than the science of Astronomy it can exact ideas (خیالاتِ مصمم) and wonderful conceptions (تصوراتِ بدیع) with regard to God, the holy and great (درباب حق سبحانه و تعالی), may impress upon our mind (خاطرنشانِ ما بکند) and decisive proofs (براهینِ قاطع) and evident arguments (دلائلِ ساطع) concerning his existence and attributes (در ثبوتِ ذات و صفاتش) may confirm (اثبات تواند)

The Psalmist — صاحبِ مزامیر داود علیه السلام

The heavens— آسمان   Glory of God— عظمت و جلالِ یزدانرا

To declare— اعلان کردن (use 3 sing of حال with همی)

The firmament— فضای فلک   Handi-work— صنایع

To shew— نشان دادن (use 3 sing of حال with همی)

Day unto day uttereth speech— روز با روز بزبانِ حال سخن همی گوید

Night unto night sheweth knowledge—

شب با شب [illegible] و دانش اظهار همی نماید —

There is no speech or language &c.—

هیچ نطقی یا لسانی نیست که اثرش نه بلندرتبه باشد —

Astronomy is not only valuable—

علمِ هیئت را قدر و منزلت نه تنها برای اینست —

As it affords us such exalted ideas &c —

که مارا خیالات عالیه در باب پروردگار عالم و صنایع او مي بخشد —

It also improves the mind &c —

نیز بسبب اینکه مایهٔ ترقّي عقل و ازدیاد قوّت وحدّت ذهن انساني مي شود—

By means of this science— بو سیلهٔ علم مزبور

Translate 'we are taught to discover the spring &c' **thus:**
the spring and fountain of the motions of all of the celestial bodies (اصل و سر چشمهٔ حرکات همهٔ اجرام سماوي را) having comprehended (استدراک نموده) we can the footsteps of the creator of the world (آثار خالق عالم را) upon the immense regions of his empire (در اقطار بی انتهاي مملکتش) we may trace (پیدا کنیم) and also that secret causes (آن اسباب نهاني را) by which (که بواسطهٔ آن) the order and arrangement of the world (نظام و رونق عالم) accepts good order (انتظام پذیرد) we may perceive (ادراک نمائیم)

Were a knowledge of this kind &c —

گیرم که فوائد چنین علم بیش از این نباشد —

Translate 'it has rendered essential service to humanity &c' **thus:** but one can say (میتوان گفت) that dissipater of (دافع) vain superstitions (وساوس باطله) and false fears (اوهام مزوّره) becoming (شده) to the cause of humanity (به عالم انسانیت) essential service (خدمت نمایان) has done (کرده است)

NOTES

16 The uses of the word 'بس' may be illustrated

thus (i) سخن راست را چه احتیاج بقسم است what is the use of oaths to truth ? روی سخن بسوی ایشانست the discourse is addressed towards them این سخن درحق فقرا نیست this advice does not regard the beggars سخن آشکار بهتر است open speech is best (ii) ایرانی اینگونه سخن نمی گویند the Persians never talk in this way آداب سخن گفتن و پاسخ دادن بپادشاه بیادم دادند they taught me the etiquette of speaking to and answering the king خواستم سخنی بگویم I wished to make some remarks (iii) سر سخن را بطرف تجارت و داد و ستد برگردانیدم I changed the topic of conversation to commerce and trade امینه بی آنکه لب بسخن گشاید نقدی بدست وی نهاد Amina, without opening her lips to speak, placed some money into his hands اکنون باید ختم سخن کنم now I must end my discourse روزی در مجلس بزرگ از سلطان محمود غزنوی و فردوسی سخن می رفت one day in a large assembly there happened to be a talk about Sultan Mahmud Ghaznavi and Firdousi از دنباله سخن بدین نوع سر کرد he continued his speech as follows (iv) پیشهٔ معرکه بندی و سخنوری و نقّالی پیش گرفتم I adopted the profession of a story-teller and poet ; از خدای درخواست میکنم که تربت پاک آن حکیم سخن سنج را مهبط انوار تابناک رحمت خود گرداند I pray to God, that He may cause the glittering light of his mercy descend upon the holy tomb of that philosopher and poet البته یکی از اینها نسبت بآن دیگرها زبان فهم و دانا تر خواهد بود surely there must be one among them who in preference to others understands languages and is intelligent.

17 Examples of the uses of the word خدمت are (i) پدرم مادیان را بنهفت و بخدمت شاهزاده رفت my father concealed the mare

and went to see the Prince , دیروز دو نفر بچهٔ یتیم خدمت شما آوردند که بی صاحب است yesterday two men brought an orphan child before you saying that it had no owner (ii) در ایتالیه خدمت حکیم کردم I served under a physician in Italy , شما هر دو خواجه تاشانید و خدمت دیوان میکنید you both are under the same master, and serve in the Court , گفت ماهم خدمتی کردیم he said, we also have done you some service , اگر خدمت هم میخواهی باید برو در تفلیس بکن if you wish for service, go and do it in Tiflis (iii) بمنافع عمومیهٔ وطن خدمتی نمود he did great service to the general well-being of the country , بسیاری از ایشان بعالم اسلامیت و انسانیت خدمتهای نمایان کرده اند many of them have done brilliant service to the cause of Islam and humanity , قصد آن کرده‌ام که خدمتی خاص بعام کنم I am resolved to do a particular service to the people in general , در خدمت تو هرچه دستم برآید کوتاهی نخواهم کرد in thy service I shall not refrain from doing whatever lies in my power : (iv) بعد از ادای خدمت بهمین عبارت گفتم after making my obeisance I addressed him in these very words , امّا چه سود که با سایر خدمتکاران برابرم but what does that benefit me, as I am still a servant ? گذران خدمتکاران من از پهلوی بیماران the living of my servants proceeds from the patients

9. The Lark and Her Young Ones

A lark had a brood of young ones in a field of corn which was just ripe , and being apprehensive, lest the corn might be reaped before her young ones had attained the full plumage of their feathers and the use of their wings, she left word, whenever she went out in search of food, that her young ones should report to her all the news they heard in her absence.

One day the master came to look at the state of the crop and finding it quite ripe said to his son "Go to our friends and acquaintances and tell them to come early to-morrow to help me in getting my corn reaped for it is full time to do so" When the old lark came back, the young ones told their mother what they had heard, and in great fear begged her to remove them forthwith "Time enough" said she "if he trusts to his friends and acquaintances, be sure that the corn will not be reaped to-morrow" The next day the owner came, and waited in vain for his friends When he saw that no one came he said to his son: "Now I find friends and acquaintances do not come to one's help but there is not a moment to be lost; so we must call in our relations." In still greater fear, the young ones repeated to their mother the farmer's words. "If that be all" says she, "do not be frightened for relations hardly ever come forward to aid one another Next day she went abroad, and the owner coming as before waited till noon but the relations proved as false as the others. "My boy" said he "we must no longer wait for our friends and relations Let us do our work ourselves and give up the thought of other's assistance Do you go and hire some reapers, and we will set to work ourselves to-morrow early in the morning When the young ones told their mother this—she said "Now it is time to be off for when a man takes up his business himself instead of leaving it to others you may be sure that the work will be done without delay

A lark— چکاوک ... (Persian as printed: مرغ زراعتي — see below)

Just ripe— نیم رسیده

A brood of young ones— اسطالة ازوالی خود

Being appehensive (= apprehensive from this was)—

— خائف از این بود که

Left— صباح

Translate before her young ones had attained &c.' **thus**

before this that (پیش ازانکه) her young ones (بچه هایش) full plumage (پروبال تمام) may produce (بر آورند) and able to fly (قابل پریدن) may become (بشوند) the master of the corn-field (صاحب مزرعه) the wheat (گندم را) may gather (چیند)

From 'she left word &c' **begin** a fresh sentence (with
(بنا برین

Whenever— هرگاه که   In search of food— برای تحصیل دانه

She went out— از آشیان می پرید

She left word (=used to give directions to her young ones)— به جوجهای خود وصیت می نمود

Translate 'that her young ones should report to her &c.' **thus** in my absence (درغیاب من) whatever you may hear (بشنوید) me with that informed (خبردار) you make (کنید)

To look at the state of the crop—
تا کیفیت محصول خودرا درباند —

Quite ripe— تمام رس

Go to our friends and acquaintances—
بروید بروی رفقاء و آشنایانمان —

Tell them to come early to-morrow &c
بگوئید فردا صبح زود بیآیند و بدرو کردن ما را کمک بدهند

For it is full time to do so—
. که بعایت بروقت است و تاخیر جائز نیست .

Old lark مادر جوجها

They told what they had heard— آنها سرگذشت را بیان کردند .

In great fear — با خوف و هراس

Begged her to remove them forthwith —
. التماس نمودند که هرچه زود تر مارا ازین مزرعه ببری

Time enough— فرصت بسیست کافی .

If he trusts to his friends &c.—

اگر صاحب مزرعه بامید رفقا و آشنایان است —

Be sure— یقین بدان

Corn (=it) will not be reaped &c.— غله حصد نخواهد شد

Translate and waited in vain for his friends &c. thus

and waited for friends (منتظر رفقا شد) when his waiting (انتظارش) to disappointment (به یاس) ended (انجامید) and no one came (کسی نیامد) he said &c.

I find— مشاهده کردم

Friends and acquaintances do not turn up to one's help—

رفقا و آشنا برای مدد آدم نمی رسند —

There is not a moment to be lost— نباید دقیقهٔ را فوت کنیم

We must call in our relations—

باید بروم اقربا و خویشاوندان خود را طلب کنیم —

In still greater fear— با ترس زیادتر

The farmer's words— آنچه از دهقان شنیده بودند

To repeat (=submit)— معروض داشتن

If that be all— اگر ازین بیشتر نیست

Be not frightened— ترسان مباشید

Relations hardly ever come forward &c.—

اقربا که در روز گرفتاری بداد یکدیگر نمی رسند —

To go abroad— بیرون رفتن   As before— بطور سابق

Waited till noon— تا ظهر چشم براه اقرباء ماند

But the relatives proved as faithless as the others—

که همچون دیگران بیوفا برآمدند —

Dear boy— ای فرزند دلبند

We must wait no longer for our friends and relatives—

دیگر نباید منتظر رفقاء و اقرباء باشیم —

Let us do our work ourselves &c —

باید خود در کار خود بکوشیم و چشم از دیگران بپوشیم —

Reaper— دروگر . To hire— بکرایه گرفتن

We will set to work ourselves early to-morrow—

فردا زود خود مان عزیمت این کار را می نمائیم —

This— این دفعه

It is time to be off— وقت آنست که باید برویم

Translate 'when a man takes up his business himself &c' **thus** when (وقتیکه) a man (کسی) wishes (می خواهد) he himself (خودش) his business (کار خود را) he may do, and not (نه) to others he leaveth (بگذارد) , know for certain (یقین بدان) that his work without delay (بی تأمّل) will be done (بانجام پذیرد)

NOTES

18. Further examples of the uses of the word 'کار' are (i) کاری از برایت می کنم I shall see what may be done for thee , بعد از گفتگوی بسیار کار برایں قرار گرفت after much discussion the affair was thus settled , در اوّل کار چنان ناپدیدار گشت که هیچکس را از او خبری نشد in the very first encounter he disappeared in such a way that no one had any news of him , امروز یکشنبه و کارها تعطیل است to-day is Sunday and works are suspended , فردا پی کار می روند to-morrow they will attend to business , پیش آمد کار بخیرا است the future of the affair points towards good (ii) ایشان از اصلاح کار چه ضرر مترتّب تواند شد what harm can befall them through reform of

affairs ? موجب هرج و مرج کارها و انتظام معاملات خلل راه میسود (xiii) it will put the courses of affairs and their order into confusion ایشان دست بکار شدند و گفتند بيدرنگ کفایت خواهم I had scarcely settled upon becoming an instant vendor of smoke قلندرهای بیسار مي شد و در سوار the Nazir kept his place همه در سر کار ماند come with me and ask no question همراه من بیا و پرسیده مکن understanding how the wind was blowing he said in amazement ; بیلم می دانستم گلستان ولی بیابان نسیله اول درآل زوی برای to amend matters I was the first to raise an uproar (iii) انقلاب ؛ ازهمه ... بي ر و می ر ... I was extremely afraid of the cat coming out of the bag ترسیدم از اینکه کار من بعد اطاق داخل شود اگر با من ... I feared that if she entered the room with me the secret might be discovered یک دفعه سرپوش از روی کار برداشته ... you see if once the cover is lifted from the face of the affair it would be impossible to conceal it from him تا تو خلاص شوي کار از کار گذشته O before thou art freed the affair will have passed beyond itself مدتها است که میخواهم کار از دست او کوتاه کنم for long I wished to have the affair taken out of his hand برای اجرای آن رؤسای قوم چه حیلهها بکار میبرند what tricks do not the leaders of the nation make use of for giving currency to that ! در هر کار بکار ایشان می خوریم In every affair we are of use to them همیشه از تو مواظبت خواهد کرد will he not always look after you ? (iv) یک روز بعد دست بکار برای عروسی in another day they will commence the bridal ceremonies من دست بکار شدم I commenced the work ; بنام و نشان او کار نداشته باشم I have nothing to do with his name and address ما خوب می دانیم کار

رنگهای قلّابي بکار حود را نه بیام we can manage our own affair nicely ؞ اینځ ما سدهٔ کرده در کار مردں است they made use of false dyes, our neighbour having a colic is on the point of death, کار مرں تمام اسد I am done for, تن ندیں کارها در نمي دهد she would not give herself up to such affairs, جناں حوب ار عهدهٔ کار برآمدم که ار آنگاه نعد صدر اعظم نا من ار درِ التفات برآمد so nicely did I manage the affair entrusted to me that henceforward the prime-minister began to look upon me with favour ار کار و نارم اطلاعي کامل نهمرسانید he made himself perfectly informed of all my affairs, این شاعرانِ بیعار مرا ار کار و نار داشته نتنگ آورده اند these impudent poets have brought me to a sad pass by preventing me from carrying out my business, گفتم کار و نار معیّنی نیست I said 'there is no fixed business', نآنم احتیاج نیست سر و کارم ناخاک است I do not want water, my business concerns with earth (only) (v) درکار داني افلاطونِ عصر حویش است for knowledge of affairs he is the very Plato of his age, حیله هاي او نمن کارگر نمي شود his stratagems will not avail with me, توي آونه بیکار میگردید you wander about the village without anything to do, در این مملکت همه کاره است in this kingdom he is the man for all affairs, مردانِ جنگي و کارزار نیر ار این عرف و عادت پیروي نمایند the soldiers also should follow in these ways, روزي بحهتِ تماشا بکارخانهٔ توپ ریزيِ آنجا رفت one day he went to see the cannon-factory of that place, ار میامنِ بیداري و کار آگاهيِ حود شان ملّتي زنده کرده اند by the help of their vigilance and practical experience they have revived a nation, نعد نسمت کارپرداري نه مصر و نعداد رفت afterwards by way of service he went to Egypt and Baghdad, مرا امین و کارداں مي‌ردید he used

to regard me as trustworthy and experienced [illegible]
[illegible] if thou leave it half-done, then alas for the c[illegible]
[illegible] has risen
to acquire a reputation for usefulness and courage I was in
hope that gradually I would rise to high appointments [illegible]
[illegible] he was the deputy lieutenant and
had the whole business in hand while I was nobody [illegible]
[illegible] I saw no weapon of fight on the
person of the monk except his tongue [illegible]
do not pretend ignorance.

10 Natural Products of Persia

Few countries can boast of better vegetable productions or in greater variety. The gardens vie in beauty and luxuriance with any in the world and from the parts which are highly cultivated, we may imagine the prosperity Persia might attain to under a just and settled government. Some of its finest and extensive vallies, which are covered with the remains of cities and villages are consigned to wandering tribes, and feed their cattle and flocks; and one may travel for a hundred miles, through region once covered with grain without seeing more than the few scattered fields deemed sufficient to furnish food for the families which have the range of the domain and to give an annual supply of green shoots for their horses. Of the commonest varieties of vegetables found in Persia may be named the cabbage, cauliflower, carrot, turnip, brinjal, beans, lentils, lettuce, radishes, celery, onion, garlic, tomato and potato; among fruits there are the grape, pomegranate, plums, fig, greengages, walnut, filbert, peaches, pistachio nut, quince, pear, apricot, orange, sweet lime, melon, apple, cherry and strawberry; and of flowers there are the common lily, the large white lily, marvel of Peru, wall flower, portulacca, cocks comb, dahlia, larkspur, China rose, moss rose, white rose, eglantine, narcissus and tulip. Persia does not abound in precious minerals; iron and lead however are found in many parts. The natives boast that there are also mines of silver and gold; but these have never been worked to any advantage

Persia has always been indebted to other countries for the precious metals, and it is remarkable, that among a people, whose sovereign deems the right of coining his highest privilege, foreign coins should form a considerable part of the currency No gems of any value are found except the turquoise, which is obtained from the hilly regions near Nishapur The Gulf of Persia has several pearl fisheries particularly that near the island of Bahrein, but we can hardly consider these as belonging to Persia, for though its monarchs have always claimed the sovereignty of this sea, they have never had any navy to contend with the Arabian rulers of the opposite shore

Translate 'few countries can boast of better &c.' **thus** very few (کم یاب) a country (ملکي) is that its vegetable (نباتاتش) better and its varieties (انواع آن) more (بیشتر) than Persia may be (باشد)

The gardens— باغهاي اين مملكت Beauty— رونق

Luxuriance— كثرت نمود

With any in the world— با هر باغي كه از آن بهتر در عالم نيست

To vie— برابري كردن .

From the parts which are highly cultivated—

— از ملاحظهٔ حصه هاي خاكِ ايران كه خيلي معمور است —

To imagine قياس كردن (use 1 pl Aor after 1 pl present tense of توانستن)

Translate 'prosperity Persia might attain to under a just &c' **thus** that if this country under a settled and just government be (در تحتِ حكومتِ قائم و باعدل و انصاف باشد) to what extent (تاچه پايه) its prosperity and cultivation (آبادي و معموريِ آن) will progress (ترقي خواهد كرد)

Fine— نيكو . Extensive— وسيع Valley— وادي

Which are covered with the remains of cities and villages—

که تا هنوز بقایای شهرها و قریه‌ها که در جمیع اطراف آن تمامی است —

To wandering tribes— بایلات صحرائی

To be consigned— واگذار شدن (use 3 sing of ماضی قریب)

And feed their cattle and flock—

که در آن گله و رمهٔ خود را می چرانند —

Translate and one may travel for a hundred miles &c.' **thus** and in the distance of hundred mile (در مسافتِ صد میل راه) through regions that (از اطرافهائیکه) during past times (ایّام سلف) under cultivation (زیر زراعت) has been (بوده است) now only (فقط) cuttings of cultivation (قطعاتِ زراعت) scattered here and there (جابجا پراکنده) is seen to the extent that (بدرجه) the bread of the families that therein desert-wandering may be (نانِ قبیله‌هائیکه در آنجا بیابان گردی باشند) and annual young shoots of their horses (فصلِ سالیانهٔ اسبانِ ایشان را) it may give.

Cabbage— کلمِ ملم

Carrot— زردک

Turnip — شلغم

Brinjal— بادنجان

Beans— لوبیا

Lentils— عدس

Lettuce— کاهو

Radishes— تربچه ترتیزک

Celery— کرفس

Cauli flower— کلمِ فرنگی

Orange— نارنگی مرکّب

Sweet lime— پرتقال

Medlar— ازگیل

Musk-melon— خربزه

Water-melon— هندوانه

Straw-berry— توتِ فرنگی

Common lily— سوسن

Large white lily— گُلِ مریم

Garlic—سیر .
Tomato—بادنجانِ فرنگي
Potato—سیبِ زمیني
Plums—آلو
Greengages—آلوچهٔ . در . کوجه
Walnut—گردو
Filburt—فندق
Peaches—شفتالو .
Quince—به
Pear—گلابي
Apricot—زرد آلو

Marvel of Peru—لالهٔ عباسي
Wall-flower گلِ خیر
Portulacca گلِ نار
Cocks-comb—زلفِ عروس
Dahlia—گلِ کوکب
Larkspur—زبان در قفا
China rose—گلِ رشت
Moss-rose—گلِ سرخ
White rose—نسترن
Eglantine—نسرین
Narcissus—نرگس

Persia does not abound in precious minerals—

معادنِ ثمین در ایران فراوان نیست —

However—ولي
Lead—سرب
Many parts—بسیاری از اطرافِ این ملک .
To be found—یافت شدن .
The natives boast—آهاليِ ایران مدّعي آنند
Mines of silver and gold—معادنِ طلا و نقره
These have never been worked to any advantage—

هرگز هیچ فائدة بدین معادن مترتّب نشده است

Translate 'Persia has always been indebted to other &c'

thus: therefore (لهذا) always (همیشه) the gold and silver of Persia from other countries (بلادِ دیگر) has been (بوده است)

It is remarkable—طوري غریبي است
Among a people—در ملّتي

Whose sovereign deems the right of coining &c.—

که سکّهٔ زدن را یکی از مخصوصاتِ بزرگِ پادشاهِ خود میداند —

Considerable part of the currency— بیشتر پولِ رائجِ مملکت

Foreign coins should form (= be)— سکّهٔ ممالکِ دیگر است

Translate 'no gems of any value are found except &c'

thus among precious gems (از جواهرِ قیمتی) except the turquoise (مگر از فیروزه) which from the hilly region (کوهستانی) near to Nishapur (قریب به نیشاپور) they bring, nothing is found in this country (چیزی در این ملک یافت نمی شود)

The Gulf of Persia has several pearl fisheries &c.—

بسیاری از جاهای خلیجِ فارس ـ رها نزدیکِ به بحرین مروارید حاصل میشود—

Translate but we can hardly consider these as belonging

&c. **thus** but mostly it is (غالب اینست) that one cannot say that anything from these (هیچیک از اینها) belonging (متعلّق) to Persia is for though the monarchs of (سلاطینِ) Persia always this sea (دریا را) have included among their kingdom (داخلِ ملکِ خود دانسته اند) but never (هرگز) the naval strength (استعدادِ دریائی) that they can with the Arabian rulers (باحکّامِ اعراب) that on the opposite shores (در سواحلِ مقابل) have been (بوده اند) they may contend (مکافحه کنند), they have not (نداشته اند)

NOTES

17 The uses of the word بسیار may be illustrated

ness (ii) این کار بسیار مشکلی است this is a very difficult business ... بتجربهٔ من بدرد دل بسیار فایده دارد by my experience it has much efficacy in heart complaints ... در اندک زمانی ثروت بسیار جمع نمود within a short time he accumulated vast wealth , ... بسیار کارها دارم I have many engagements ... بسیار کم است compared to many places they are very few here , پس از حدت و شدت بسیار اندکی بخود آمد after a display of much heat and fury he recollected himself shortly , بعد از معطلی بسیار عاقبت سری بالا کرد after a long silence, at last he raised his head (ii) از صحبت یکدیگر بسیار حظ می کردیم we immensely enjoyed each other's society , از این اظهار بسیار خشنود شدم I was much delighted at this pro ... در اول شهر یک ... امروز هوا بسیار خوب است this is a very fine day ... بسیار عالی بود there was a very lofty mosque at the first part of the town , زبان فرنگ بسیار لازم است French is very necessary ; بسیار معطل شدن ممکنم نمی شود it is not possible for me to wait very long ; آقا مردان آدم بسیار حیل است Aga Mardan is a very tricky fellow (iii) از پشت پنجرها چشمهائی بسیاری بمن دوخته بود from behind the crannies many eyes were directed towards me , اگر نقد بسیاری در دستم ... if I have not much cash in hand, it matters not , سود بسیاری عرضه کرد he offered interest at a high rate , ... بسیاری ... not regarding many ... اگر تمامی هموطنان بد را بد نیک را ... if all my countrymen had ... امروز بسیاری از زمانی ... good many of the objection ... آنچه ... his ... ... بسیاری از بد ...

ciled himself in that great city which is prosperous above many of the Islamic countries.

20 Examples of the uses of the word چيز are (i) چيزِ عزيز را بجاي عزيز مي برند they are taking rare things to a sacred place هيچ چيزِ ما نبايد از آشنا و زوار پنهان باشد nothing of us should be kept concealed from visitors دو تن از همراهان خودمانرا از براي گوسفند و مرغ و چيزِ ديگر براي شام جستن و يافتن كنند I sent two of my companions in quest of a sheep, fowls, or anything else for our evening meal بايد بهمهٔ چيز متحمّل شود one must bear everything, در مرد رحم و مروّت هم خوب چيز است mercy and generosity are also good things in a man (ii) براي شام ديگر چيزي نخواهد ماند there will be nothing left for the evening meal آدمي كه مال داشته باشد از هيچ چيزي نمي ترسد the man who has property fears nothing چيزي نمانده بود كه دولتِ عليهٔ ايران بدولتِ انگليس اعلان جنگ كند the august Persian Government was nothing short of declaring war against the English government حاجي چيزي نه را - و نگرفت Haji neither asked for, nor took anything چيزي مطلب چيزي را چيزي مپرس چيزي نمي طلبد seek nothing, and nothing will seek you از ترس و دلتنگي مرموم , مايهٔ نداشتم I had nothing but the fright, چيزي فرو نگذاشتيم I did not let anything important in the discourse pass unnoticed by me در مواعظ دنيا چيزي شنيده ايد يا نه have you heard anything about the New World or not? برادرانم بجز فائدهٔ خود چيزي بنظر ندارند my brothers have nothing but their own interest in view (iii) اين همه غرّش و تيزي بي چيز نيست all these accusings and sharpness are not without foundation, از جاهلند ميكردم تا اطرافِ چيزهاي بكنند I would have tied them with

14

the camel-tie until they had confessed having something , معلوم مي شود که همه بي چيز اند it appears that all are destitute, طايفهٔ سربار از بي چيزي نوعي از فرقهٔ گداها مي باشند soldiers as a body are, from poverty, in the category of beggars

11. The Boy Who had no Certificates.

A gentleman advertised for a page, and nearly fifty applicants came and offered themselves to him All but one brought letters of recommendations But out of the whole number of applicants he selected the boy who had no such letter and dismissed the rest "I should like to know," said a friend, "on what ground you selected that boy, who had not a single recommendation.' "You are mistaken," said the gentleman , "he had a great many He wiped his feet when he came in, and closed the door after him showing that he was clean and careful He gave his seat instantly to that lame old man, showing that he was thoughtful for others besides himself He answered my questions clearly, showing that he was accurate and truthful He picked up the book, which I had purposely laid on the floor, and replaced it on the table, showing that he was modest and orderly When I talked to him, I noticed that his finger-nails were clean Don't you call these things recommendations ? I do , and I would give more for what I can judge of a boy by using my eyes ten minutes, than for all the letters he can bring me " This story is a good example of the truth of the proverb—'he whose own worth doth speak, need not speak his own worth '

A gentleman— يکي از نجبا Page— پيشخدمت

To advertise— اعلان نمودن (use 3 sing of ماضي بعيد)

Translate 'nearly fifty applicants came and offered themselves &c ' **thus** nearly (کم و بيش) to the extent of fifty (بقدر پنجاه) boy, that except one individual (بغير) every one of (از) them a letter of recommendation (سفارش نامهٔ -) having (داشته) , applying (خواستگار) they came, and to his service (بخدمتش) they offered (عرضه دادند)

Out of the whole number of applicants— از جملهٔ ۴۲ نفر

Who had no such letter— که هیچ سفارشنامه نداشته بود

To select— انتخاب کردن

Dismissed the rest— سایرین را پی کار خود شان رخصت نمود

A friend— یکی از دوستان

Translate I should like to know on what ground &c.

thus : your honour (آنجناب) the boy (را) who had not a single recommendation (هیچ اعتبارنامه ابداً بود) honoured with service (ممتازِ خدمت فرمودید), please tell (بفرمائید) its reason what is.

You are mistaken— سهو کردی

A great many— اعتبارنامه های فراوانی

When he came in— چون داخلِ اطاق شد

To wipe— پاک نمودن To close— جفت کردن

Showing that— و از آن دانستم که

He was (= is) clean and careful— طبعِ لطیف و دلِ باهوش دارد

Translate 'he gave his seat instantly &c. **thus** : as soon as his eye (همین که نظرش) upon that lame old man (پیرِ مردِ لنگ) fell, instantly (فی الفور) him (را) upon his own seat (برجای خود) he made sit (نشاند)

Showing that— و از آن ، دم که

He was (= is) thoughtful for others besides himself—

بجز فکرِ راحتِ خود خیالِ دیگران هم دارد —

My questions— همه سؤالات مرا

Clearly (= plainly)— با کمال سادگی To answer— پاسخ نمودن

Showing that— و از آن دریافتم که

He was (=is) accurate and truthful— صحيح الكلام و راستگو است .

The book which I had purposely laid on the floor—

— کتابیرا که عمداً در فرش گذاشته بودم

To pick up— برداشتن (use ماضي معطوف)

On the table— روي ميز To replace— باز نهادن

Showing that— و از آن معلوم کردم که

He had (=has) an eye for neatness— چشم پاکیزه بین دارد

Instead of pushing and crowding—

— بجایکه دیگران را تکان میداد و هجوم میآورد

He waited quietly for his turn—

— منتظر نوبت خود با اطمینان تمام باشد

Showing that— و از آن درک کردم که

He was (=is) modest and orderly—

— مؤدب و انتظام گزین است

To talk— حرف زدن

I noticed that his finger-nails were clean—

— ناخنهایش را دیدم که صاف است

Don't you call these things recommendations?

— . مگر این همه چیز را همه اعتبار نامچه نمي پنداري

I do— من مي پندارم

Translate 'I would give more for what I can judge of &c'

thus to (به) letters of recommendation as eloquent as possible (هرچه بلیغ‌تر), that a boy may bring, my own estimation (اندازهٔ خود را) preference (ترجیح) I will give (مي دهم) that within ten minute's time (در ظرف ده دقیقه) my own eye (چشم خودم را)

making use of (بکار برده) I can with respect to him (درباب او) I may do (بکنم)

The story is a good example &c.—

این حکایت بر صدق این مثل است —

He whose own worth doth speak &c.—

مثل آنست که خود ببوید 1 آن که عطّار بگوید —

NOTES

21 Examples illustrating the uses of the word جمله are (1) سکندر از جمله آنان نبود Alexander did not belong to that sort of people ما جمله مردافکنیم we all are man throwing از جمله اسباب بی باکی از خطر حرز و تعویذ چند بود out of all the reasons for being indifferent to danger there were some talismans and spell از آنجمله میرزا فضول بود که منصبش را بار دیگر داده بودند out of their number was Mirza Fazul who had been installed in his post (ii) بالجمله چون شب آمد سفره گسترده شد in short when night came the table-cloth was spread بالجمله از آگره بلاهور و از آنجا به ملتان رسید to sum up from Agra he came to Lahore and thence to Multan بالجمله همّت والایش به کابل هم آرام نداد In short his lofty ambition gave him no rest even in Kabul آدم باید بهر زبانی که در وی فی الجمله فهم و از رسوم و عادات اهل زمانه مطّلع باشد a man should understand perfectly every language he speaks and should be informed of the customs and practices of the men of the age

22 The uses of the word حرف may be illustrated thus (1) شب و روز حرف تاثیر حب در مجالس نمی افکند (1) night and day he could talk of nothing else save the efficacy of the pill ما یک کار کردنی داریم و یک حرف گفتنی we have only one course to pursue and

one word to say, همینکه حرف رشوت بمیان آمد طوري دیگر شدم as soon as the word 'bribe' was mentioned, I became quite another person, اینها چه حرف است what words are these? این حرف چه نقلي دارد what difficulty is there in this? حرف همان است که گفتم my word (or intention) is even as I have already said, پارهٔ حرفها داشتم I have a few words to say to her, بجز از یادِ تو حرفي در زبان ندارد she can speak of nothing else save you (ii) من بحرفِ تو و کنیزت هرگز باور نمیکنم I never believe either your words, or your maid's, بخلافِ این حرف اثباتي داري have you any proof to the contrary? بحرفِ تو مي باشم I am at thy word, هرگز نمي توانم از حرفِ تو بیرون بروم I can never depart from your word, خویش و قومهاش هم بحرفِ او قوت مي دهند his relatives and kinsmen will also support his words (iii) حریص بحدیکه از آحاد و عشرات حرف زدن در نزدِ تو کفرانست you are so covetous that it is impossible for you to utter so low numbers as units and tens, ترا بخدا این حرفها را مزن I implore thee by God, do not utter such words, بنا کرد بحرفهاي بي در هوا زدن he began to utter useless exclamations من دیدم که آنها حرفِ خلوتي خواهند زد I saw that they intend to have some private conversation, هرگز حرفش دوتا نمي شود his word never falls asunder, خودش هم حراف است she can talk herself

23 Some examples of the use of the word 'باب' are (i) درین باب کسي بگردِ ایشان نمي رسید in this respect no one can approach them, حکایتي درین باب بیان کنم I will relate a story concerning this (ii) ایشان در بابِ دخل و تصرف سرحدِ خود بسیار غیورند they are very tenacious of their rights with respect to entering and taking possession of lands within their frontier (iii) مرکان

خوب پاپِ کارِ تو اند the Franks are very proper material for you to work upon این دانه پاپِ کارِ دندانِ من نیست this seed is not suited to my teeth این تنقلات پاپِ ایران نیست these goods will not sell in Persia بازارهلی آشفته پاپِ کارِ دزدان است this kind of general distraction and fury are proper materials for rogues to work upon.

24. The use of the word سائر or سایر may be illustrated thus (i) گاهگاه زمزمهٔ بسکی نیز کردم که بسائر هنرهایم پیرایهٔ دیگر می بست sometimes I indulged in murmuring songs which added a new grace to the rest of my accomplishments مردمِ این شهرِ تبریز از اهل سائر شهرهای ایران که من دیده ام دیوانه ترند the people of this city of Tabriz are more insane than the inhabitants of the rest of the cities of Persia that I have visited طول و عرضِ این راه همه باغاتِ انگور و سایر میوه ها است the length and breadth of this road were full of gardens of vines and the rest of fruits بیشتر از سایر ملل بعزّت و افتخار می زیستند they lived in more honour and glory than the rest of the nations, باتفاق سایر امم ایرانیان اوّلین مردمِ متمدّنِ رویِ زمین بوده اند the rest of the nations are unanimous that the Persians were the first civilized nations of the world (ii) باید آنها و سایرین از این سرّ نه حالا نه من بعد خبردار شوند it is necessary that neither they nor the rest should, either now or hereafter be apprised of this secret برای کرایهٔ شتر و الاغ که از جدّه بمکّه سایرین یعنی اهالیِ ممالکِ عثمانی و مصر و هند وغیره سی غروش می دهند از ایرانی دو صد غروش که شش برابرِ آنها است پول بگیرند for hire of camels and mules from Jiddah to Mecca, the rest, namely the Muhammadans of Turkey Egypt and India, etc., give thirty *ghrosh*, while from the Persians are taken two hundred *ghrosh* which is six times the money

آخوند و سایرین مرده را با آبِ قراح شستند the priest and the rest washed the dead in pure water

12. Karım Khan Zand. I.

Karım Khan died in 1779 A D aged about eighty years He had enjoyed independent power for twenty-six years , and during the last twenty had been, without a competitor, the acknowledged sovereign of Persia His character is not easily described It had few of the common features of a despotic monarch He had ambition, but free from the asperity of temper which almost always mixes with it He preserved an undisturbed temper, equally amid scenes of violence and repose , and was, through life, distinguished by a manly simplicity of mind, which always kept him remote from the pomp and vanities of his high rank, as from that affectation which endeavours to conceal its pride under the garb of humility Although humane, he sometimes punished severely , and he employed others of a disposition very different from his own to spread terror among his enemies and rebellious subjects , but his clemency was hardly ever refused to a fallen or repentant foe One of the remarkable features in his character was goodness of heart He often repeated an anecdote of his early life, saying "When I was a poor soldier in Nadir Shah's camp, my necessity led me to steal from a saddler a gold embossed saddle, sent by an Afghan chief to be repaired. The next day I learnt that the poor saddler was in prison, and sentenced to be hung My conscience smote me, and I replaced the saddle exactly in the place whence I took it I watched till it was discovered by the saddler's wife , on seeing it she gave a scream of joy, immediately fell down on her knees, and prayed aloud that the person who had brought it back might live to have a hundred gold embossed saddles himself I am quite certain that it is by the honest prayer of the woman that I have reached this prosperity "

In 1779 A D در سنه هزار و صد و نود و سه هجری .

Aged about eighty years— تقریباً در عمرِ هشتاد سالگی

To die— زندگی را وداع گفتن .

To enjoy independent power— علی الاستقلال سلطنت کردن

Last— آخرین

Without a competitor— بدون منازع و مخالف

Acknowledged sovereign of Persia فرمانروای مملکتِ ایران .

His character is not easily described—

تعریفِ طبیعتش خالي از اشکال نیست —

It has few of the commonest features of a despotic monarch—

کمتري از صفاتِ سلاطینِ جابر در وي بود —

He had ambition— بزرگي را دوست مي داشت

Asperity of temper— تندخوئيِ طبعي

Which almost always mixes with it—

که غالباً لازمهٔ اینگونه مزاج انسان است —

He had not— نداشت His temper— مزاجش

In violence and softness, and in war and peace—

در شدّت و رضا و در جنگ و صلح —

Upon one manner and method was— بریک رسم و یک نهج بود

Through life— در جمیع ایّامِ حیات

A manly simplicity— نوعِ سادگيِ مردانه

Was distinguished by (= in his nature he had)—

در طبیعتش داشت —

Which always kept him remote from &c.—

که او را از تجمّلاتِ پادشاهي
و از مزخرفاتِ فرمان دهي باز مي داشت —

As from that affectation which endeavours &c.—

و همچنین از صفتِ تزویر که غرور و حیله را در
پردهٔ تواضع و فروتني مي پوشد او را معرّا مینمود —

Humane— صاحبِ مروّت و نرم دل Sometimes— بعضي اوقات

To punish severely— تعزیرِ سخت کردن

Others (= persons) of a disposition very different from his own— دسته‌ئی برعکسِ طبیعتِ او شدید العمل بودند —

Upon his enemies and rebellious subjects—

بر دشمنانِ باغي و رعاياي ياغي —

To employ— گماشتن

To spread terror among them— تا باعثِ رعب و هراسِ ايشان شوند.

His clemency was hardly ever refused &c —

از هيچ ذليل و عدوي نادم هرگز مرحمتِ خود را مضايقه نكرد—

One of the most remarkable features in his character—

از آشكارترينِ صفات او —

His goodness of heart— نيك دلي او

An anecdote of his early life— يكي از وقايعِ ابتداي حالِ خود را

He often repeated— مكرّر حكايت مي‌كرد When— وقتيكه.

In Nadir Shah's camp— در اردوي نادر شاه

A poor soldier— سپاهي بيچاره

My necessity led me to steal &c —

فقر و فاقه مرا بر آن داشت كه زينِ طلاكوبي از زين سازي دزديدم —

Sent by an Afghan chief to be repaired—

و اين زين را يكي از امراي افغان باو داده بود كه اصلاح كند —

To learn (=hear)— شنيدن

Was sentenced to be hung— و حكم شده است كه طنابش بيندازند.

My conscience having smote me— دلم بهم بر آمده

Having brought the saddle— زين را برده

I placed exactly in the place whence I took—

در همان جائيكه از آن برداشته بودم گذاشتم —

To watch (=wait)— صبر كردن

The saddler's wife having come— زنِ زين‌گر آمده

Having seen it— آنرا ديده

From excess of joy she screamed— از فرط شادي نعره زد

Having fallen down on her knees— بر زمين افتاده زانو زده

The person who had brought it back—

كسي كه اين زين را واپس آورد —

God to such extent to him life may give—

خدا آن قدر بأو زندگي بدهد —

To have a hundred gold-embossed saddles himself—

كه صد زين طلا كوب از آنِ خود ببيند —

I am quite certain — من يقين دارم

It is by the honest prayer of that woman &c —

از دعاي صادق آن زن بود كه من باين فوائد رسيدم —

NOTES.

24. *(a)* By the use of the subjoined formulae the years of each era (either Hijri or Christian) may be converted roughly into the corresponding years of the other In the formulae H is the Hijri, and C the Christain year

(i) $H \times 97 + 621\ 54 = C$

(ii) $\frac{C - 621\ 54}{97} = H$

(b) To find the Christian date exactly corresponding to any Muhammadan (or Hirri) date, it is necessary to express the Muhammadan date in years and decimals of a year to multiply these figures by 970225 and to the product to add 621 54 The result will be right to a day

25 The uses of the word 'كم' may be illustrated thus:
(i) زحمتِ آقا را كم كنيم let us give the Aqa less trouble مالم كم

امد دولتم کم است is my property small? is my wealth too little? ای زنکه کم حرف بزن wife, talk less, هرگز بلا از این شهر کم نمي شود never will misfortune leave this city (ii) کم مي ماند که در بشکند little remains for the door to be broken in, کم مانده بود که کلاهم را بربايد little remained for him to get the better of me, دم را غنیمت شماریم که چنین دم کم افتد let us make the most of this opportunity as such an opportunity rarely occurs (iii) در همچو کارها تجربهٔ شما بسیار کمتر است your experience in such affair is very small, اگر کمتر از یک سال نماند بالكلّيه دست نمي دهد it will not be obtained at all, if he remains less than a year, اگر روس را میگوئی از سگ فرنگي هم کمتر است as for the Russians, they are less than the dogs of Europe, کمترین وکیلِ نسقچي باشي بودم your humblest slave was the sub-deputy executioner (iv) دزدي انساني خود را بی شگون و کم برکت دیدند they found their enterprise of man-stealing inauspicious and unfortunate, ازین روي به پردلي و کم ترسي معروف by this way he became well-known for courage and want of fear از کم سوادي همه را بمدح خود حمل کرد through want of knowledge he mistook the whole for praise, ایشیک آغاسي باشي بشاعر تفصیلِ مرگِ نسقچي دیروز را با خیلي کم ورباد و تعجب صحبت میداشت the under-master of ceremonies was narrating to the poet the death of the nasaqchi yesterday with much exaggeration and addition of the marvellous with it, چون آدمي کم جگر نبود سرپوش را از دست نینداخت as he was a man of strong nerves, he did not let fall the lid from his hand, مردي بود کم گو کم خنده پرشدت he was a man of few words, rare laughter and severity of manners, دست کم هزار نفر ترکمان برما مهیّاي هجوم‌اند at least one thousand Turkomen are ready to attack us

13. Wealth

Most people do something for a livelihood, and consequently an increase of income is not only acceptable but gives a pleasant feeling of success Doubt is often expressed whether wealth is of any advantage No doubt wealth entails more labour than poverty and certainly more anxiety Still it must be confessed that the possession of an income, whatever it may be which increases somewhat as the years roll on does add to the comfort of life. But this is of course on the supposition that you are master of your money and that the money is not master of you. Unquestionably the possession of wealth is attended by many drawbacks. Money and love of money often go together Just as drinking often does but increase thirst so in many cases the craving for riches grows with wealth. Moreover it is easier to make money than to keep or enjoy it. Keeping it is dull and anxious drudgery The dread of loss may hang like a dark cloud over life. Wealth is certainly no panacea for all evils. Moreover the value of money depends partly on knowing what to do with it, and partly on the manner in which it is acquired. Whether wealth is an advantage or not depends on the use we make of it. It is a disadvantage in the hands of those who do not know how to use it. It gives the command of so many things—leisure the power of helping others, books, works of art, opportunities and means of travel. It is well worth having and worth working for but it does not repay too great a sacrifice not indeed so great as is often offered up to it.

Most people—اکثر مردمان For a livelihood—برای تحصیلِ معاش

To do something—کاری کردن

An increase of income—افزایش در مداخل

Acceptable—پسندِ خاطر

A pleasant feeling of success—سرور کامیابی و لذّتِ کامرانی

Often—بسا اوقات

Whether wealth is of any advantage—در بابِ فوائدِ مال زر

To express doubt—اشکال کردن (use ماضی قریب 3 pl act voice with دانایان as subject)

Not doubt—شکّی نیست Than poverty—نسبت به نادری

Wealth (= possession of wealth)—توانگری

Entails more labour— ملتزم مشقت بیشتر است .

And certainly (entails) more anxiety

در فی الواقع مقتضی اضطراب فزون تر

It must be confessed— هیچ کسی از این معترض نباشد

Possession— داشتن

Which increases somewhat &c —

که بتدریج طول عمر قدری زیاد می شود —

Whatever it may be— مقدارش هرچه باشد

Does add to the comfort of life—

باعث اضافهٔ آسایش زندگی میشود —

Translate 'this is of course on the supposition that &c'

thus: the truth of (صحت) this statement (مقوله) depends (منحصر است) on the supposition that (در تقدیریکه) the possessor of money (دارندهٔ پول) really free master (مختار کل) upon it may be, and not that money overpowering (غالب) over the possessor of money

Unquestionably— بلاشک

The possession of wealth— مالداری

Drawback— نقص   To be attended with— داشتن

Money and love of money— داشتن پول و حب آن

Go together— یکجا (باهم) یافت میشود

Translate 'just as drinking often does but increase &c'

thus: just as (همچنین که) drinking (خوردن شراب) often only (محض) increase of thirst (ازدیاد تشنگی را) attached to (لاحق) is, in the same manner (بدین منوال)

on many occasions (مراتبِ بسیار) is seen, that the more (هرچه) wealth (مال و زر) increases, the craving for its increase (حرصِ افزونیِ آن) the more (مزید تر) becomes (می گردد)

Moreover— علاوه براین To make money— پول حاصل کردن

To keep and enjoy it— نگاه داشتن و متمتّع شدن از آن

Is dull and anxious drudgery— مشقّتِ بی مسرّت و پر زحمت

The dread of loss may hang like &c.—

ترس و بیمِ تلف شدنِ آن همهٔ عمر
مایهٔ اوقات تلخی و درد سری می باشد —

Wealth is certainly no panacea for all evils—

فی‌الواقع زر دوای هر دردی نیست —

Moreov قطع نظر از این

The value of money depends partly on knowing &c.—

قدرِ زر موقوف است پاره‌ای بر دانستنِ مصرفِ
بجایش و پاره‌ای بر طریقِ حاصل نمودنِ آن —

Whether wealth is an advantage or not— فواید یا مضرّتِ زر

On the use we make of it— بر طریقیکه آنرا تصرّف می نمائیم

Translate 'it is a disadvantage in the hands of those &c.

thus and when in the hand of those it is (باشد) that does not know how they must make use of it (باید از آن متمتّع شوند) no benefit it gives, but rather the cause of injury (زیان) it becomes.

On the other hand— برعکسِ آن

Translate 'it gives the command of so many things &c.'

thus possession of money (زر داشتن) us on

many things, namely (يعني) upon leisure (فراغت) and upon the power of doing good to others (مجال نيكي رساني به ديگران) and upon the keeping ready of (مهيا داشتن) books and work of various arts (حاصل صنائع مختلفه) and upon the opportunity (فرصت) and means of (اسباب) travel (سفر) power (قدرت) and command (اختيار) it gives (مي دهد)

It is well worth having &c مال و زر چيزيست داشتني و جهد كردني

Translate 'but it does not repay too great a sacrifice &c.'

thus but too great a sacrifice (فداي زياد را) that often on its way they allow (روا مي دارند) it does not deserve (نشايد) because ever its amends (تلافي آن) cannot be (نمي توان شد)

NOTES

26 Further examples of the idiomatic uses of the word ' جا ' are (i) ديگر جاي فكري نمانده است there is no further room for thought , آخر كار مرا بايجه جا رسانيدي at last you have brought me to this pass . (ii) اين كار سخت بجا افتاد this matter turned out very fortunate ; فرزند ! خوب بجا و بوقت آمدي son, you are arrived just in time , گويا مستيِ اين شراب تا قيامت بجا ست as if the intoxication of this wine will last for ever (iii) شاهزاده بطلانِ عملِ آنها لازمهٔ تدبير بجا آوردند the Prince carried out the necessary plot to frustrate their work , حقِّ وليعمتيِ او را بجا بياوريد perform what is due to him as a benefactor (iv) خيالِ بيجا كرده است she has entertained a vain idea , بيك خون گرفتن اورا از زحمتِ خرجِ بيجا ي ..... ديگر خلاص كرده ام with one blood-letting I have freed him from the trouble

of six months further needless expense با انقاد مزل لو؛ بها ده
نقل او بجا خواهد بد although your words may mean nothing yet
his action would be quite appropriate

27 The uses of the word دست may be further exemplified thus (i) دستي بالاي دست آنان نيست is there no controlling hand over them ? ما نمي دانند ؟ رعيت بمنزلهٔ دست و پاي دولت است do you not know that the subject people are a sort of limbs to the estate ? دست كسي باو نرسيد no one could catch him ?
(ii) بسياري بسيار و بدست آوردنش دشوار it is sought after by many and is difficult to procure اين فرصت كه بدست او افتاده است برايگان از دست نخواهد داد he would not let slip this opportunity which he happened to have با تكرار اين كلمات رقّتي دست داد on the repetition of these words a great tenderness was felt (by me) بي اختيار گريهٔ سختي دستم داد involuntarily I had a rush of heavy tears
من بكوشش كه برايگان از دست ندهم I was trying not to give it away for nothing دست از ما بازداشته مشغول تعيين قيمت ساعت و تقسيم آن شدند having withdrawn hands from us they engaged themselves in ascertaining the value of the watch and in dividing the amount (among themselves), آنجاها نيز از دست سفرا و قنسولها و اتباع ايشان آسوده نيستند in those places also they are not left in tranquillity by the ambassadors or consuls and their followers (iii) هيچ وقت نبايد صفات ملّيهٔ خود را از دست بدهيم never give up (our) national virtues چنان مست شادي مي شد كه دست از پا نمي شناخت he used to be so carried away with delight that he did not know what he was doing روزي در مصر خيلي فلك زده با طالع خود دست بگريبان بودم once upon a time in Egypt having

fallen on evil days, I was struggling hard against an adverse fortune , پادشاه تازه دست و پاي خود را جمع كرده بامور مملكت داري قيام فرمايد the king, finding himself again in tranquillity and ease, should stand firm in managing the affairs of the kingdom , آنان بفراخور عقلِ خود دست و پاي جواب دادن نمودند they struggled to answer according to their mental capacity , بچه معجز بدين حال دست يافتى by what miracle hast thou brought about this state of things ? حكيم دست و پا را گم كرد the doctor did not know what to do , با دشمن دست و گريبان شد he came hand to hand with the enemy , دست پاچه شد he become confused (iv) گاه دستِ تأسف برانو ميزد و گاه از تهِ دل آه مي كشيد sometimes he would strike his thigh as a sign of grief and sometimes heave a sigh from the depth of his soul , هر كجا دستِ اجل كوس رحلت مي نوازد اينان بار اقامت مي اندازند wherever the hand of death played on the drum of departure, they would establish themselves therein (v) بالادستِ آنان از هركدام دو هزار سه هزار مناب گرفته بايجا ها فرستاده اند their superiors, having taken two or three thousand *minâts* from every one of them, have sent (them) to these places ; بدستياري عدالت و مساوات بر همه مشكلها غلبه توان نمود by the aid of justice and equity one can over-come every difficulty , گفتم برويم بدستگاه وزارتِ خارجه I said 'let us visit the quarters of the foreign Minister' , از آن پيرِ افتادهٔ مظلوم دستگيري و ياري كن protect and assist that fallen and oppressed old man , دستمال را بدماغ گرفته برگشتم putting the handkerchief to (my) nose, I turned back , علي الخصوص بيماران تهي دست در خانهٔ حكيم را فرو گرفته بودند particularly patients of the poorer sort had flocked to the door of the doctor's house ,

از دست پاچگي ديگران شادي بهمه مي زد being pleased at the confusion of others, he smiled at every one رعاياي دوردست از the subject people in distant parts would not از حساب نمي بردند take him into account منتهاي ٢٦ ٢ بي حد اظهار نمودم I revealed (to them) the excess of my indigence اين آخوند معاون و دستيار من است this priest is my assistant and help-mate خواستم كه نصفه آنچه دستگيرم شده نثارش كنم I wished to present him half of what I had obtained اگر دستگاهي از كفم رفت ٣ مربي بچنگم آمد if I had lost an oppulence, I have secured a patron.

14. Karim Khan Zand.—II.

Karim Khan was esteemed pious, and was exact in the performances of his religious duties but his religion was not austere. His natural disposition was gay and cheerful and he continued to the last to enjoy the pleasures of the world and anxiously desirous that others should do the same. For *this reason by way of aspersion on his character some writers* report him to be immersed in luxury and headless of the miseries of his subjects; but if we go through the concurring testimony of the historians and living witnesses, it would be evident that even in the path of dissipation and indulgence, his love of pleasure never degenerated into intemperance nor was he ever unfitted by indulgence for the active performance of his duties as a sovereign. He had received no education. It is stated that he could not even write; and from his birth and the occupations of his early years it is probable he neither had, nor desired to have, any such accomplishment The son of a petty chief in a wandering tribe should but distinguish himself in attainments suited to his condition of life; and in all these he excelled. He was an unrivalled horse-man and possessed of great bodily strength and an active and supple frame, he had ample ingenuity in various military exercises. But, though unlearned himself, he valued and encouraged learning in others. His court was the resort of men of liberal knowledge. An anecdote is related of Karim Khan, which illustrates his temper and the manner in which he treated his

subjects and dispensed justice to them. It is said that one day, having had a prolonged attendance at his judgment seat, when the time of retirement came, he rose to depart, harassed and fatigued with the over-crowding of people, when a man rushed forward in apparent distraction, calling out for justice. "Who are you?" said Karim Khan "I am a merchant," replied the man, "and have been robbed and plundered of all I possessed" "What were you about," said the prince, "when you were robbed?" "I was asleep," answered the man "And why did you sleep?" exclaimed Karim Khan in a peevish and impatient tone "I," said the man, "made a mistake, because I thought you were awake" He was so well pleased with the manly answer, that turning towards the vizier, he bade him pay the man the value of the lost goods, and said "We must try to recover the property from the robbers"

To esteem— محسوب کردن (use 3 pl of حال act voice)

Pious— متّقي - ديندار

Was exact in the performances of &c

رعايتِ لوازم مذهب با حسن وجه نمودي —

His religion was not austere— سخت گير نبودي

His natural disposition— مزاجش ,

Gay and cheerfull—خوش و خرّم To the last—تا آخر ايّامِ حيات

He continued to enjoy the pleasures &c,

از لذّاتِ دنيا بهره مي برد

Anxiously desirous that others should do the same—

شائق هم بود تا ديگران نيز از آن بهره‌ور باشند —

Translate 'by way of aspersion some writers report &c'

thus some (بعضي) the tongue of reproach (زبانِ طعن) having opened him immersed in (مستغرق) pleasures (لذّات) and cheerful in (مشغول) pomps (تجمّلات) and heedless (بيخبر) of (از) miseries of the subjects (خرابيِ حالِ رعايا) they write

Translate 'if we through the concurring testimony of

the historians &c. thus if inspection of the concurring (ملاحظهٔ اتفاقِ) of the persons who the history of (تاريخ) his times have written and of the persons who themselves (خود) eyewitness (شاهدِ برأي العين) have been (بوده اند) be (بُوَد) it would be known (معلوم بُوَد) that even (حتّي) in the executing of dissipation (اجراي شهوات) and the enjoying of pleasures (تمتّعِ لذّات) also (هم) of the sort (بحدّي) he was not (نَبود) that to the limit of excess (بحدِّ افراط) he might have reached (رسيده باشد) and for him (اورا) preventing (مانع) from the performance of the affairs of the state (از مهمّاتِ امورِ مملكت) it might have been (شده باشد)

He had received no education— تربيتي نداشته

It is stated— منقول است

He could not even write— حتّى نوشتن هم نمي دانست

Birth— ولادت نسل

Occupations of his early years— حالتِ اوايلِ عمرش

He neither had, nor desired to have &c —

انكه كمالات نه هرگز داشته بود
و نه هم مي خواست كه داشته باشد —

A petty chief in a wandering tribe—

يكي از امراي كوچكِ ايلاتِ صحرانشين —

In attainments suited to his condition of life—

در كمالي كه لايقِ حالِ او بود —

To distinguish (one's self)— امتيازي داشتن (use 3 sing of

بايد صاحبي مشارك after)

And in all these he excelled

و در اين همه كريم خان را امتياز كلّي بود —

An unrivalled horse-man— سوار بي‌بديلي

Translate 'and possessed of great bodily strength and an active and supple &c' **thus** and great bodily strength (قوّتِ بدنيِ زياد) and in the use of the various warlike instruments (استعمالِ اقسام آلاتِ حرب) ample ingenuity (حذاقتِ وافر) and an active and supple frame (اندامي چست و چالاک) he had

Though unlearned himself—

اگرچه خود از علوم بي بهره بود —

He valued and encouraged learning in others—

علما را اعزاز و احترام و ديگران را بتحصيلِ دانش ترغيب و تحريص مي فرمود —

His court was the resort of men of liberal knowledge—

دربارِ او مرجعِ ادبا و مجمعِ فضلاء بود —

Which illustrates his temper and the manner &c —

كه كاشفِ مزاج و وضعِ سلوكِ وي با رعيت و اجراي احكام عدليهٔ اوست —

Having had a prolonged attendance at his judgment seat—

در ديوانِ مظالم زياد نشسته —

And harassed and fatigued with the over-crowding of people— و از كثرتِ آمد و شدِ مردم خسته —

When the time of retirement came— چون هنگام فراغت رسيد

To rise— برخاستن To depart (=retire)— خلوت رفتن

When— وقتي كه In apparent distraction— را

To rush forward— پيش جستن (use ماضي معطوف)

Calling out for justice — فرياد بر آورده طلبِ انصاف كرد

Who are you— كيستي

I am a merchant— تاجريسته ام رخي

And have been robbed and plundered of all I possessed—

و آنچه داشتم از من دزديدند —

What were you about when you were robbed—

وقتي كه دزديدند تو چه مي كردي —

I was asleep— خوابيده بودم

In a peevish and impatient tone— برقم زنانه

I made a mistake— غلط كردم

I thought you were awake— حسن داشتم كه تو بيداري

Translate he was so well pleased with the manly answer &c. **thus** Karim Khan (را) this manly answer (جوابِ مردانه) having pleased (خوش آمده) the face (روي) towards the vezier he brought and commanded (امر كرد) so that (كه) the value of that man's property (را) they might give (بدهند)

We must try to recover the property &c.—

ما بايد مال را از دزد بگيريم —

NOTES

28 The uses of the word زبان may be illustrated thus (1) از زبانم ايراني بودنم را دانستند he himself told me با زباني خود بمن گفت they found out from my talk that I was a Persian

نمي دانم , he accosted me in Italian با زبان اتياليا با من گفتگو در آمد I do not know how I should give adequate expression to (my) gratitude for (all) his kindness باچه زبان شكر انعام و احسان او كنم (11) the confession of ignorance never passed his tongue لفظ ' نميدانم ' هرگز در زبانش نگذشت do not turn your tongue round , زبان را در مگردان she would not talk of him any more , ديگر درباش نيارد do not chatter , زبان زيري مكن to-day the justice, equity and humanity of your Highness is the talk of the whole world , در همه روي زمين امروز عدالت و انصاف و مروت سركار ورد زبانها ست I fear, at the time of trial my tongue will stick , ميترسم وقت مرافعه زبانم نگيرد he never uttered the name of Alexandria , نام اسكندريه را در زبان نياوردي what power and ability may a slave like me possess that he will open his mouth in praise of that holy shrine , امثال من بنده را چه حد و ياراي آنكه بتوصيف آن آستان پاک زبان كشايد O crazy fellow, having heard of the word 'Law,' thou hast twisted it round thy tongue , مردكه ديوانه تو نام قانون شنيده در زبان پيچيده the tongues of people are unable to give an adequate description of it , از شرح و بيان آن زبانها عاجز است on many occasions, through the prevalence of thoughts about this undesirable state of things, I was on the point of giving utterance to blasphemous language , بسا شده است كه از غلبهٔ فكر و خيالات اين اوضاع ناگوار نزديک شده است كه بزبانم حرف كفر جاري شود I engaged myself in mentally glorifying and praising God , با زبان دل تسبيح و تقديس نمودم the state of the house bespoke the absence of its master ; از زبان حال خانه غيبت صاحب خانه ادا ميشد they ... بزبان حال پرسيدند و من با زبان قال جواب دادم

asked by signs while I answered (them) with the lining voice

(۲۲) ناخن هدهد زبان بندی را شاید the nail of the hoopoe was

appropriate for tongue tying ملتفت و چرب زبانی او فریب خوردم

I was deceived by his flattery and glibness of tongue

ترسیدم که در حق بزرگان بدگوئی و زبان درازی کرده ابتلای بدی گرفتار گردد

I feared that speaking evil of those in power and also in

them he would be entangled in serious danger این دو حیوان

بی زبان اوّل قدری بهمدیگر نگریستند گویا بزبان بیزبانی گفتگوی کردند

these two dumb animal at first stared at each other for

sometime as if they held a conversation in the langua

of silence

15 Travelling in Persia—I

There are three modes of travelling in Persia You can ride *chápár* that is, by Government post you can attach yourself to a caravan and the vagaries of the muleteer; or you can escape this bondage by buying your own beasts of burden and equipment, and hiring the guide and servants who shall take you at your own sweet will out of the beaten track of His Majesty's post roads. When speed is of the first consideration you will find it better to ride *chápár* It is of this, the quickest mode of travelling that I would say something that should be of service to such among you as are adventurous. The first point to deal with is the question of expense. The cost of this mode of travelling varies with the price of barley a horse's daily food in Persia. The charge exacted from me in the spring and summer of 1897 was at the rate of *one kran* per *farsakh* for each horse required. This is the average charge and may be considered moderate. But it does not always happen that the price of grain is the same in all the provinces of Persia at one and the same moment. Reckoning the *farsakh* at four English miles and the pound sterling at fifty *krans* the cost of riding *chápár* in the month of December 1898 was about ten pence per horse for every four miles You should endeavour to make shift with three horses. To that end you should look to it that your personal effects should fill not more than two kit bags. These would go behind the post boy on his saddle; your servant would take charge of the provisions and cooking gear and thus you would have a horse left for yourself

There are three modes of &c — در ایران سیاحت درسه طریق است

To ride *chápár* — چاپار رفتن

Government post — پستهٔ دولتي To attach — ملحق کردن .

And to the vagaries of the muleteer thou mayest resign —

به تلوّناتِ قاطرچي تسليم نمائي —

Your own (=for yourself) — براي خود

Beast of burden — بارپر - بارکش - بار بردار

Equipment — ساز و سامان - سازِ راه

By buying (=having bought) — خریده

Guide — بلد - راهبر Servant — ملازم - نوکر

To hire — کرایه کرفتن

At your own sweet will — بر حسبِ خواهشِ دل - خاطرخواهِ دل

Out of the beaten track — خارج از جادّهٔ عام

Bondage — گرفتاري - اسیري To escape نجات یافتن

Where speed &c (=if above all speed necessary is) —

اگر بالا ترار همه (علي الخصوص) سرعت (عجلت) الخ —

It is of this, the quickest mode of travelling —

در بابِ این طریق که زود ترینِ طریقهاي - هر است —

To say something — حرفي زدن

That should be of service to such &c —

که هرکه از همه مرور و جهانگرد و اینه بکارِ او بخورد —

Translate 'the first point to deal with is the question of expense' thus the first question (مطلب) in this connexion (درین باب) with regard to (در خصوصِ) expense (اخراجات) is

Cost — خرج - مصرف Travelling — مسافرت .

Daily food—خوراک یومیه یا روزمره
To vary—مختلف شدن (با) Charge—کرایه
In the spring and summer of 1898—
—{ در فصل بهار و تابستان سنه یک هزار و هشت صد و نود و هشت میلادی
To exact—گرفتن (use 3 pl. act. voice)
At the rate of—از قرار Average—تخمین معدل
Moderate—معتدل Provinces—صفحات
At one and the same moment—در یک وقت و یک آن
The same—یکسان
At—به برابر A mile English—میل انگلیس
Pound sterling لیرا لیره To reckon—حساب کردن
For every four miles—در مسافت هر چهار میل
About—تقریباً To endeavour—جهد نمودن
To make shift with—(با) ساختن
To that end—بدین مطلب بدین صورت
You should look to it—باید احتیاط بدارید
Personal effects—اسباب بدنی
Should fill not more that two kit bags—
در دو خورجین بگنجد و زائد از آن نباشد —
Post-boy—چاپار شاگرد Provision (=food)—خوراک
Cooking gear—اسباب پختن To take charge of—ملتفت بودن
For yourself—از برای خود شما
To be left—باقی ماندن (use future tense)

NOTES

29. The uses of the word یک may be illustrated thus

(i) یک مات هم بعنوانِ انعام بعلي داديم we gave one *minát* as a reward to Ali also , یکدانهٔ مادر است he is his mother's only son , یک واپور دیگر هست there is one steamer more , بقدرِ یک ساعت مشغول صحبت شدیم we conversed for about one hour , من یک قدري با احتیاط حرکت میکنم I move with a little caution , ما همه یک دفع تفنگها خالي کنیم we shall all shoot at the same time , تعجب نمودم که در یک کتابخانه این نسخ متعدده از یک کتاب چه معنی دارد I wondered what it would mean that in one library there should be so many copies of one and the same book (ii) یکي از خدمتکارانِ مهمانخانه بود it was one of the servants of the hotel , نوکرِ یکي از کشتیها است he is a servant in one of the ships (or steamers) , دیدم یکي را میزنند I found, they were beating some one , از آنها بیکي وعده دادم I gave promise to one among them , در لفظ دو اما در معني یکي هستند in words they are two, but in sense one and the same , از این یکي مي توانی برد که وضع سایر وزارتخانها باید چه طور باشد from this one you can understand what must be the state of the rest of the minister's offices , تنها یکي دو تن از مجلسیان چنان نماید که بطرفِ من مایلند only one or two persons from among those present appeared to be inclined towards me , مرگ خواه آهسته آهسته از تاثیرِ حب باشد و خواه بیک ضربِ کارد هردو یکي است death, whether caused slowly by the effect of a pill, or (all at once) by the blow of a knife, is the same (iii) از او خدا حافظ گفته یکسر بمهمانخانه آمدیم bidding him adieu, we came straight to the hotel , در ظرفِ دو سه سال یکبار عوض مي شوند they are changed once in two or three years' time , در ذکرِ نامِ نیکِ آن عالِمِ عامل همهٔ اهالي یک زبان بودند all the inhabitants were of one voice in praise of that learned man who acted up to his own

teaching بمحض شنيدن اين حرف همگي يكبار بر آشفتند as soon as they heard this they at once turned angry آنها كه زمين زد همه نوجواني بكوچي بودند those whom he threw to the ground were but puny youths اي امان وزير يكراست بسمت در اطاق ما مي آيد O mercy the vizier is coming straight towards our door پسرها با دخترها و مردها در يكجا بازي مي كنند boys play in the same place with unmarried girls and married women مردي بد عرض و طولش يكسان he was a person whose breadth and height were the same از ترس ايشان همه يكدل بوديم with one accord we were afraid of them با كمال يكرنگي شرح حال خود را باجمال بيان كرد with familiarity he gave a detailed account of all his concerns يكبار گرماي از الفاظ درشت بمشت و سيلي كشيد all at once from harsh words our quarrel developed into boxing سيلي بازي درست يكرنگِ ميرزا احمق بود the chief executioner was an intimate friend of Mirza Ahmaq

16 The Stag in the Ox stall

A hunted stag driven out of covert and distracted by fear made for the first farm house he saw and hid himself in an ox stall which happened to be open. As he was trying to conceal himself under the straw "What can you mean," said an ox, "by running into such certain destruction as to trust yourself to the haunts of man?" "Only do you not betray me," said the stag "and I shall be off again on the first opportunity" Evening came on; the herdsman foddered the cattle but observed nothing The other farm-servants came in and out. The stag was still safe Presently the bailiff passed through; all seemed right. The stag now feeling himself quite secure began to thank the oxen for their hospitality "Wait a while," said one of them; we indeed wish you well. but there is yet another person, one with a hundred eyes; if he should happen to come this way I fear your life will be still in jeopardy" While he was speaking the master having finished his supper came round to see that all was safe for the night for he thought that

his cattle had not of late looked as well as they ought Going up to the rack, "Why so little fodder here?" says he, "Why is there not more straw?" And "How long, I wonder, would it take to sweep these cobwebs!" Prying and observing here and there and every where, the stag's antlers, jutting out from the straw, caught his eye, and calling in his servants he instantly made a prize of him.

It is said of a stag that گوزني را گويند که

By means of the pursuing of the hunters and hunting dogs— بوا سطۀ تعاقبِ صيّادان و سگانِ شکاري .

"Driven out of covert— از جنگل (در استرار) فراري

Distracted by fear— (شکسته تکي) سراسيمه از آشفتگي

Farm-house خانۀ برزگر

To make for رخ ده دويدن

Ox-stall— طويلۀ گاوان

Which happened to be open— که درش باز افتاده بود

Behind a heap of straw— در پسِ تودۀ کاه .

Translate 'what can you mean by running into &c thus, with what (بکدام) audacity (جرأت) and insanity (ديوانگي) thyself (را) to the place of certain destruction (محلِ هلاکِ بيگمان), that the haunts of man (منزلِ آدم) is, didst thou cause to reach (رسانيدي) and thy sweet life (جانِ شيرين را) in such a place (در چنين جاي) secure (بي خطر) thou didst think (پنداشتي)

Only you do not betray me— سرِّ مرا آشکار ننمائيد و بس

I shall be off again on the first opportunity—

در اولين فرصتي که دست دهد
خود را باز بجاي ديگر برسانم —

Evening came on— شب در رسید —

Herdsman— گله بان   To fodder— علف خورانیدن

They observed nothing— بچیزی ملتفت نشدند

To come in and out— آمدن و رفتن

The stag was still safe— آهوی نر بسلامت بود

Presently— بعد از آن زود

Bailiff— بالیز

To pass through— گذشتن (از)

All seemed right— همه چیزها بنظرش با خوب (درست) میآمد

Feeling himself quite secure— خود را ایمن سلامت دانسته

Began to thank the oxen for their hospitality—

زبان بشکر دراز کرد و بر مهمانی
و مهربانی گاوان اظهار رضامندی —

Wait a while— حالی بر پیش مرو یا حالی بدد

Indeed— آری

We wish you well— ما خیرخواه توایم

One with a hundred eyes— که چشم صد دیده دارد

If he should happen to come this way—

اگر گذرش باینجا اتفاق افتد —

Your life will be in jeopardy— جانت در معرض خطر باشد

While he was speaking— در اثنای این گفتگو

The master— صاحب گاوان

Having finished his supper— شام خورده

Came round to see that all was safe for the night—

باطراف نظر کنان برسید تا ببیند
که شب همه چیز بسلامت است —

For he thought that his cattle &c —

چه درین زمانهای نزدیک ..طلّة خود گاوانِ خود
را چنانکه باید و شاید تازه و توانا نیافته —

Rack— آخوره - پشتک   Fodder— علف   So little— چنان قلیل

How long, I wonder, would it take &c.—

حیرانم تاکئ این تارهاي عنکبوت
را مي توانم رفت و رد بکنم

Prying and observing here and there and every where—

اینجا آنجا مي الچاله در همه
جا در نگران و جست و جو کنان —

The stag's antlers caught his eye— چشمش در سرِ شاخ گوزن افتاد

Jutting out from the straw— که از زیرِ کاه بیرون آمده بود

To call— صدا کردن   Him— آن بیچاره را

To make a prize of— گرفتار کردن

NOTES

30 The use of the word 'نظر' may be illustrated thus (1) البتّه شیطان ویرا بنظرِ انسان طاؤس مي نماید Satan indeed would make her appear to the eye of men as beautiful as a pea-hen , زینب از نظرم غایب شد Zainab disappeared from my sight , تا دشمن چشم باز کند از نظر غائب مي شوند they would disappear, before the enemy would open his eye , با نظري بي معني ملتفت آدابِ نسقچیان بودم I observed the salute of the *nasaqchies* with a meaningless stare , چشمانش از شدّتِ نظر بکار بستن بارِ عینک دوچار through difficulty of sight in working, his eyes (had) a pair of spectacles on , یکدیگر را درمیانِ هزار نفر بیک نظر تشخیص مي دهند at a single glance they recognise one another from among a thousand individuals,

چنان بترتیب قلیان سرگرم که دنیا در نظرش نبود he was so engrossed in preparing his pipe, that he had no sense of the outside world طراوت بهار بنظرها نمودار شد the freshness of the spring became visible (ii) بنظر رستم می آمدند they appeard to be Rustams بآن جوان نظر خورده است the evil eye has struck this young man نزدیکتر رفتم آشنا بنظرم آمد when I approached nearer he appeard to be an acquaintance شهری بنظر آورید با راههای تنگ و خانههای دیوار کوتاه imagine a city with narrow lanes and low houses از افریقه هم بواسطه غلامان و کنیزان سیاهی بنظر داشتم I have a faint idea of Africa also by means of the slaves and slave-girls من مسافرت شهر خوی را نیز در نظر داشتم I had in view to travel to the town of Khoi also در کمال حیرت بدانسوی نظر کردم in perfect surprise I looked in that direction سرگذشت آل برمک خود در نظر است the account of the Bermcides is apparent in itself خود و نوکرانش مرا بنظر بقراط ثانی نگرند he and his servants regarded me as a second Hippocrates , (iii) که بسیاری از کوتاه نظران می گویند ۱۲ it is strange that many of the narrow viewed and imprudent ones say این همه در نظر اعتبار مردمان کوتاه بین و مال اندیش موجب هزارگونه عبرت است all these are the sources of thousand fold warning for the narrow sighted and wealth seeking people مردمان این شهر نیز از شدت جهالت و کوتاهی نظر بجز از خود پرستی و خود آرائی کاری ندارند the people of this town also, owing to gross ignorance and narrow-sightedness, engage themselves in nothing but self-gratification and self adornment.

17. Travelling in Persia.—II

The organization of a camp for a long march takes some trouble, if all is to go right, and we were at work early in the morning to get the whole thing in order Perhaps it will help to give a clear idea of travelling in Persia, if I explain what the system is In the first place, to be comfortable it is necessary to have a double set of tents and furniture, so that one set is on the march while the other is being used In this way you can start in the early morning, and finish the day's march by breakfast time, finding a complete camp when you ride in, and having the rest of the day for whatever you want to do The cook and some of the other servants go on at night, or early in the morning and get breakfast ready The tents in which you have slept are struck when you start, and they make a double march, so as to be ready for you on the following day A light-loaded set of mules meanwhile start off, and try to keep with you, so as to bring up dressing cases and other necessaries which one wants every day and cannot have in duplicate A caravan thus becomes divided into three parts, respectively, *píshkhána*, *vasatkhána* and *paskhána* On the morning of the twenty-seventh of September the mules were all ready loaded up and the division into *khánas* began We took up our post at a narrow place between the irrigation cuts, where all had to pass, and with infinite trouble—the mules breaking away, and the muleteers shouting and abusing one another, and running in all directions—we at last succeeded in telling off about forty mules carrying the *píshkhána*, that were to march on two stages These were collected in the road, their muleteers with them, and the whole party handed over to one of the orderlies, Rizá Khán, in whose charge they were to be hence-forward I remember this man coming up in an excited way and demanding justice It appeared that one of the muleteers had loaded his mule, a fine powerful beast, with nothing but a tin hat box They were always trying these tricks

If all is to go right اگر باید همه درست بشود .

Organization— تدارکِ اسباب و لوازمه

March— کوچ Trouble زحمت

To be at work— دست بکار شدن - بکار افتادن

To get in order— ترتیب دادن - آراسته کردن

If I explain what the system is—

اگر بیان کنم ترتیبش چه طور است —

It will help to give a clear idea &c.—

خیال واضح درباب مطلبی
اسباب خاطر نشان بکند —

In the first place— اولاً

To be comfortable— برای راحت و آرام   Set— دسته

Double— مضاعف   Tent— چادر

Furniture— اسباب منزل   Is being used— در کار است

Day's— روزانه   By— قریب به

Breakfast time— وقت ناهار ۲ ساعته

Finding = that you may find.   Camp— اردوگاه

Complete— وافی   To ride in— سوار رسیدن

Having the rest of the day for &c.—

بقیهٔ روز هرچه ساعتی به فراغت بکنی —

Cook— آشپز   To get ready— مهیّا کردن

To strike *(a tent)*— کندن بار کردن

To make a double march— دو مرحله راه طی کردن

The following day— روز دیگر   Meanwhile— درین اثنا

A lightly-loaded set of mules— یک دستهٔ قاطر که بارش کم باشد

Try to keep with you— حتّی المقدور برابر شما راه میروند

Dressing-case— قوطی زینت   In duplicate— مکرّر

To bring up— حاضر ساختن   To be divided— تقسیم شدن

To call *(name)*— نامیدن نام نهادن   A narrow place— تنگنای

Irrigation cuts— قنوات آبیاری

Where all had to pass— که از آنجا کل رمه لازم بود

To break away— گریختن ، جلو

In all directions— هر سو همه جا

To shout— نعره زدن - بانگ زدن   To abuse— فحش دادن
With infinite trouble— بهزار مشکلها
To tell off— حساب کردن - شمردن
That were to march on two stages— که باید دو منزل راه طي بکنند
Party— جماعت   To hand over— گذاشتن .
Orderly اردل - علام .   In whose charge— که زیرِ نگهبانیش
To remember— یاد داشتن (از)
Coming up = that he came up
In an excited way— با اضطرابِ تمام   To load— بار کردن
A fine powerful beast— حیواني قوي هیکل و زورآور
Hat-box— قوطي کلاه - قابِ کلاه   Tin (*made of tin*)— از حـ
With nothing but (= and nothing else)— دیگر هیچ
To try tricks— حیله بازي کردن - طفره زدن

NOTES

31 The uses of the word 'درست' may be illustrated thus (i) گوسفندي درست بریان کردند an entire sheep was roasted , مژدگاني درستي بچاپار بده give a handsome reward to the courier ما ایرانیان چه جانورِ نادرستیم what smart fellows we Persians are ? حرفِ سرکار درست است what your Honour says is true آدمِ نا درستي است he is a bad man . (ii) داس از آهن درست میکنند a sickle is made with iron , بندهاي قبا که پاره شده در خانه بده تا درست کنند the bandages of the overcoat having become torn, send it to the house for mending , از شیر ماست و پنیر و کره و روغن و سرشیر درست مي شود from milk are prepared sour curds, cheese, butter, *ghee*, and cream , بیلِ زیرِ اورا بارها درست کرده ام

I have many times clipped the whiskers under it تاویل این همچو بهتانی درست خواهد برد it should be interpreted literally برای من درست میکند she concocts such a calumny against me (iii) این شکایت را درست خوانده می شد it could be read correctly, درست باید تحقیق کرد this complaint must be thoroughly investigated درست حالیت شد چه گفتم hast thou correctly understood what I have said? اما فکر درستی بکنید but reflect well چند وصیت بگو دارم درست گوش کن I have a few parting advices to give you do listen with attention سوادم بایستی منحصر بدرست خواندن حمد و سوره و نماز باشد my education must have been limited to the correct reading of the opening and other chapters of the Quran and saying my prayers (iv) وبا و طاعون از نادرستی مردمان حاصل است plague and pestilence come from the wickedness of bad men تا امور دولت و ملت بطور درستی رو بترقی گذارد then the affairs of the state and the nation will be set towards improvement in a right way شاید بسبب راستی و درستی که در مضامین و مطالب آن است موجب هلاک خرابی من شود perhaps owing to the truthfulness and correctness of the statements and sentiments contained therein, it might lead to my destruction از شنیدن لفظ چوب نادرستی بخاطرش آمد from hearing the word 'wood' an evil design entered his mind حالا عقل درستی سرم نیست now I have not got my wits all right in the head

32 Examples of the uses of the word 'بار' are (i) برای گرفتن بار و ره‌رو به هر طرفی سر می‌زند for taking cargo and passenger it runs about in every direction (۲) ناخدا باری که بارش همه گوسفند بود آنها را بیرون آورد the captain brought out the cargo which consisted

entirely of sheep , مردم را بسته بارها را گشوده بتاراج پرداختند binding up the men and unfastening the loads they engaged themselves in plundering , در زیر بار گران آهسته آهسته تا در زیر غرفه آمدم under a heavy load, proceeding slowly, I came under the upper chamber , مرا زیر بار منت بی‌پایان نهاد he placed me under extreme obligation , با این بار شامت بجای خود برگشتن نمی توانم with this load of misfortune, I could not return to my place , در پشت بار سال دیار دارد his back is bent low with the load of years (ii) واپور از یک طرف بار داده از طرف دیگر هم بار می گرفت the steamer unloading by one side, loaded cargo by another side , این سربازان هر دسته ده دوازده لولهٔ تفنگ را بر الاغی بار کرده در نهایت بی نظامی می آمد each band of ten or twelve of these soldiers, having loaded the barrels of muskets on a donkey, proceeded in extreme irregularity , بر استری دیگر جفتی یخدان بار کردیم I loaded a couple of portmanteaus on another mule , مثل من آدمی در زیر دست ترکمان بار آمده با او برابری می تواند a man brought up like me under service of the Turkoman could vie with him , گفتی کوه دماوند را بر پشتم بار کرده اند as if the mount Damáwand has been loaded upon my back (iii) خر حیوان فقیر بارکشی است the ass is a poor beast of burden , برای طهران بارگیری پوست بخاری می خواست he wished to convery a loading of the lambs' skins of Bokhara to Tehran بر استری بارکشم سوار نمودند they made me mount a load-carrying mule , از اخراجات شاه گریزان بارکش غول بیابان شوم fleeing from the taxes of the king, I would turn out quite an out-law.

18 Teheran

A little more than a century ago Teheran was described by European travellers as a small village in the neighbourhood of the ancient city of Rei, which was the capital of Persia under the rule of the Arabian caliphs. The ruins of this place are still to be seen some six miles from Teheran, but most of its inhabitants moved to the newer city when it became the favourite dwelling place of the Kajar princes. The Shahs of this dynasty have spent large sums in enlarging and embellishing the city and while Teheran can scarcely be said to rival the natural beauties of Shiraz or the architectural splendors of of Ispahan, it is now considered the metroplis of Persia. In Persian eyes Teheran is a European city The wide streets and tree-lined avenues of the newer quarter of the town date from the reign of Shah Nasiruddin, the grand father of the present Shah who returned from a visit to Europe fired with the ambition of transforming his capital into an Oriental Paris. But the Persian in general is a race of fanatical conservatives the strange madness that drives his rulers to leave the blessed shores of Iran to wander in infidel lands beyond the seas seems to him wholly foreign and distasteful. And, while the result of Nasiruddin's fondness for the things and ways of Europe are to be seen in Teheran on every hand the large majority of the citizens cling obstinately to the customs of their fore fathers so that the capital of Persia stands to-day a wonderful city of contrasts, where the old and the new stand side by side in bewildering confusion. On account of the high elevation sudden and violent changes of temperature occur; nevertheless Teheran is a healthy spot and inspite of the primitive method of sanitation still in vogue the death rate among its population remains comparatively low

A little more than a century ago—قدری زیاده از صد سال گذشته که

European travellers— اهلِ فرنگی

To describe— تعریف کردن (use 3 pl. of past cont. act. voice with طهران as object)

As a small village = that a small village is.

Neighbour hood— اطراف

Under the rule of the Arabian caliphs—

در زیر حکومتِ خلفای عرب —

Capital— دار السلطنه - پایتخت

The ruins of this place— ویرانه (خرابه) هایش

Still— هنوز Some six miles— در مسافتِ شش میل .

Are to be seen— موجود است - دیده می شود

Translate 'most of its inhabitants moved &c' **thus**:

when in that new city (شهرِ جدید) for the Kajar kings (را) staying-place (سکونت) desirable (مرغوب) became most of the inhabitants of Rei (بیشترینِ سکنهٔ ری) to that place moved (نقلِ مکان کردند)

Dynasty— سلسله - خانواده

In enlarging and embellishing the city—

برای افزایش و آرایشِ این شهر —

Large sums— مبالغِ کثیره To spend— مصرف نمودن - خرج کردن

Translate 'while Teheran can scarcely be said &c' **thus**

although (اگرچه) Teheran neither to the beautiful sights of Shiraz (نه به منظرهای قشنگِ شیراز) nor to the splendid edifices of Ispahan (و نه به عمارتهای بارونقِ اصفهان) the mode of evenness (طورِ مساوات) has, now the metropolis (امّ القری) of Persia the same (همانین) is

In Persian eyes— بچشم ایرانیان

A European city— همرنگِ شهرهای فرنگستان

The wide streets— کوچه های فراخ

Tree-lined avenues— خیابانهای دارا با درختهای قطار شده .

Of the newer quarter of the town—

که در محلاتِ نوی این شهر دیده می شود —

Date from the reign of Shah Nasuruddin &c. —

از عهدِ سلطنتِ ناصرالدین شاه طلوعِ چند بزرگوارِ شاه زمانی است —

Translate 'who returned from a visit to Europe fired with &c. **thus** who after the journey to Europe (بعد از سفرِ اوروپا) with the ambition of transforming his own capital (با عزم تغییر دادنِ پایتختِ خود را) into an Oriental Paris (به پاریسِ مشرقی) fired with zeal (آتشِ هیجان) had returned (مراجعت نموده بود)

The Persian in general — عموماً ایرانیان   A race — قومی

Fanatical conservatives — متعصّب و دشمنِ انقلاب

The strange madness — سودای غریبی

That drives his rulers to leave the blessed shores &c.—

که شاهانِ ایشانرا راغب به ترکِ خاکِ پاکِ
ایران و به ... در کفرستان می نماید —

To him (= them) — بنظرشان   Wholly — کلیه

Foreign — اجنبی   Distasteful — ناگوار   While — با آنکه

The result of Nasuruddin's fondness for &c.—

نتایجِ میل و رغبتِ ناصرالدین شاه بر هرچه از اشیاء و طرزِ اوروپا باشد —

In Teheran on every hand — در هر گوشه و کوچهٔ طهران

Are to be seen — نمایان است

The large majority of the citizens — اکثری از اهالیِ آن شهر

To the customs of their fore-fathers —

به رسم و عاداتِ نیاکانِ خود شان —

Obstinately — باصرار و تعصّب   To cling — بار برس

So that the capital of Persia stands to-day &c.—

تا امروز پایتختِ ایران شهرِ غریبی است ملتصق مدنن —

The old and the new stand side by side in bewildering confusion

قديم و جديد با يكديگر پهلو رده و تار مار } —
افتاده مايهٔ تعجب و حيرت اند

High elevation— بسياري ارتفاع زمين

Sudden and violent changes— انقلابِ ناگهاني و تغيراتِ شديدي

Of (=in) temparature در آب و هوا

Nevertheless— نه اين همه Healthy spot— جاي صحت انگيز

Inspite of the primitive method of sanitation &c.

اگرچه براي نگاه داشتنِ صحت هنور } —
طريقهٔ ... را بكار برده مي شود

Death rate— تعداد موت Among its population— در آهاليِ آن

Comparatively— نسبتاً Low— كم

NOTES

33 Some of the uses of the word 'نقل' may be illustrated thus (i) نقلهايم را گوش مي كردند they listened to my stories, نيستهٔ سرمايهٔ نقل را تهي نمي ساختم I did not exhaust the stock of my stories, اكثر اوقات وعدهٔ نقلِ برنگاه را تعردا مي انداختم often I managed to finish by giving a promise of narrating next day the principal spot in the story بعد تفصيلاتش را بشما نقل مي نمايم afterwards I will narrate the details to you, از زنان شان چيز هاي عريب نقل مي كنند strange stories are related about their women, حكايتي تارة ساخته براي ريرچاقي نكلاه خود نقل مي كرد he was narrating a newly-constructed story before his cap (as audience) for the sake of facility and practice (ii) قايقِ بزرگي را براي حمل و نقل تاب

الداخلة اند a big boat has been launched into the water for carrying and transporting (things) اين جور متاع را از اينطرف بآن طرف مي دهند such merchandises are transported from this side (of the river to that), اين كشتي مسافرين را برآنسوي رود خانه كه سرحد روس است نقل مي دهد this boat bear the passengers to that side of the river forming the Russian frontier محمولات هم عبارت از گندم و گوسفند است the transports consist of wheat and sheep اين كشتيها را براي تسهيل نقليات بآب انداخته است he has launched these boats on the river for facilitating transports اسباب نقليه از اين رودخانه منحصر بيک كشتي است the means of transport across this river consists of one boat only (iii) چه تقلي دارد what difficulty is there? وقتي در اندرون شاهي خيلي تقرب داشتم I once enjoy d much favour in the royal harem فورا فهميدم كه نقل كجا ست immediately I understood where its reference was اين مهمان محترم شما عجب مرديست خيلي ثقل دارد this respected guest of yours is a wonderful man, and is difficult to deal with ايشان اسباب كدورتي كه براو ناگهاني روي داده است ثقلي نيست this is owing to a sudden depression of mind that happened to him and is nothing serious

-

19 The Tortoise who could not keep Silence

There was a pool in South Behar and some geese had for a long time lived there They had a friend in the pool who was a tortoise. It chanced one evening that the tortoise over heard some fishermen talking by the water "We will stop here to-night they said and in the morning we will throw in our nets and catch all the fish and tortoises We are sure to make a good haul with our new nets." Extremely alarmed at this the tortoise repaired to his friends, the geese, and reported the conversation. "Now tell me what am I to do?"

the tortoise concluded. "This is a very serious business," said the geese. "It will require much thought"—"I know that," said the tortoise, "but don't think too long, or it will be too late. Tell me, quick, what I had better to do"—"I think, the only thing to do," said one of the geese, "is to get out of the pool as quickly as possible" "Now, what is the good of talking like that?" said the tortoise "You know how fast I walk. Even if I start off at once, I shan't be out of sight by morning They will see me in the open and catch me at once" "There is some truth in that." said the geese "Why not hide in the mud?"—"That might do," said the tortoise, "but I shouldn't feel safe. They would be sure to rout me out" "Then I don't know what to advise," said one of the geese, "I shall be sorry, if you are caught and killed But what must be, must be, for that which is ordained cannot be effaced" "A pretty friend you are!" said the tortoise angrily 'Is that all the help you can give a friend in danger?" Then he sat down for a moment to think, and after a pause, said in a more cheerful voice, "I have it! I have it! you shall carry me out of danger" "How are we going to do that?" asked the geese "If you climb on our backs you are sure to fall off again" "I will tell you," answered the tortoise 'I have very strong jaws Two of you shall take hold of a stick at each end, while I will hold on to the middle with my jaws What do you think of that?" "It is feasible," observed the geese, "but you must excuse my mentioning it, you are rather fond of talking And if you should forget yourself and begin to talk, there will be end of every thing" "Stuff and nonsense!" he cried, "Am I a fool to open my mouth? Not I! Come, now convey me" Thereupon the geese took up the stick, the tortorise held fast with his mouth, and away they flew The country people, observing this strange sight, ran after "Ho! ho!" cried one, "look at the flying tortorise!" "When he falls, we'll cook and eat him here," said another "No, let us take him home for dinner!" cried a third "We can light a fire by the pool, and eat him," said the first. At these unfeeling words the tortoise was beside himself with rage "Eat me—eat ashes!" he exclaimed, opening his mouth, and down he fell directly and was caught by the countrymen

South— شمال   Pool— آبگیر   Goose— بط

For a long time— از قدیم الایّام

To live— سکونت پذیر بودن   Tortoise— سنگ پشت

One evening— وقتی سرِ شام   Fisherman— ماهی گیر

To overhear— استماع نمودن To stop— ماندن
In the morning— فردا صبح Net— تور دام
To throw in— انداختن (use ماضي معطوف)
To make a good haul— شكار خوبي بدست آوردن
Extremely alarmed— بغايت هراسان شده
To repair to— به كسي رجوع نمودن
The conversation— گفتگوي ماهيگران را
To report— نقل كردن What am I to do?— چه بايد بكنم
This is a very serious business— اين كار خيلي ثقل دارد
It will require much thought— در آن تفكر بسيار لازم است
Too long— زياد
Or it will be too late— و گرنه دست از كار مي گذرد
Quick— زود
The only thing to do is to get out &c.—
چيزي كه بايد بكني هرچه زود تر از اين آبگير جان بدر بردن است و بس —
What is the use of talking like that—
چنين حرفهاي با در هوا زدن چه سودي دارد —
You know how fast I walk— تندرفتارم از شما پوشيده نيست
To start off— براه افتادن
I shan't be out of sight by morning—
تا صبح از نظر بيرون نمي توانم رفت —
Open— دشت There is some truth in that— سخن راست است
In the mud— در زير گل That might do— بكارم خورده باشد
To feel safe— خود را مطمئن انگاشتن
To rout out— بيرون كشيدن

What to advise— چه مشورت بدهم

I shall be sorry— خیلی تأسف می خورم

But what must be, must be &c.—

— لاکن هرچه شدنیست باید بشود که تمامی نشدنی نباید بشود

Said angrily در آشفت که

A pretty friend you are !— چه دوست خوبی و ناصح عزیزی هستی

Is that all the help you can &c —

— مگر همهٔ اعانتهای تو که میتوانی در حالت گرفتاری با دوست خود بکنی مختصر بریدنست

For a moment— اندکی

To (=inorder that he may) think تا تفکر بکند

After a pause— بعد از قدری توقف

In a more cheerful voice— با صدای خوشتر I have it— یافتم

You shall carry me out of danger —

— تو باید مرا از این ورطه بسلامت ببرید

To climb— سوار شدن To fall off برمین افتادن

Jaw— الوارہ - چانه Very strong— خیلی سخت

Two of you— دوتن از شما To take hold of— گرفتن (بر)

Stick— چوب . To the middle— در رسط آن

To hold on— در آویختن Feasible— ممکن الحصول

You must excuse my mentioning it &c —

— باید مرا از ذکر کردن آن معذور داری که تو بیشتر شائق حرف زدن هستی

If you should forget yourself and begin &c

— اگر خود را فراموش کرده بگفتار بیآیی کار تو تمام خواهد شد

Stuff and nonsense !— چنین هرزه و چرند مگو

Am I a fool to open my mouth !—

اما من اینقدر احمقم که دهانم را بگشایم —

Not I !— حاشا نیم   To convey— برداشتن

To hold fast— محکم گرفتن   To fly— پریدن

The country people— روستائیان

Observing this strange sight— این منظرِ غریب را دیده

To run after— دنبالِ کسی دویدن   Ho ! ho !— ای ای

Flying tortoise— سنگ پشتِ پردار   Dinner— شام

To light— افروختن

At these unfeeling words— از شنیدنِ این سخنهای بیمهری

Was beside himself with rage— بقهر آمده از خود برفت

Eat me—eat ashes !— مرا بخورید یعنی خاکستر (زهرمار) بخورید

Down he fell directly &c.—

—{ دهن گشادنش همان و از بالا بزیر آمدنش
و بدستِ روستائیان گرفتار شدنش همان }

NOTES.

34. Further e amples to illustrate the uses of the word سر are (1) قبیلهٔ از ترکمانانِ یاغی سرِ راهِ مشهد را بریده بودند a tribe of rebellions Turcomans had infested the road to Meshed, در همین نزدیکی روزها بر سر کاروانی ریختند they did lately attack a caravan, زنها سر بدف و ترانهای گوناگون بسر بردند the women passed their time in beating the tambourine and singing various songs; بخدا که هرگز نمیگذارم از سرِ تو برکسی ملازم by God, I would never let thee be ransomed away; اگر سرِ رضا فرو ننهم سر بسرِ میمون می رود if I do not submit, I may lose my head for the sake of the monkey;

اسپش را بکشت زارِ مردم سر داد he let loose his horse into the sown fields of the people, از سرِ نو جوان می شوم I shall turn young again, هرکس که در سرِ کاری است باندازهٔ خود چاپلوس دارد everyman having an office in the court has a body of flatterers according to his position (ii) امورِ مخصوصِ خانم را سر و صورت می دهد she manages the private affairs of my mistress, بر سرِ پا بشارت دهان که " بیا " she was on her legs, calling out to me 'come', اینطور سرش را بهم آریم I will finish the matter in this manner, در پشتِ دیوار چنان نهفتم که بجز کسیکه سرش در کار باشد نداند I hided it at the back of the wall in such a way that no one except whoever is in the know could find (it), ناگاه آوازِ " سرِ راه " بلند شد suddenly the cry of 'look out' was heard نماز از سرِ صدق و خلوص کردم I said my prayers with all fervency, چون از پیش خبردار بودند سر زده داخل شدم as they had been apprised of me before-hand, I entered without giving any warning, در کمال ادب سری فرود آورده راه افتادم having made my obeisance with extreme respect, I took to my road, بعد از هفتهٔ دوباره هوای تفلیس بسرم افتاد after a week the desire to see Tiflis again arose in my mind تو بودی که تمامی عمرِ خود را در سرِ زین بسر بردی it was thou who didst spend thy whole life on the saddle (iii) جامهای سرشار از آبِ حوضِ کوثرِ غیرتش بتو پیماید he would make you drink off cups brimful with the heavenly water of his zeal, در غیرت و تعصبِ ملی سرآمدِ ایرانیان است with respect to national zeal and prejudice he is the foremost of the Persians, ما بقی سرگردان و محتاجِ قوت لایموت the rest are confounded and distressed for want of a mere subsistence, سراپایش تفسیرِ اشعارِ شعرای ایران her whole frame was an elucidation of the

poems of the poets of Persia سررشته بدست دشمنان مدهی you will, thus, give opportunity to your enemies سر ساس شدي (now) thou hast become a some body حبه ای مارش از نه بینم اگر الهی لقدم سرمایه اش اسعد may I never see the profit of a single gild, if I have not asked you the stock price only این باد سراسر تابستان در هرات میوزد this wind lasts the whole of summer in Herat برکشیدن خرقهٔ درویشی کار هر بیسروپا نیست to wear the garments of a darvish is not the work of every good for nothing fellow مرا بحرم درویشان برد he brought me to the meeting place of the darvishes با لقب ملک الشعرائی سرافراز شدم I was dignified with the title of the chief royal poet سرحد لمرز للطه برد he has passed the meridian of his life قاطرها با سوار آنان در عقب همه the mules with their riders were behind all.

20 Books.

Books are the masters who instruct us without rod and ferules without hard words and anger without clothes or money If you approach them, they are not asleep; if investigating you interrogate them, they conceal nothing; if you mistake them, they never grumble If you are ignorant they cannot laugh at you. The library therefore, of wisdom is more precious than all riches, and nothing that can be wished for is worthy to be compared with it. Whosoever therefore, acknowledges himself to be a zealous follower of truth of happiness, of wisdom, or of science, must of necessity make himself a lover of books A book is a living voice It is a spirit walking on the face of the earth It continues to be the living thought of a person separated from us by space and time. Men pass away; monuments crumble into dust What remains and survives is human thought. What is Plato? He has long been resolved into dust but his thoughts and actions still survive. Books are a guide in youth and an enter

tainment for age They support us under solitude, and keep us from being a burthen to ourselves They help us to forget the crossness of men and things, compose our cares and our passions, and lay our disappointments asleep The importance of books has been appreciated in many quarters. Among the hardy Norse men runes were supposed to be endowed with miraculous power There is an Arabic proverb, that 'a wise man's day is worth a fool's life', and another, that 'the ink of science is more precious than the blood of the martyr' Confucius is said to have been a man, who 'in his eager pursuit of knowledge forgot his food, who in the joy of his attainments forgot his sorrows, and did not even perceive that old age was coming on'

Books (= book)— کتاب

Master— معلم (use in the singular)

Without rods and ferules— بیدون چوب و ترکه زدن

Without hard words and anger—

بدون استعمال سخنهای درشت و خشمناک —

Without clothes and money— بلا گرفتن پوشش و پول

To approach— پیش کسی رفتن

They are not asleep— همیشه بیدارش بیابی

Investigating— درراه تحقیق To interrogate— استفسار نمودن

They (= it) conceal nothing— هیچ یک از تو پنهان ندارد

To mistake— بد فهمیدن To grumble— (از) شکایت داشتن

Ignorant (= foolish)— تهی دماغ To laugh— خندیدن

Library— کتابخانه

Of wisdom پر از کلمات دانایان و اندرزهای خردمندان

Precious— گرانمایه

Nothing that can be wished for &c —

هیچ یک مطلوب انسانی هرچه گرانبها تر
که می باشد بگرد آن نمی رسد —

Translate whosoever therefore acknowledges himself &c.' thus therefore (بناءً) whoever (کسیکه) whoever (هر) in the acquisition of (در) truth (علم) or happiness (سعادت) or (یا) in the acquirement of (در) wisdom (دانش) or science (علم) himself (خود) wholly (همه تن) eager (حریص) he find (یابد) of necessity (لزوم or لاجرم or البته) he must (باید) the book (را) he may love (دوست بدارد)

Voice— صدا Living— زنده

Combine it is a spirit &c. with the previous sentence (with گویا in the beginning)

Spirit (=angel)— فرشته

On the face of the earth— بر روی زمین

Walking— گردش کنان

It continues to be the living thought &c —

— { کتاب همانست زنده و پاینده از کسیکه بانشان نوشته ..... }

To pass away— فنا شدن Man— انسان

Monument— یادگار

To crumble into dust— ریزه ریزه شده خاک گشتن

What remains and survives— هر چه که بجا ماند و پایدار باشد

Human thought— فکر انسانی Plato— افلاطون

To resolve into dust— خاک شدن (use past tense).

His thoughts and his actions— افکار و اعمال او

Survive (=durable is)— پابرجاست

The book is a guide in youth— کتاب راهبر عقل است در خردسالی

And an entertainment for age— و مایهٔ فرحت و صفا در عهدِ پیري

And a sincere friend in solitude— و رفیقِ صادق در تنهائي

And a remover of distress and for the passing away of time a good surety— و دافعِ دلتنگي و گذرانِ وقت را دستاویزِ خوبي

To help— کمک دادن

Crossness of men and things— کم خلقيِ اهل دنیا و لکدکوبِ زمانه

Care— اندوه Passions— هوسها

To compose— فرونشاندن Disappointment— ناکامي و مایوسي

To lay asleep— خوابانیدن Importance— قدر و اهمیت

In many quarters— در نواحيِ مختلفه

To appreciate— مهم داشتن (use 3 pl pr per tense act voice)

Among the hardy Norsemen runes &c —

ملت شجاعِ اهلِ نروج (اسکاندناویا) اشعارِ گوژي (منظوماتِ روني) را معجزه مي پنداشتند —

There is an Arabic proverb— عرب گویند

A wise man's day— یک روز از ایّامِ حیاتِ خردمندي

A fool's life— همهٔ عمرِ ابلهی را Is worth— مي ارزد

Ink— مرکب Martyr— شهید

Confucius is said to have been a man &c —

کنگ فوتزي را مي گویند که مردي بود علم جو که در تحصیلِ علم غذا را فراموش کردي —

And in the joy of his attainment forget his sorrows &c —

و آتشِ سوداي خود را بآبِ شادماني حصل و کمالِ خود فرو نشاندي —

And did not even perceive that old age is coming on—

و نیز ملتفت نشدي که پیري در مي آید —

36 Some examples of the word ' تن ' are (i) بار ده نفر را یک تن بدوش نمی تواند گیرد one person cannot bear on his shoulder the load of ten persons , فی الفور سر و تنی آراستم at once I adorned my head and body , تن و جانِ من قربانِ خدّام درگاه تو my body and soul be the sacrifice for the servants of thy threshold (ii) بچوب خوردن تن در نخواهم داد I will not submit myself to be flogged , تن بدین کارها در نمی دهد she will not yield herself to such affairs , ناچار بدان قضا و تن برضا دادم helplessly I resigned myself to fate (iii) زندگی درویشان تنبلی و تن آسانی است the life of darvishes consists in idleness and ease , باغبانش کاهل و تن آسانی باشد its gardener seems to be lazy and fond of ease

37 Examples illustrating the uses of the word ' آتش ' are (i) نخست آتشِ عشقم فرو نشست at first the fire of my love subsided , آتشِ دل را بدین فرو نشانم I will quench the fire of my heart with this , برای اطفای آتشِ غضب شاهزاده for cooling down the fire of the Prince's wrath , دودِ آتشِ دلِ من اندکی فروکش کرد the smoke of the fire of my heart some-what subsided (ii) شاه آتش گرفته است the king has flown into a rage , مالِ پادشاه را آتش زده اند they have cousumed the king's property , جگرم آتش گرفت my liver has caught fire

SECTION III

Idioms & Proverbs

Aback—The boy was taken aback (کودک دست و پا را گم کرد)

Abandon—He abandoned this business (بکلی این کار را بهلد)
The man abandoned himself to his fate (آن مرد تن بقضا داد)
He abandoned himself to pleasure (مستغرق لذات شد)
He is an abandoned wretch (ملعونی بیشرم و [illegible])

Abide—You must abide by the rules (باید التزام قواعد بنمائی)
He abided by his word (بر قول خود ثابت بود) Abide your time (فرصت نگاهدار) They abided by their promise (وعدهٔ خود را وفا کردند) Whatever may happen, we will abide by thee (هرچه باداباد ما با تو هستیم)

About—Come to-morrow about this time (فردا قریب بهمین وقت بیا)
He was about to weep (در صدد گریه کردن شد). You are about to retire (می خواهی بر گردی)

Account—If it is lost, you must account for it (اگر گم شود در باره‌اش جوابده باشی) They did not hold him of any account (او را حسابی نه بردند) It is a thing of no account (ناچیز است) Can you account for it (می توانی حسابش را ملی کنی)? He gave her an account of his adventures (سرگذشتهای خود را برای او نقل کرد) I will not go to him on any account (مطلقاً پیش وی نمی روم)

Acquainted—You must immediately become acquainted with him (باید بی درنگ یک دقیقه با او طرح آشنائی اندازی) He

became acquainted with the state of things (ار چگونگي حال صاحب شد) Art thou well-acquainted with the roads (ايا ار راهها بخوبي خبرداري) ?

Acknowledge—We acknowledge your superiority (بيش از ... ايراله داريم) They acknowledged him as their rightful lord (تسليم نمودند كه آقاي حقيقي خود شان است) He acknowledged all the benefits received from my father (مرحمتهاي پدرم را بجا آورد)

Act—Is this young man acting a part (مگر اين جوان دو روئي ميكند) ? How many times have your bowels acted (چند بار اطلاق شده است) ? He was caught in the very act of stealing (در عينِ حالتِ دزديدن گرفتارش كردند) They acted up to their profession (قولِ خود را وفا نمودند)

Affair—Your affair is settled (امرِ ترا صورتِ انجام داده اند) This is my affair (پاي من ا ت) Affairs are prospering (كار و بار رونق دارد)

After—After all he was a mere mortal (باوجودِ آن بيش از انساني نبود) The people came one after another (مردمان پشتِ سرِ يكديگر آمدند) You are after my heart (اروري دلم قوي) He takes after his father (شباهت بپدر دارد) After a storm comes a calm (هر بدي خوبي دارد - در پسِ هر گريه آخر خنده ايست) The new city was named after him (شهرِ نو را بنامِ وي ... نمودند)

Air—She gives herself airs (دماغش بالا ست) Such false notions are in the air all over Persia (در ايران هرجا كه ميروي بس چنين خيالاتِ باطله است) The air of this place agrees

with me (آب و هواي اينجا بمن سازگاري مي كند). Building castles in the air (كوتاه دست بلند خيال)

All—It is all silk (ابريشم خالص است) He is all in all in his department (در ادارهٔ خود مرد همه كاره است) You are all in all to me (لختِ جگرم هستي) He loves them with all his heart (با دل و جان از ايشان محبت دارد) Whether he comes or not, it is all one to me (خواه بيايد خواه نيايد بمن هيچ فرقي ندارد) It is all along of you that I am successful (كامرانيم بواسطهٔ تست) All is well that ends well (خير آنست كه عاقبه اش بخير است) All that glitters is not gold (مرمري سنگي ديگر و الماس جوهري ديگر)

Alone—He came all alone (تك و تنها بيامد) I let it alone (از اين فكر گذشت كردم) Let me alone (دست از من بردار)

Amiss—He has done nothing amiss (هيچ غلط نكرده است) Do not take it amiss (در خاطرِ شما بد نگيرد)

Apple—As an only son he is the apple of my eye (فرزندِ يگانهٔ من مردمكِ ديدهٔ من است) He will upset the apple-cart (كاري كه من هنر است)

Arm—They walked up to the house together arm in arm (دست بدست باهم گام زنان تا بخانه ر ، ،) She keeps me at arm's length (با من مواصلتِ زياد ناگوار دارد) He received me with open arms (بازوي گشاده مرا پذيرفت) In a moment the troops were under arms (سربازان فوراً صفِ جنگ بپا داد)

Armour—There is no armour against fate (تيرِ تقدير از سپرِ (تدبير) رد نمي گردد).

Ass—Do not make an ass of thyself (خود را بجاي خر مگذار)

Avoid—He avoided by subterfuge (حود را نکوچهٔ علی چپ رد) I avoid the society of women (من ار طایفهٔ نسوان متوحشم)

Awkward—He is very awkward (شتر بر بردباں است)

Back—They backed him up in every thing (در هر کاري که بر آں د ... معاونتش نمودند) You won't back out (ایا رنانت را برگردانی) ? But here he is, on his back (اما اینک آنرا ببیں پشت بر رمیں افتاده) He has given us the back (مارا ول کرده است) He turned his back upon you (نتو پشت کرد)

Bad—One is as bad as the other (نصرهٔ کم ار نعداد ... ررد برادر شغال است) She has gone to the bad (بد در آمده است) There was much bad blood between them (مابیں ایشاں حیلي کینه ورزي و معاصمه بود)

Be—Be slow but sure (دیر گیر و سخت گیر) You are not up to this (مرغي که انجیر مي حورد نوکش کج است) This is not for him (او مرغ این انجیر نیست) What is that to you (نتوچه) ?

Bear—He sells the skin before the bear is killed (آهوي نا گرفته پوستش می فروشد) Every one present bore me out (همه حاضرین قولم را تقویت کردند) Bear this in mind (نخاطرت بیار)

Beat—I beat up his quarters (سررده داحل حانه اش شدم) That beats the Dutch (جاي حیرت است) He was beaten to death (کوتک رده ناهلاکتش رسانیدند) He soon beat a retreat (برودي واپس حرید) The enemy was beaten off (دشمں را برگردانیدند) I am beating my brains out to find out the cause (حیرانم که سببش چیست) This is literally beating the air (حرف نحرف حد و حهد عبث است)

Bed—He has been confined to his bed by illness (ناحوش

بستري است) As you make your bed so you must lie on it (هرچه ميکاري ميدروي) This life of ours is not a bed of roses [اين زندگي ما گل ه بهار (بي خار) نيست]

Bell—Who will bell the cat (که زنگ بگردن گربه خواهد بست) ? The Italians have carried away the bell from all other nations (اهل ايطالي از سائر هم ملکتان گوي بردند)

Belong—It formerly belonged to him (پيشتر از آن او بود) He does not belong to the army (داخل قشون نيست). This key belongs to that box (اين کليد مال آن صندوق است) He belongs to Persia (از ايرانست)

Best—I did my best to please him (هرچه مقدورم کوشيدم که رضاش بيايد) He thought it best to go away (مصلحت خود دانست که برود). You had the best of the argument yesterday (در مباحثهٔ ديروز در غالب آمده بودي) He will make the best of the matter (بهر طوري ه غالب مي شود) One must make the best of it one can (خير خود را بايد زائد از خود بايد کرد) The nurse made the best of her way to the adjoining room (دايه ابتکي و خيلي داخل اطاق پهلوئي گرديد). I put the best face I could upon it (تلخش را شيرين خوردم)

Better—He is getting better (روز بروز مرضش بهتر مي شود) It is so much the better for you (بلکه بهتر شما ست) I know him better (خيال او را من بهتر مي دانم) I got the better of my disease (مرض خودم را بزير آوردم) He were better dead (مردن بهتر بودي) !

Between—The poor man is between two fires (بيچاره از هردو جانب در خطر مقيم است) Between ourselves, he is a great fool

(حرف محرمانه نگویم خرِ باتش دید است)

Bird—A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush (نسیه نقد به از صد نسیه - گنجشک نقد به از نقرهٔ خام) Birds of a feather flock together (دیوانه چو دیوانه ببیند خوشش آید) To kill two birds with one stone (چه خوش بود که برآید بیک کرشمه دو کار) Far birds have fine feathers (آواز دهل شنیدن از دور خوش است) As if you are a bird of passage (گویا که پرندِ جهان گرد هستی) It is a bird's-eye-view of his whole life (چشم اندازِ همه زندگیش اینست)

Bit—I shall have to tell her a bit of my mind (لازم است اورا او سرزنش خوبی بکنم) He is not a bit sorry (او مطلقاً افسوس نمیخورد)

Bitter—Bitter is patience, but its fruit is sweet (صبر تلخ است ولیکن برِ شیرین دارد) Truth is bitter (سخن راست تلخ می باشد)

Black—I am looked upon as a black sheep (مرا ننگِ خاندان می نگرند) The pot calling the kettle black (خود نصیحت دیگران را نصیحت - دیگ بدیگ میگوید که تهٔ تو سیاه است) Here is his name in black and white (این اسم اوست روی قرطاس رقم زده)

Blind—He is blind (دیدهٔ کاوور دارد) It is a mere blind (محض تزویر است) The blind leading the blind (خفته را خفته کي کند بیدار) How blind you are to your own interests (در خیرِ خودت چه بي بصیرت هستی)

Blood—His blood was up (بغیر بیامد) He is a prince of the blood (شهریاري در نسلش است) Blood is thicker than water (نژاد قویتر است از آشنائي) They did it in cold blood (دیده و دانسته آنرا کردند) I made his blood creep (از ترس و بیم دلش درهم و برهم شد)

Bold—I make bold to warn you (جسارت میکنم که ترا ملتفت بسازم)
He came in as bold as brass (با چشم سفید داخل شد)

Bone—This town was the bone of contention between these two monarchs (این شهر مابین این دو شهریار استخوان منازع فیه بود)
I have got a bone to pick with you for this indifference (بسبب این غفلت از تو گله می دارم) He makes no bones of his dislike of the natives (نفرتیکه نسبت به بومیان دارد آشکارا بروز می دهد) It is nearly all bone (همه اش استخوان است)
What is bred in the bone will come out in the flesh (آنچه در استخوان پرورده است در گوشت سر خواهد زد)

Book—This does not suit my book (این کار ترتیباتی چشم من نباشد) I was very much in his good books (خیلی منظور لطفش بودم) He is in your black books (از من مکدر هستی)
The man was brought to book for it (بنابرین آنمرد را مقصر قلم دادند)

Bottom—He was a kind-hearted man at bottom (در اصل مردی بود نیک دل) He is at the bottom of this disturbance [او منشای (محرک) این فساد است] I am pleased with him from the bottom of my heart (از صمیم قلبم از وی خرسند هستم) He got to the bottom of the matter (اصل حرف را دریافتی زیر کار افتاد)

Bound—He went beyond his bounds (از حد بیرون رفت تعدی نمود) Their joy knew no bounds (بهجت بر بهجت افزود)

Break—The party then broke up (پس حاضرین از هم پاشیدند)
She completely broke down at this news (از شنیدن این خبر دلش بس فرو شد) Such unusual labour caused him to break down (از جهت مشقت فوق العاده تعطیلی شدیدی در ساختش

پدید آمد) He has broken off with me (از بنده رو گردان شده
است) I will not break the ice (من هرگز رشتهٔ سخن را نمي كنم) The robbers broke in upon the caravan (دزدان بر سرِ کاروان ریختند) The plague broke out all over the town (وبا در تمامي شهر سر زد)

Breath—I ran 'till I was out of breath (اینقدر دویدم که نفسم تنگ شد) He muttered something under the breath (او زیرِ لب چیزي نالید) This news completely took away her breath (این خبرِ وحشت آثر در حیرتش نیانداخت)

Bring—Bring me a revolver (براي بنده تپانچهٔ بیاورید) These adverse circumstances brought into play all his genius (این همه حالاتِ ناموافق هوا و زکاوتش را کاملهٔ بحرکت آورد) I will bring him round (علاجش بدستِ من است) The merchant brought up the orphan child (تاجر بچهٔ یتیم را پرورش نمود) Bring the cattle together (گاو گله را جمع کن) They are willing to bring about this alliance (مي خواهند این معاهده را برپا نمایند) Every sentence of his brought down the house (بر هر فقرهٔ که بزبان آورد صداي آفرین از هر سو بلند شد)

Bull—They took the bull by the horns (با شاخِ گاو در افتادند)
This is a cock and bull story (حکایتِ بي معنی است)

Burn—He burned the candle at both ends (قوّتِ خودش را دوگانه تلف مي ساخت) A burned child dreads the fire (مار گزیده از ریسمان مي ترسد)

Bush—Good wine needs no bush (ميِ پاک را حاجتِ تاک نیست)
One beats the bush, and another catches the game (کوه را فرهاد کند و لعل را پرویز یافت)

Business—Business is business (حساب حساب است کاکا برادر) Go about your business (برو پی کارِ خودت) I see he means business (می‌بینم قصدِ واقعی دارد) He is a man of business (او شخصی است کارکن و کاردان) What business have I (چه حق دارم)? This is no business of his (باو دخل ندارد) His last illness has done the business for him (مرضِ آخرینش کارِ او را تمام کرد)

By—By this he might have been dead (در این اثنا فوت شده باشد) I will be there by all means (بهر صورت بشود در آنجا می‌آیم) Let by-gones be by-gones (آب دنگر کار خرد گذشته را صلوات آنچه را بعلیا گذشت آنچه گذشت) His name has become a by word among the people for uprightness of conduct (عرفی پاک نفسی و راستی اسمش ورد زبانها گشته است)

Call—You shall call upon him without loss of time (هرچه زودتر اورا ببینید) Call a carriage for me (یک کالسکه برایم حاضر بکن) It is a long time since you called (مدتیست که جای شما خالی بود) I called him to account (مسؤلش کردم) The blind man called down a blessing upon her (نابینا دعای خیرش کرد) This letter does not call for an answer (این کاغذ حاجتِ جواب ندارد). His article called forth a host of rejoinders (مقاله اش جوابها بکثرت در آورد) He called his elder brother names (نسبت به برادرِ بزرگِ خویش زبانِ درازی کرد) This sight called up the memory of that patriotic prince (این منظر یادِ آن شاهزادهٔ وطن پرست را بر خواطرِ ما تازه کرد)

Candle—The game is not worth the candle (حاصل بتحصیل نمی ارزد). He cannot hold a candle to me (نمی تواند بگردِ من برسد)

Care—I do not care to do it (در بندش نیستم) Nobody cares him (کلاهش پشم ندارد) I do not care a pin for him (بچشم من بقدرِ پرِ کاهی نمی آید) He is very careless as to dress (در بابِ لباسِ خودش هیچ فکری ندارد)

Carry—Money generally carries the day (زر بر سرِ فولاد نهی نرم شود) The change of air carried him off (تبدیلِ هوا [illegible] فوتِ او گردید) The management of the firm was carried on by him (ادارهٔ آن شرکت را او کرد) He did not live to carry out the reform (در تکمیلِ اصلاح حیاتش وفا نکرد) They carried their point triumphantly (در حصولِ مقصدِ خویش ظافرالمرام شدند) I was carried away by my own feelings (جوشِ دلم بیخودم گردانید) To carry coals to Newcastle (زیرهٔ بکرمان بردن و لعل ببدخشان آوردن) He will never carry this out (او هرگز پیِ اینکار نمی رود)

Cat—He very nearly let the cat out of the bag [نزدیک بود که سر پوش از روی کار بردارد (طشت از بام افتد)] The cat is out of the bag ([illegible] را شده است) When the cat is away, the mice are at play (جشنِ موش در نبودنِ گربه است) Yesterday it rained cats and dogs (دیروز بارانِ شدید شد) She has made a cat's paw of you ([illegible] را گول زده است - ترا خرش کرد) One must see which way the cat jumps (مقصودش را باید داد) A cat always dreams of mice (شتر در خواب بیند پنبه دانه)

Catch—A drowning man will catch at a straw (غرق شده را پشتی کاه بس است) He was afraid of catching an infection (می ترسید ناخوشی نگیرد) I must catch the train (لا بدم که بگاری راه آهن برسم) He has caught a Tartar (با خرس در جوال رفته)

Chance—Take your chance when you can (اين گوي و اين ميدان) Chances are against him (قرائن بر خلافش است) He has not the ghost of a chance (هيچ امید براي او نيست)

Character—Write it in characters of gold (آنرا باب زر نويس) It is not quite in character (معنی نامناسب است) He is a man without force of character (او مرد سست است)

Chicken—He is no chicken (بچهٔ شيرخوار نيست) He counted his chickens before they were hatched (مسجد نرسيده كفش را كند)

Chip—Chips of one block (اين خانه همه آفتابست)

Clean—The offender made a clean breast of all that he had done (مقصّر بر كردهٔ خود هرچه بود تمام را اقرار نمود) The slave has shown a clean pair of heels to his master (غلام از آقاي لعنتي ماهر خود فرار كرد) I am clean out (ندارم هيچ پول در دستم كلاشلاف) A new broom sweeps clean (غلام نو تيز دو)

Clear—Every body is clearing out (هركس كنار مي كشد) He cleared an immense profit (منافع بي اندازه بدست آورد) It is as clear as noon-day sun (اظهر من الشمس است) The coast is clear (هيچ جاي خطر نيست)

Cloud—Now-a-days he is in the clouds [امروز ها برج در هوا مي سازد (ملتبس خيال مي بافد)] His name was under a cloud (به نام و مرد ملامت بود) Every cloud has a silver lining (سعادتي كه هرچه سخت در باشد در وسي بود اش وعلى دارد) It is cloudy (هوا گرفته است)

Cock—That cock won't fight (سرش نداره) A cock is always bold on its own dunghill (هر سگي كه در در كلد در كوچهٔ خود شير)

عزاں است) It is a sad house where the hen crows louder than the cock (حہ ہیري نیاید ار آں حانداں کہ بانگِ حروس آید ار ماکیاں)

Come—How has it come about (چگونہ روي دادہ است) ? How came she by that light (آں چراعرا نچہ طور بد ... آورد) ? We came across a bear (نا حرسي در حوردیم) She soon came round (زود نحال آمد) Coming events cast their shadows beforehand (سالي کہ نکوست ار نہارش پیدا) When I came to myself, I saw nobody there (چوں نہوش آمدم هیچ کسي را در آنحا ندیدم) His carriage came to grief in that lonely spot (در آنحاي دور ار آنادي کالسکہ اش نہم حورد) Your letter came to hand yesterday morning (مرقومۂ آنحناب دیرور صنح ریارت شد) This event never came to light (این واقعہ هرگر مکشوف نگردید) More unlikely things have come to pass (واقعاتِ عیر محتمل‌تر نوقوع آمدہ است) After a good many apologies, he came to the point (نعد ار عذر حواهيِ نسیار مدّعاي حویش را اطهار نمود) They at last came to terms (آحرش ناهم ساحتند)

Command—You may command my purse (هرچہ پول دارم نکارِ شما حاصر است) You have only to command, I obey (فرماں ار شما و اطاعت ار ننده) He was placed in command of the whole army (همہ عساکر را ریرِ فرمانش کردند)

Commit—He committed to memory the whole of the Shahnama (تمام شاهنامہ را نحفط در آورد) . He commits unseemly actions (... مي رند) Do not oblige me to commit such a vile act (مرا نریں مدار کہ چنیں فعلِ قنیح ار مں صادر شود)

Common—It is a thing in common between him and me

(رجوع مسلوک في العين او زمن البلس) This event is quite out of the common (این واقعه سراسر غیر معمول است) They all made common cause against him (همگی ایشان برخلاف او دست یکی کردند)

Cook—If you should happen to be wrong my goose is cooked (اگر اتفاقا هیچ سهوی کنم مرده ام بیکار) Too many cooks spoil the broth (خانه که دو کدبانو باشد خاک تا زانو باشد)

Count—To count chickens before they are hatched (جوجه در علم ناس مطهر آب ندیده موزه را پا کنید) You may count upon me for pecuniary help (برای امداد مالی من نظر دارید)

Countenance—He was out of countenance (لیس آنچنانکه بود لکس روانکاه بود) He must be kept in countenance or he will fail (با او مدارا باید کرد ورنه بر نمی آید) I kept my countenance the whole time (سراسر از خنده خود داری کردم) Never did I countenance his conduct (رفتارش را هرگز نپسندیدم) You put him out of countenance by your question (او را در شرمسار کرد)

Credit—He gives credit where credit is due (تصدیق بجا می کند) The remainder is on credit (باقی نسیه است) He has lost credit (از درجهٔ اعتبار ساقط شد) You give him more credit than he claims (بیشتر از آنکه منتظر است)

Cry—There is no use crying over spilt milk (سیل برآید که هرچه برود برود) Much cry but little wool (جو فروشی و گندم نمائی) She is a girl much cried up (دختریست بسیار ستایش شده) He was cried down wherever he went (هر جا که می رفت استخفافش کردند)

Cup His cup is full (طرفش لبریز شده). He is always in his cups (همواره در پیمودن ساغر است) It filled up the cup of his misery (جام مصیبت وي را لبریز ساخت) .

Cure—Prevention is better than cure (علاج واقعه پیش از وقوع باید کرد) What cannot be cured must be endured (از تقدیرات قضائي نمي توان گریخت) His wounds were cured very soon (خیلي زود زخمهایش درمان پذیرفت)

Cut—My uncle cut me off with a shilling (عموم مرا بي میراث ساخت) I cut him short at the very beginning of his harangue (در عین آغازِ زهر خوانيِ او قطعِ سخنش نمودم) He would cut his best friend, if misfortune befell him (اگر دوست یکرنگش در حالتِ گرفتاري ببیند اورا بیر محلِ خرد نمي گذارد) Cut your coat according to your cloth (جامه به اندازهٔ تن باید دوخت - پا را باندازهٔ گلیم دراز کن) Diamond cuts diamond (سنگ - گ - را میشکند) I was awfully cut up (دلم یکبارگي شکست)

Daggers—He looked daggers at me (از چشم سفیدي و تندي بمن تیر تیر نگاه کرد) I am at daggers drawn with them (بایشان مخاصمتِ شدید مي دارم)

Dark—The darkest hour is before the dawn (امید ها در ناامیدیست) He did not keep me in the dark for long (تا دیر مرا از این خبر بي اطلاع نگذاشت) I will keep dark about it (ابدا هرگز بروز نمي دهم) It got dark (هوا تاریک شد) He looks only at the dark side of things (امور را صرف از جاي بدي ملاحظه مي کند)

Day What sort of a day is it (هوا چه طور است) ? It is a fine day (هوا خوب است) Every dog has his day (آخر گذرِ پوست

بدباطلی است) His days are numbered (ایامِ حیاتش بس معدودی باقیست) A penny laid for a rainy day (روز سفید از برای روزِ سیاه) The cry of 'free education' carried the day (صدای "تعلیم بی اجرت" بر همه غالب آمد)

Dead—This rule is a dead letter (این قانون باطل است) Yesterday we found him dead drunk (دیروز او را سیاه مست یافتم) Dead men tell no tales (از سرِ بریده صدا در نمی آید) Is she dead or not? Yes, as a nail in the door (مُرده یا نه؟ آری مثلِ سنگ). It was done in the dead of night (وسطِ شب کلفته این کار را کردند).

Death—Death is the brother of sleep (خواب برادر مرگ است) Every parting is an image of death (هر مفارقتی را شباهتی به مرگ است) He was done to death by the robbers (قزاقان خونش ریختند) We were weary to death with waiting (چشم براهِ انتظار خیلی خسته و کوفته بودیم) You have been at death's door I hear (شنیدم که نزدیک بود ناخوشی ترا تا درِ مرگ رساند).

Devil—He is a perfect little devil (شیطانِ تمامیست) Go to the devil (جهنم برو) ! The Devil is not so black as he is painted (شیطان بآن زشتی که تصویرش میکنند نیست) Needs must when the devil drives (لزوم ملکِ رکابِ ابلیس است) I am between the Devil and the deep sea (میانهٔ شیطان و جهنم گرفتارم) He even gave the devil his due (حقِ هر بی هنر را نیز بیفراید) Speak of the Devil and he will appear (نام سگ گیری چوب در دست بگیر) He is well known as the Devil himself (از کفرِ ابلیس مشهورتر است)

Die—The die is cast (ما کشتی در آب انداختیم) He is dying by inches (آهسته آهسته راهی عدم).

Difference—A difference of opinion occurred (اختلاف آرا شد) No one could tell the difference (هیچ فرق نتوان داد) There is a wide difference between this and that (بین تفاوت راه از کجاست تا به کجا) What difference does it make (چه توفیر میکند) ? There is no difference (تفاوت ندارد)

Do—Who is to do up your room every day (اطاقت را هر روز که باید پاک و نظیف بردارد) In Rome do as the Romans do (جاي گل گل باش و جاي خار خار) Do as you would be done by (آنچه بر خود نه پسندي در دیگران مپسند) This will never do (این هرگز بکار کسي نمي خورد) I could not do away with him (سرش را زیر آب نتوان کرد) Why did you do this (چرا این کار اقدام کردي) ? What has it to do with me (بمن چه دخل دارد) ? He cannot do anything without me (دستش زیر سنگ من است) This will do for him (کارش را تباه خواهد کرد) Your brother is well-to-do (برادرت خوشگذران و فارغ البال است)

Dog A grateful dog is better than an ungrateful man (سگ حق شناس به از آدم ناسپاس) He is a dog in the manger (نه خود خورد نه بکس دهد - گنده کند بسگ دهد) Every dog has its day (هرکسي را پنج روز نوبت اوست) Give a dog a bad name and it accounts for everything (اسم سگ را بد نگذاري بد شود) It is going to the dogs (دراه بربادي افتاده است)

Draw—The time of departure drew on rapidly (وقت رحلت به سرعت نزدیک شد) He drew rein at the door (اسب خود را مقابل در را ایستاند) I should like to draw him out (مي خواهم در سر میلش بیارم که بي باکانه خیال خودش را بروز بدهد) It was a drawn battle (جنگ مساوي بود) Do you mean to draw

back from your promise (آیا می خواهی از وعدهٔ خود منکر می شوی) ?

Drop—I shall drop in any day I can (روزی که بتوانم می آیم تلنگ مثلی) (بعد شما مشرف می شم) He dropped off very soon (زود بخواب رفت) Let the matter drop (پا پی مشو) It is merely a drop in the bucket of these misfortunes (در مقابل بلاهای مصیبت قطره است) He never took a drop too much (در خوردن شراب هرگز از حد اعتدال تجاوز نمی کرد)

Due—The mail is due (پست رسیدنی است) The money I due (پول الان ادا شدنی است). To what is it due (از چه رو حاصل است)? It is all due to this (همه از سبب این است) I ay him the honour due to him (او را احترام لازم ملاحظه می نمایم) He gave to every one his due (با هر کس مطابق حق او رفتار کرد)

Ear—Give ear unto my words (بحرف من گوش کن) He set us by the ears (ما را با هم بجنگ انداخت) We must not always believe our ears (مردم بخیال شان هر چه شنیده اند) Walls have ears (دیوار هم گوش دارد) He has the ear of the kin (شاه بسخن او التفات می کند)

Early—Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise (سحرخیزی سلامتی توانگری) We started early in the morning (اول صبح براه افتادیم) He lost his mother early in life (در اوایل عمر مادرش دنیا را وداع کرد) These are the early fruits of the season (اینها نوبر فصل است)

Eat—He has eaten too much (تخمه کرده است) He will not eat his word (زبانش را بر نمی گرداند) Why are you eating out your own heart (خون جگرت را چرا می خوری) ?

Elbow—Success depends on elbow grease (میروری نتیجهٔ عرق ریعتش است) There is no elbow room (حاي ارنج نیست) Nobody will believe in a man out at elbows (هیچ کس مردی در شکسته را باور نمی دارد)

End—What will be the end thereof (نتیجه اش چه خواهد بود) ? The end crowns the work (خاتمهٔ این کار بخوبی خواهد گذشت) My patience is at an end (صبرم تمام شد) I served him for years on end (پی در پی سالها خدمتش کردم) He struggled hard to make both ends meet (جدّ و جهد تمام می کرد که مداخل ... به اخراجاتش بقدر کفایت باشد)

Err—To err is human to forgive Divine (رخردان خطا و از بزرگان عطا)

Evil—Evil got, evil spent (مال حرام بود بجای حرام رفت) He thinks evil of me (از بنده بد گمان است)

Eye—Keep an eye on him (نگاهش کن - مواظبش کن) What the eye does not see the heart does not grieve for (آنچه چشم نمی بیند دل غم آنرا نمی خورد) She has a good eye to the main chance (پول خودش را بخوبی نگاه می دارد)

Face—There was not a long face to be seen (هیچ روی ناکدر در آنجا دیده نمی شد) The old man set his face against this proposal (پیره مرد بخلاف این مسئله ... حتی تعرّض نمود) He made faces at me (روی خودش را برمن پیچانید) I accused him face to face (روبرویش اورا متهم قلم دادم) He put on a good face on his loss (نقصان خود را آسان داشت) It faces the sea (رو بدریا بود)

Fair—Fair words cost nothing (اگر نان گندمی نیست آخر زبان مردمی)

(سزاوار اسکیرا و ش شاد است) He is fair game (را چه شد) You are on the fair way to make a fortune (فالاکت در روش افتاده) The horse bids fair to win the race (احتمال کلّي است که اين اسب در بدرو) Fair and softly goes far in a day (شيرين زباني و ميانه روي موجب ... است)

Fall He rapidly fell away (باسرعت راه تباهي را مي پيمود) You have fallen away from me (از من دست بردار شده) His jokes fell flat on the assembly (شوخيهاي او بر حاضرين هيچ اثري نداشت) His estate then fell into the family of Mirzas (ملکش بعد از آن بدست ميرزايان بيفتاد) Have you ever fallen in with any Yankee (ابا کاهي با يکي دنياي نيم خورده)? He fell off in his thirst for knowledge (اشتياق ملمس کم شد). The leaves fell off (برگ درختها بخاک افتاد) He fell at his feet (رو پايش افتاد) He has fallen off in his studies (ترقّي معکوس کرده است در درس) He has fallen in love (بعشق مبتلا شد) He fell out with me for nothing (بي هيچ وجه باعث بنزاع درآمد) All things fell out right (همه بکام من شد) This scheme would fall through (اين تدبيررا ترک ميکنند) The soldiers fell upon the carriage (سربازان بر سر کالسکه ريختند) She has fallen little short of a mother in affection towards me (بمن مهرمادري مي دارد) The Jumna falls into the Ganges at Allahabad (رود جمنا در الهآباد برود گنگ يکي مي شود)

Far—He is far from handsome (حاشا و کلا خوشگل نيست) How far is it from here to there (از اينجا تا آنجا چه قدر مسافت است)? I had no idea he was so far gone in love (هيچ گمانم نبود که کارش چنان کار آمده است) It is a far cry from Paris to

Kairwan (از پاریس تا قیروان خیلي مسافت دارد) He is by far the best friend I have (بدرجهٔ اولی بهترین دوستانم او ست)

Fast—He plays fast and loose (هم پشت و هم روست است) My watch is fast (ساعتم تند است) This colour is fast (این رنگ ثابت است)

Favour—I ask a favour of you (طلب مرحمتی مي نمایم) They escaped by favour of darkness (تاریکي شب را غنیمت شمرده فرار کردند) He tried to curry favour with the minister (باتملق و چرب‌زباني بکوشید که وزیر را مایل خود بکند) The new servant found favour with the master (چاکر نو مطبوع آقاي خودش واقع شد) He is in favour of me (بطرف من است) I enjoyed great favour with the king (مورد التفات خاص شاه بودم)

Feather—You have feathered your nest (گلیم خود را از آب کشیدهٔ) This is a feather in my cap (باعث فخر من این است) The prince appeared in full feathers (شاهزاده بالباس مکمل آراسته و با تجملات شاهي بپیراسته نمودار شد) It was no use flying a white feather (خود را کم دل و کم زهره قلم دادن بکار من نمي خورد)

Field—You cannot gain the prize as long as your brother is in the field (مادامیکه برادرت در میدان باشد تو نمي تواني انعام را ببري) He held the field against all opposition (با همه مخالفت برجاي خود برقرار ماند)

Fine—It is a fine sum (مال معقول است) The weather was very fine (هوا بسیار صاف بود) The pen is too fine (قلم پر نازک است - قلم پر نرمي است) This is a fine child (این طفل مثل پارهٔ ماه است) In fine the servant was sent for a carriage (آخرالامر ملازم را بفرستادند که کالسکهٔ بیارد)

Finger—He has the whole list of names at his finger's end (فهرست اسماء را بر زبان دارد) He loves to put his finger in every pie (خوش مي داشت كه پاي درميان هر كاري بگذارد) He has now arrived at his finger's end (الان عملي تمام و لوحه گرديده است)

Fish—No body cries stinking fish (كس نگويد كه دوغ من ترش است) *One fish spoils the whole tank* (چو از قومي يكي بيدانشي كرد نه كه را منزلت ماند نه مه را) All is fish that comes to his net (هرچه آيد بپيش نگذارد درويش)

Fire—He fired up at this (پس از آن آتش گرفتم) The fire is out (آتش خاموش شده است) He wont set the Thames on fire (دريا را نتواند آتش زد) There is no smoke without fire (تا نباشد چيزكي مردم نگويند چيزها) Out of the frying pan to the fire (از باران در ناودان گريخت از خاك برخاستن و بخاكستر نشستن)

Flesh—Flesh pots do not count with him (بديگ سيري را بخاطر نمي گذارد) They used to mortify the flesh (ضبط نفس مي كردند) It is more than flesh and blood can bear (از تحمّل نفس گذشته است) Our flesh creeps with fear (از خوف و هراس موي ما راست مي ايستد)

Flint—He skins a flint (مگس را در هوا رگ مي زند) I will fix his flint for him (تازيانه اش مي زنم) He's a skin flint (ماس كور است آب از دستش نمي چكد)

Follow—He follows the profession of a doctor (كار طبابت مي كند) The night follows the day (شب در پي روز مي آيد) I will follow out whatever you enjoin (هرچه بفرمائيد از آن قرار رفتار مي كنم) They followed the bier to the grave (تا لب گور

تشییع جنازه کردند) All these misfortunes followed in succession (این همه حوادث متواتر رو داد) It follows that he is cruel (نتیجه این است که ظالم است) He has no following (پیرو ندارد - کسی گوش بحرفش نمی کند) Luck follows luck (تا هر که آید از چپ و راست آید)

Food—He became food for fishes (در ته آب غرق شد) We all shall be food for warms (ما همه باید قوت کرم شویم) What is one man's food is another man's poison (آنچه یکیرا نوش است دیگریرا نیش است)

Fool—He is a fool (بالاخانه اش کم است) Fools step in where angels fear to tread (هر که کشتیگر نیست نا ش سردار است) You are a fool for your pains (زحمت بیهوده می کشی) He used to live in a fool's paradise (خود را دلخوش خود در عالم بالا می پنداشت) She made an utter fool of you (سراسر گولت زد) He fools away his time (وقت خودش را ضائع می کند)

Foot—Now he has one foot in the grave (حالا پایش لب گور آمده) I have fallen on my feet (دولت غیر مترقبه قرین من شد)

Force—This law has no force (این قانون عمل ندارد) The new regulations will come into force from next year (از سال آینده قواعد نو ترویج خواهد یافت) They took the fort by force (آن قلعه را بزور گرفتند) We forced him to do it (در این مجبورش کردیم)

Fore-lock—Take time by the fore-lock (فرصت وقت را از دست مده)

Fortune—Fortune is against me (بخت من برگشته می شود) Fortune is fickle (دنیا همیشه یک قرار نمی ماند) Fortune was favourable to me (طالع من سازگار آمد)

Friend—Friends are plenty when the purse is full (هرکجا چشمهٔ بود شیرین مردم و مرغ و مور گرد آیند) Prosperity makes friend and adversity tries them (در آب در زندان بکار آیند که بر سفره * ان هم دوست نمایند) A friend in need is a friend indeed (دوست آن باشد که گیرد دست دوست در پریشان حالی و درماندگی) It is well to have friends (کثرة همساده پایها دارد)

Full—The cup was full to the brim with milk (جام از شیر لبریز بود) He made payment in full of all his debts (قرض هاي خود را بالتمام ادا نمود) The new market is in full swing (بازار نو سرگرم و پرهنگامه است) He came along full swin (با آزادگي تمام پيش بيامد)

Gain—He is gaining ground day by day (روز بروز رو به ترقّي است) No gains without pains (تا بروي رنج گنج ميسّر نمي شود نيس بي نيس حاصل نمي شود) What shall we gain thereby (ازين چه حاصل)? I have gained him over to my opinion (اورا متّفق الراي ساخته ام). You have gained our good wishes (مطبوع خواطر ما واقع شدهٔ)

Game—I am not game for this (من اهلِ اين كار نيستم) He followed the same game (با توي كلس كرد) She made a game of me (كلاهم را برداشت)

Get—The dust gets into my eyes (گرد توي چشمم داخل مي شود) How will you get along with this affair (تو كجا و اين كار كجا)? He could not get what he wished (دلدانس كار نكرد) They get on very well together (حالشان خيلي گرم است) He has got his punishment (بسزاش رسيد) How is the patient been getting along (احوال مريض چه طور است)? Where can

I get at a doctor (حکیمي را کجا دستیاب کنم)? Every man should try to get on in life (هر شخص باید بکوشد احوالِ خودش را ترقّي بدهد) I cannot get on with her (با من مناسبت ندارد) He get up this affair (او این امر را ترتیب داد) She never thoroughly got over that illness (از آن علالت هرگز شفاي کلّي نیافت) He will get off (او خلاص خواهد شد) I can get on without this (احتیاج این ندارم)

Ghost He gave up the ghost this morning (امروز صبح جان بحق تسلیم نمود)

Gift—Do not look a gift horse in the mouth (مفت را چه گفت) She has the gift of music (طبیعتش مناسبت بموسیقي دارد)

Give—Give me justice (بدادم برس) He gave himself out for a merchant (خود را تاجر قلم داد) He had to give up his house to me (مجبور شد که خانهٔ خودش را بمن واگذارد) I have given up keeping late at night (شب بیداري را ترک کردم) He gave himself up for lost (خود را مرده انگاشت). His family has given him up (قوم و خویشش از وي دست بردار شدند) The chair gave way under him (صندلي زیرِ بارش نشکست)

Glass—He has taken a glass too much (جرعهٔ زیاد کشیده است) They that live in glass houses should not throw stones (خانهٔ پر شیشه را سنگي بس است)

Glut—There was a glut in the market (بازار از هر چیز زیاد پر بود)

Go—Day and night things go on in this way (روز و شب همین آش است و همین کاسه) You may go (مرخصي) Let him go (ولش کن) It will go hard with me (براي من خیلي دشوار خواهد گذشت) His words went home to my heart (سخنهایش

در دلِ من جاي كرده) It is easier to go with the stream than against it (رفتن به سيل آسانتر است از حركت بخلافِ آب) It goes without saying (بياني را چه بيان) He would not go out of his way to help me (براي امدادم بخود هيچ تكلف روا نمي دارد) I am ready to go all lengths in this good cause (در اين كارِ خير هيچ چيز را دريغ ندارم) Otherwise I should have gone to the bad (ورنه كارِ من تباه خواهد شد) They won t go back on their word (هرگز قولِ خود را فسخ نمي كنند) The wedding went off with great splendour (عروسي با خيلي تجمّل و رونق انجام پذيرفت) It is gone out of late (درين زمانهاي نزديك از رواج افتاده است)

Good—You can do as seems good to you (مختاريد) It is very good on your part (اين كرم است در آن است از شما) It is too good to last (بهتر از اينكه بپايد) You must take the good with the bad (خوب و بد بالاي هم است) This is rather too much of a good thing (حلوا بسيار خوردن دلسيري مي آرد) She is as good as gold (همه تن نيك و بارزا است مثلِ زرِ خالص) He is going away for good (جهتِ همه وقت رخصت مي شود) He is as good as his word (قولش نقش بر سنگ است)

Goose—Every one thinks his own geese swans (هركس را فرزندِ خويش بجمال نمايد و عقلِ خود بكمال) To kill the poet is to kill the goose with the golden egg (شاعر كشتن در معني مرغِ زرين تخم كشتن است)

Grace—Having said grace he paused for an instant (بركت خواسته مدتي توقّف كرد) I have got into his good graces

(مورد التفات و عنایت مخصوصهٔ او گردیدم) Let it be done with a good grace (از روی صفا آنرا بکنید)

Grain—He does not like to work against the grain (خوشش نمی آید که کاری بخلاف طبیعت خود بکند) I took these stories with a grain of salt (این افسانه‌ها را با قید و شرط پذیرفتم)

Grass—The steed dies while the grass is growing (برگ میبر بهار می آید - تا تریاق از عراق برسد مار گزیده می مرد) He allowed no grass to grow under his feet (فی الفور دست بکار شد)

Greek—When Greek meets Greek then comes the tug of war (آهن به آهن کوفتن چه رنگ پیدا می شود) It was Greek to me (ازش هیچ نفهمیدم)

Ground The soldiers have broken ground (سربازان بهم خود بطور نمایان تقدم قدم نهادند) I did visibly gain ground (تقدم نمودم) The enemy has lost ground (دشمن پس پا شدند) He held his ground amongst them (میان ایشان قدما خود را در قرار داشت) I stood my ground (دندان قدما نگاهداشتم)

Guard—We were always on our guard (همیشه تحرز نمودیم) I put him on guard against you (اورا متنبه ساختم که از تو دور کشی نماید) They were caught off their guard (دست پاچه شدند)

Habit—Habit is second nature (عادت طبیعت ثانویه است) He habited himself in costly dress (لباس قیمتی دربر کرد) I am in the habit of rising early in the morning (عادتم اینست که همیشه صبح زود برمی خیزم)

Hair—That's her head to a hair (عینهو تمثیل سرش است) Don't let us be splitting hairs (در جزئیات بحث در تیر نمائیم) The

p[illegible]dler and the tank ate l th[illegible] a hair (ده فریس و سگر) (هر دو سگ رود برابر سئال اند)

Half—The first blow is half the [illegible] (ابتدا لسلی برابرل) H[illegible] go your a nature to the l[illegible] wh[illegible] you were half [illegible] orte (در ناآم ام صدتي ا مثل درستي فرصرب غرده اس مسلماي را اصلي كرده) ... Well known a half-con (... باصحاب رسانند) (قصد بشي)

Hand—Hand and glove (جهان دو ماس) H[illegible] is a known hand (آرک باري دهد ...) I will take the matter into my own hand (سر خودم را بگیرم) He [illegible] the work in hand (... کار و مشکل است) He kept the farm in hand for three years (... سه سال آن جاره مشکل ماند) I [illegible] at first hand (من بار رسید آنها رتقم) The books were sold out of hand (آنها دست بدست بفروش رفت) I[illegible] the carria[illegible] be finished out of hand (فردم المسئله را صورت تمام دهند) He made money hand over hand (سرچند و تعجیل پول پیدا کرد) He is a great hand at all talk (بسیار آنها ... گوی است) We must carry things now with a much higher hand (الان باید بطور تسلط ... کارها می روم) He has gained the upper hand in Persia (در ایران تسلط یافت) The general mass of the inhabitants live from hand to mouth (... آنها آنچه النصاب می کند همه آنها را بفروع می دهند) One must fight for his own hand (برای ... باید جد و جهد بکند) He shouted to the neighbours to lend him a hand (همسایگان را صدا می کرد تا ...) They worked hand in hand with us (با ما دست یکی کرده مشغول کار)

بوددد) No, sir, I can make no hand of it (حیر آقا نمي توانم) I give you my hand upon that (بریش من) توهیدش دکام) براپش قول واثق مي دهم) . He has some unsaleable articles on hand (ددمش چددي ار احناس ناقید ت که بعروش نمي رود) They held their hands from this matter (ار مداخلهٔ ایں امر دست درآن ماسد شریر دست) کشیددد) Lay hands on the villain (درآن ماسد شریر دست دراندار) It is admitted on all hands (همه جا مقرّ درآمدد) My hands are full (من هرار تا کار دارم)

Handle—We give a handle to suspicion by keeping this horse (اگرایں اسپ را نداریم محلّ بدگماني حواهیم گشت) Handle the matter with great care (با توجّهٔ تام به آن امر بپردارید) He has got a handle to his name (دُم گاو در دستش است)

Hard—He is as hard as a flint (دلش ار سنگ ساحته شده) I got him hard and fast (اورا سخت و محکم بگرفتم) An elephant has killed several persons hard by (دم دست فیلي چندیں اشخاص را کشت) During those days he was very hard up (در آن رورها در تنگي و سختي بود)

Harm—It will be no harm (باکي نیست) There would be no harm (صرر ندارد) Do what harm you can, I am not afraid of you (هرچه ار دستت بر آید کوتاهي مکن) . Harm think, harm find (بدي بیند هرکه بدي حوید) Harm watch, harm catch (چاه کن را چاه در پیش)

Haste—The more haste, the less speed (هرچه تعجیل بیشتر تعطیل زیادتر - هرچه زودتر بخواهي دیرتر مي شود) Haste is from Satan (تعجیل کارِ شیطان است) Haste is waste (مستعجل بسر در آید)

Have—Let us have at it (بیائید آنرا بیازمائیم) I had it out

with him for his negligence (ازوي سبب بي اعتنائيش را مطالبه نمودم) Have a care (زنهار باهوش باش) He had nothing for it but to disperse his army (بجز پراكنده ساختن لشكرش هيچ چاره نداشت) He had like to have been killed more than once (بسيار از يك دفعه در آن بود كه بهلاكت برسد)

Hawk—He does not know a hawk from a hand saw (هرّ ز برّ را از هم فرق نمي كند)

Hay—Make hay while the sun shines (تا تنور گرم است نان توان بست) You are making hay of my things (اسباب مرا تاراج مي كنيد)

Head—Under what head does this go (اين از كدام مقوله است) He has got an old head upon young shoulders (سر پير بر دوش جوان دارد) His father had a head on his shoulder (پدرش سر پُر عقل بر دوش داشت) Suddenly I took it into my head to travel to Persia (ناگاه هواي مسافرت ايران در سرم افتاد) I couldn't make head nor tail of what you said (آنچه گفتي هيچ فهم نشد) He is over head and ears in debt (از سرتا پا مقروض است) I gave my horse the head (من اسب خود را سر دادم) The plot came to a head (نقشه بكمال رسيد) I kept my head above water (خود را از ورطهٔ هلكي محفوظ داشتم)

Heart—He has no heart to do it (دل آن كار را ندارد) Faint heart never won fair lady (هر كه از مرغ مي ترسد ارزن نمي كارد) What the heart thinks the tongue speaks (آنچه در دل است به گفته مي آيد) They could not take heart again after such a signal defeat (بعد از چنين شكست فاش دل ايشان باز بر جا نيامد)

I did not take to heart what you said (آنچه گفتي در دلم جا ندادم) It broke his heart (از غم آن جان بحق تسليم نمود) In my heart of hearts I fear him (در پردهٔ از وي مي ترسم) He went into this scheme heart and soul (از دل و جان پي اين تدبير شد) My heart sank into my boots (جگرم دهم آمد - دلم از جا رفت) It is a work after my own heart (اين كاريست كه دلم مي خواهد)

Heaven—He raised himself to the seventh heaven (بعرش پرواز ميكرد) Good heavens what a wonderful man he is (خدايا چه طور عجيب و غريب مرد -)

Heel—The lad took to his heels (طفل فرار نمود) . I am out at heels (در حالت تنگي و ناداريم) One woe doth tread upon another's heels (هر غم در عقبش دگري دارد كه برآن پاگذارده مي آيد) My patience has shown its heels to my politeness (صبرم مروتم را خيرباد گفته) He showed a light pair of heels (از سگ بگريخت)

Help—There is no help for it (چارهٔ نيست - كار از دست رفته است). He helped him to succeed in his business (پهلو بدي داد بار) I could not help laughing (از خندهٔ خود داري نتوانستم كرد) I can not help going (بايد بروم) God helps those who help themselves (همت مردان مدد خدا)

Hen—We will never see him sell his hens on a rainy day (هرگزش نيابيم كه متاع خويش را بي منافع بفروش بدهد). The doctor was a hen-pecked husband (حكيم شوهري بود مذكور اعي)

High—It descends from on high (از طرف بالا بزير مي آيد) It is now high time (وقت آمدهٔ است - وقت خوبي است) . He has

such high notions (فكرهايش عالي بلند است) He works at high pressure (عملي مالم بكار ؟ است) From high words they passed into blows ? (از سخنهاي درشت به مشت باد كرده و دست انجاميد) She was quite on the high rope (اظهار خود فروشي مي كرد) He carried his mission with a high band (ماموريت خويش را با كمال سختي تمام بپرداخت)

Hit—He has hit the right nail on the head (هر چه را از بلند گفت) What a happy hit (چه اتفاق خوشي) ! It was the great hit of the year (اتفاق بزرگ امسال اين بود) He hit upon this expedient (خيالش باين تمهيد بر خورد) He hit off the expression of his face (خويش باري آمد كه اظهار نارم شد)

Hobby—It was his hobby (منظور دلش اين بود) Every man has his hobby horse (هركس بخيال خويش خبطي دارد)

Hold—Either dance, or hold the candle (اگر لدمسي تلمي مي بكراش) I held forth his cleverness before the public (پيش مجموعهٔ مردم در تعريف زيركيش خيلي حرف زدم) If you love me hold not off (اگر با من العلي داري دور كسي مكن) The trade held on for many years (آن تجارت سالهاي بسيار مداومت كرد) The rule holds good with respect to him (آن قاعده در بارهٔ او سزاوار است)

Home—Make yourself at home (منزل خود بدان غريبي مكن) I did not find you at home (محروم از ديدن برگشتم) On this road I am more at home than in the city (در اين راه من آسوده خاطرترم تا در شهر) He brought home his arguments (برهاني خود را دلنشين ساخت) He is at home to every one (هركس را اجازهٔ ملاقاتش است) Covetousness brings nothing

home (هامع را سه حرفست و هرسه تهي) Charity begins at home (اوّل حويش بعده درويش)

Honesty Honesty is the best policy (تا مار راست نشود بسوراخ نرود) Honesty is its own reward (نيكي كن و بدريا انداز)

Honour—Where is your honour (آبرويت كو) ? He had the honour of speaking to the Prince (با كمال احترام باشاهزاده حرف زد) I had the honour of an interview with the Prime-minister (بشرف ملاقات صدر اعظم مشرّف شدم) Do me the honour of dining with me (از تناول شام با بنده مشرّفم فرمائيد) That is a point of honour with me (من به آن دارم) The honours rested with him (تشريفات باو قرار گرفت)

Horn—He drew in his horns (جلوگيري نمود) On the horns of a dilemma (گويم مشكل نگويم مشكل) His horn is exalted (او باد كرده است) They pulled in their horns (تن در دادند)

Horse—He broke forth in a horse-laugh (قهقهٔ رشتي زد) He took horse to the lake of Geneva (سوي درياچهٔ ژنو سواره رفت) It is two-horse power (زورِ دو اسب بعار دارد) He seems to be on his high horse (چشمش جاى را نمي بيند) He rides the high horse (دماغ مي فروشد)

Host—He reckoned without his host (انجام كار عاقبت نديده در مشكلات افتاد) He is a host in himself (بتنهائي خود فرزانهٔ روزگار است)

Hour—He came at the eleventh hour (در وقتِ آخرين بيامد) Even at the eleventh hour it is better to learn wisdom (هيچ وقت براي كسب آموختن دير نيست) I always keep good hours (هميشه سرِ وقت زود بخانه مراجعت مي نمايم) In an evil hour he undertook the business (در ساعتِ نحس عزيمتِ آن كار نمود).

House—Have you ever been to his house (هيچ منزل او رفته ايد) We called at the house (سري بخانهٔ زديم) Every man's house is his own castle (كاشانهٔ هر كس حصن سلطاني اوست) My mother no longer keeps house but lives with her widowed sister (مادرم ديگر دستگاه خاص ندارد، حالا خانهٔ خواهر بيوهٔ خود مي باشد)

Humour—He is not in the humour (حالت ندارد) He is in a good humour (دماغش چاق است) He was a man of good humour (خوش خوي بود)

Hunger—He hungered after fame (آرزوي اشتهار داشت، گرسنهٔ شهرت بود) Hunger is the best sauce (گرسنگي نان تهي را خورش است)

Hurry—You are in a great hurry (بسيار عجله داري) Hurry no man's cattle (هر كس را بكار خود بگذار)

Idea—He put false ideas in his head (باد بيهوده در سرش انداخت) It is a far fetched idea (خيال دور و دراز است) He has not two ideas in his head (هر از بر نمي داند) He abandoned the idea of travel (از خيال سفر افتاد) What an idea (عجب فكري است)? What is your idea (فكرت چه چيز است)

Idle—It is an idle excuse (بهانه است) He is as idle as a home soldier (تنبل مادرزاد است) He is idling away his time (مگس مي زند، عمرش را بيهوده مي گذراند) He talks idly (حرف مفت مي زند) An idle man is the devil's play fellow (بيكار يار شيطان است)

Imagination—His work is full of imagination (در كارش ابتكاري هست) It passes imagination (بخيال نمي آيد) His imagination is fertile (خيالش وسعت دارد)

Important—The news was very important (خبر بسیار مهمی بود) It had an important bearing on his fate (مدخلیت عظیمی بعاقبت او داشت) He is a man of importance (خیلی آدم است)

Impudence—I like your impudence (خوب جرئت کردید) With the most brazen impudence (پوست را بروی خود کشیده)

In—Do you know the ins and outs of these business (مگر راه و چاه این کار را بدانی)? In for a penny, in for a pound (آب که از سر گذشت چه یک نیزه چه صد نیزه) I will deny your statement in toto (تمامی عرض حالت را تکذیب می کنم)

Incline—It was inclined to be fine (هوا رو بخوبی شد) It inclines towards red (بسرخی زند) He is inclined to be naughty (بنای نادرستی دارد)

Incognito—The king used to travel incognito (آن ملک عادت تبدیل گردی داشت)

Indebted—I am indebted to you (من زیر منت شما هستم) I am indebted to him for three rupees (من سه روپیه باو بده کارم)

Inflamed—He used inflamed language (حرف ملامت زد) His throat is inflamed (گلوش باد کرده است) He inflamed his mind with evil passions (قلبش را باروهای بد ملتهب ساخت)

Influence—He has no influence (حمایش رنگی ندارد) He had great influence at court (در دربار تسلط تامی داشت)

Insult—It is adding insult to injury (عذر بدتر از گناه) He was much insulted (خیلی خفیف شد)

Interest—He acted in the interests of the public (موافق منافع عمومیهٔ وطن حرکت کرد) I take no interest in this matter (از این کار خوشم نمی آید) This does not interest the public

Keep—Keep it there (گیرش کن) His name has been kept (اسمش هنوز در افواهِ مردم جاریست) He would keep abreast of the time (با زمانه پهلو بپهلو رفتار می نمود) Keep an eye on that man (آنمرد را تحتِ نظر بدار) I would keep in with him, if I were you (اگر بجای شما من می بودم هرگز روابطِ دوستیش را قطع نمی کردم) To keep body and soul together we put a morsel into her mouth (تا جان در قالب باشد در دهانش لقمهٔ نگذاشتیم) Keep this affair dark (این امر را مخفی بدار) I always kept this in view (اینرا همیشه نصبِ نظر می داشتم). He kept on speaking (مسلسل سخن می راند)

Keeping—It is in keeping with the scenery around (با فضای پیرامونش هم‌آهنگ است) I left the shop in his keeping (دکان را بتوسطِ او نگذاشتم)

Key Patience and perseverance is the key to success (صبر و تحمّل مفتاحِ کارهاست)

Kick—He kicked over the traces (بی پروائی نمود - اعتنا نکرد). They kicked up a dust (معرکه نمودند) Kicking against the pricks is mere foolishness (روی خار لگد زدن کارِ ابلهان است)

Kidney—They are all of a kidney (همهٔ ایشان یک طبیعت دارند - همه یکدل اند)

Kill—Kill or cure (یا بکش یا چارهٔ کن) One colour kills the other (یک رنگ دیگری را میکشد).

Knock—He is not going to knock under (در صددِ آن نیست که سر در زیرِ اطاعت نیارد) I feel knocked up with my day's work (از مشقّتِ روزانه ام خود را خسته و خراب می یابم) He knocked me up out of my bed (بر درِ خانه‌ام دستک زده مرا از رختِ خواب

بیدار کرد) I have knocked about the world a good deal (در اطراف جهان خیلي سرگردان بوده ام)

Know—He knows about the matter (مطلب مطلع است) I know his address (نشانی را بلدم) He knows every thing (سررشتهٔ کاملي دارد) She knows what she is about (ماهیت بین و دور اندیش است)

Knowledge—Knowledge is power (توانا بود هرکه دانا بود) Knowledge is the treasure of the mind (دل انسان را علم [illegible])

Land—The troops landed near Port Said (عساکر مهیب به بندر سعید بکنار آمدند) Now I see how the land lies ([illegible] حالت چگونه است) He made the land the sixth day after leaving Melbourne (از ملبورن گذشته در روز ششم صورت زمین بنظرش افتاد)

Large—It was large enough to hold two or three persons (بقدر جاي دو سه نفر بود) He was set at large (آزاد کردند). He is a gentleman at large (نه کاري دارد و نه شغلي روز همه روز تنبلي و تن آسانست)

Lark—What larks we had when we were boys (در ایام طفولیت چه شوخیها کردیم و چه بازیها نمودیم) When the sky falls we shall catch larks (اگر آسمان بزیر افتد قلبرو صید مي کنم)

Last—Let the cobbler stick to his last (کار هر بز نیست خرمن کوفتن) The food will last a week (آن خوراک براي یک هفته کفایت خواهد کرد)

Late—Better late than never (دیر بیائي از هرگز نیائي بهتر است دیر آید درست آید) It is too late to grieve when the chance is past (چون کار از دست رفت پشیماني چه سود) It is never too

late to mend (صد بار اگر توبه شکستی باز آ) It is rather late in the day to object now (اولاً حالا فرصتِ اعتراض از دست رفته)

Laugh Let him laugh who wins (خنده کسی رواست که می برد), How they must have laughed at you in their sleeves (در زیرِ لب شان بقو چه خنده‌ها زده باشند) I laughed off my failure (قصورِ خودم را در خنده پوشیدم)

Law—He will have the law of you (دستِ دیوانت می دهد) He took the law in his own hands (بدستِ خودش حدّ جاری کرد)

Lay—They laid the meal on the table (روی میز سفره را پهن کردند) They laid their heads together (سر بسر هم نهادند - یکی میم می زند دیگری پرچین می کند - با یکدیگر مشورت کردند). He lustily laid about him (با جرأت تمامی به پیرامونِ خود زد و کوب کردن گرفت). I can not lay by anything from my income (نمی توانم از مداخلم هیچ پس انداز بکنم) It is easy to lay down the law to an ignorant neighbour (با همسایهٔ بی سواد با تمام و تصرّف حرف زدن آسان است) Lay it to thy heart (در دلت آنرا موازنهٔ سختی بکن) We laid her low in the grave (نعشاش بخاک سپردیم) They laid violent hands on him (جوش ریختند) He has been laid up with sickness since the first of this month (از غرّهٔ ماه ناخوش بستری است) You are laying it on (با کم و زیادش حرف می زنی)

Lead—You have led me a pretty dance all over the town (در تمامی شهر عقب مرا سرگردان نمودی) It leads to ruin (بهلاکت می برد). This road leads to Shiráz (این راه بشیراز می رود) We lead a life of poverty (عمر بسر می بریم در پریشانی و درماندگی). He led up to it in conversation (در صحبت بدان منجر کرد)

Leaf—I will take a leaf out of your book (آنچه از شما خورده ام بشما مي فروشم) He has turned over a new leaf (از سر نو زندگي مستقلي را نمود)

Leak—The secret leaked out (راز بروز شد) The ship sprung a leak (کشتي آب تو مي داد)

Least—The least you can do (ادنى كاري كه توانند كرد) At the least there are twelve (اقلا دوازده ۱۲ تا) The least said the soonest mended (كمتر سخن گويي زود در اصلاح امر مي شود)

Leave—He left off drinking (از خوردنِ شراب فراغت كرد) I leave that to you (من آنرا بشما وا مي گذارم) The fever left him (تبش [illegible] است) My son is left out in the cold (از پسرم غفلتِ كلّي ورزيدند) He left me in the lurch (مرا در ورطه بگذاشت)

Leg—He has not a leg to stand upon (اصلا اساس [illegible] كافي ندارد) A lie has no legs (دروغ را فروغ نيست) He is always on his legs ([illegible] در سرپاست) He is on his last legs (كار و بارش لب است در حالتِ خطر است)

Let—The house lets cheap (خانه كم كرايه مي دهد) Do not let it fall (زنهار كه نمي افتد) Let it alone (بگذار باشد) We can't let you off (نمي توانيم بگذاريم برود) He let this secret out (اين راز را بروز داد) He is gentle as a lamb when he is let alone (هرگاه كه كسي آزارش نرساند حلمِ بره دارد) He let go of the thief (از دزد دست برداشت)

Letter—He carried this out to the letter (حرف بحرف اين را مجرا داشت) It is against the letter of the law (خلافِ لفظي شريعت است)

Liberal—He is a liberal man (چشم و دلش پُر است) They studied the liberal arts (صنائع حرّیه و معارف ربیعه را آموختند)

Liberty—He is at liberty to go (مختار است که برود) Liberty sometimes becomes license (حرّیت بعضي اوقات رخصت بدکاري مي شود) . He is given full liberty (مطلق العنان کرده شد)

Lie—They forged lies against him (برایش بهتان کردند) As far as in me lies, I mean to support him (هرچه از دستم برآید مي خواهم دستگیریش بکنم) I gave him the lie direct (یک سر تکذیب قولش نمودم) These goods lay on my hands for months (این امتعه ماه ها بر دستم بود که فروخت نمي شود) Time lay heavy on my hands during your absence (در ایّامِ غیابِ تو اوقات برمن تلخ و گران مي گذشت)

Life—That picture has no life in it (آن صورت گیرندگی ندارد) He is the life and soul of the party (حیات و جانِ آن طائفه اوست) The old man is wearied of life (پیره مرد از زندگي بیزار شده است) The picture is exact to the life (این تصویر شبیه کامل است - این نقش از حقیقت سرِ موي تفاوت ندارد) He bears a charmed life (روئین تن است که هیچ ضرري به او نمي رسد)

Lift—Thou shalt lift up thy face unto God (بر خدا توکّل بکنید) Lift up the light of thy countenance upon us (نورِ وجهِ خود را بر ما فروزان گردان) Saul lifted up his voice and wept (سولش باوازِ بلند گریه هاي کرد) The fog lifted (مه برطرف شد)

Light—They brought a light repast (طعام مختصر حاضر کردند) I saw the light in course of that journey (من درآن راه از تنگناي عدم بفراخناي هستي قدم زدم) He made light of the

old man's tongue (گفتار پیر مرد را صرفِ فکر نمود) He sets light by his wife's notions (حماقتِ زنش را اهانت می نماید) He would never bring it to light (آنرا هرگز بمیدان نمی آرد) He belongs to the light fingered gentry (از زمرهٔ کیسه بران بر دست است) Lightly come, lightly go (هرچه زود آید دیر نپاید)

Like—I do not like this (میل به این ندارم   از این بدم می آید) He took what he liked best (آنچه دلش می خواست با خود گرفت) How do you like this country (این ولایت را چگونه دیدی) ? A lucky man may do as he likes (طالع اگر داری برو به پست بخواب)

Line—This is not in my line of business (من اهلِ این کار نیستم) It is hard lines (دیوارِ بلغ کرده است) This is out of his lines (این از دائرهٔ عملِ وی بیرون است) The town has been lined with troops (لشکر بر اطرافِ شهر نشانده اند)

Lion—He is the lion of the age (شیرِ زمان او محلِّ توجّهٔ خلق است) He got the lion's share (بخش زیاد را تا مساوی بهم رساند)

Listen—I am listening to you (گوشم با شما است) He does not listen to you (حرفِ شما را گوش نمی کند) Listen more and speak less (گوش دو تو دادند و زبانِ تو یکی)

Little—He is little more than a fool (همین احمق است) It is too little (کم می آید) Every little helps (هر کمی مددی می کند) Many a little makes a mickle (قطره قطره جمع گردد و آنگهی دریا شود) A little learning is a dangerous thing (نیم حکیم خطرهٔ جان نیم ملّا خطرهٔ ایمان) Who undertakes too much succeeds but little (دو هندوانه در یک بغل نگنجد)

Live—The ascetic lives on herbs (زاهد در سبزیجات زندگی می کند) He lived down the scandal (تهمت را گذراند) How many years have you lived here (چند سالست در اینجا هستی) ? If I live, I shall repay you in your own coin (اگر حیات باقی باشد ترا بسزای خود می رسانم)

Living—A living dog is better than a dead lion (سگ زنده بهتر از شیر مرده) Living is very dear now-a-days (در این روزها اسباب معیشت خیلی گران است)

Load—He has a load of trouble (بار زحمتی بر خود دارد) His speech was loaded with metaphors (سخنش پر از استعارات بود) The tree was loaded with fruits (درخت زیر بار ثمر بود) He was loaded with honour by the Shah (منتهای التفات از جانب شاه در حق او معمول و مبذول افتاد).

Lock—To lock the stable door after the steed is stolen (مشتی که بعد از جنگ یاد آید بر کلّهٔ خود باید زد)

Logger-heads—They fell to logger-heads with one another (بایکدیگر منازعت بر انداختند)

Long—The nights are long (شبها دراز است) It is not long since he went (خیلی وقت نیست که رفت). At the the long run these fellows never thrive (عاقبت چنین مردکه‌ها هرگز برخوردار نمی شوند) The long and the short of the matter is that I have lost this chance (خلاصهٔ کلام من این فرصت را از دست دادم).

Look—Look before you leap (اوّل اندیش و انگهی گفتار) His looks belie him (دروغ از چهرهٔ اش می بارد) She looks forty (بنظر چهل ساله می نماید) Which way a man goes the picture looks towards him (آدم هر طرف که می رود چشم صورت

بازرسی) We will go to look at it (برویم تماشاس بکنیم) He looks after the patient (مریض را خدمت میکند) I have to look sharp after her (باید از روی احتیاط اورا تحت نظر بدارم) She can look a misfortune in the face (چنان پردل است که می تواند کلیه بلایا را بی هراس و اغتشاش ازرحی نماند) She bade one of her servants look to the garden (یکی از نوکرهای خود را فرمان داد که گلشن را پرستاری نماید) That is your look-out (آن بر سر برست) Let every man look over his part (هرکس باید از تماشا حصهٔ مخصوص خود را بار دیگر بخواند) There is little use searching for him in this crowd it is like looking for a needle in a hay stack (دراین ازدحام بزرگ وی را جستن چنان بی سود می نماید که تلاش سوزن در انبار کاه) He looks at things through coloured spectacles (بچشم تعصب نگاه می کند) The children are all looking forward to your visit (بچه ها همه با کمال آرزو منتظر ملاقات شما ‖)

Lord—He lords it over the people (آقائه با قوم حرکت می کند)

Lose—They lost the day (شکست یافتند) I have lost the key (کلید را گم کرده ام) The salt has lost its savour (نمک بی مزه گشته) He lost his temper (کج خلق گردیده خشمناک شد) He loses his time in foolery (اوقات خود را در سفاهت برباد می دهد)

Loss—I was quite at a loss to see her there (اورا درآنجا دیده دست پاچه شده بودم) He suffered a dead loss by this transaction (دراین معامله خسارت کلی کشید)

Love—He loves fighting (از جنگ خوشش می آید) There is no love lost between them (از یکدیگر دوری می نمایند) Love a

labour's lost (کعچهٔ ردم کعچه ردم ۔ارا کو) Love is blind (عاشق کور مي باشد).

Low—He is a low fellow (بي پير است). He has a low estimate of this man (اين مرد را حقير مي شمرد) The sun is low in the horizon (آفتاب كم ارتفاعت در افق) His pulse is low (نبضِ او) His health is low (صحتش بهم خورده است)

Lump—There was a lump in my throat (گويا گلو گيرم كرده بود). He lumped in several things (چند چيزها را يک كلمه كرد)

Mad—He is mad after that girl (ديوانهٔ آن دختر است) The world is running mad after farce (همگي ساري ميلِ عريدي پيدا نموده اند)

Magnify He magnifies the difficulties of the enterprise (اشكالاتِ معامله را بزرگ مي سازد) Magnify thy lord (ربِ خود را حمد و ثنا بگو)

Main—In the main he was right (رو هم رفته حق بدستش بود) He pulled with might and main (با قوّت و قدرت هرچه داشت كشيد) He has an eye to the main chance only (نگاهش بس بترقّي دولت است)

Maintain—He maintains a large establishment (دستگاهِ بزرگي را ميگرداند) He maintains that he is right (ادعا مي نمايد كه حق با وي است) That argument cannot be maintained (اقامهٔ آن حرف محالست)

Make—This is not a good make (خوش تركيب نيست) The make of that boat is bad (ساختِ آن كشتي بد است) The tide makes fast (مد بسرعت در كار است) He made him submit

(او را ... آورد) He made him a judge (او را حاکم گردانید) It makes for one's advantage (بکار آمدن می خیزد) They made him take it (ویرا بستند) One can't make wax with rose water (در دمین هلنا قسمت نمی کند) One flower makes no spring (از یک گل بهار نمی شود) Poverty makes men poor spirited (اکثر عطایا الله روزه مرام ملتاوجه امتاوجه تعلیم) The master made at them (معلم بسوی ایشان دوید) I made as if I intended to linger (اظهار نمودم آیا هوسی ما ... دارم) He made away with himself (خود کشی کرد) Make your bread by honest means (با تقوی و پرهیزگاری لقمهٔ نانی بکف آر) He will soon make friends with you again (زود با ... دوست ...) All his old arrears were made good (همهٔ باقیات قدیم خود را نقد ادا شده مسدد برآمد) No one was powerful enough to make head against the free-booters (هیچ کس طاقت تاب آوردن با ... نداشت) He always made much of me (همیشه مرا ...) I began to feel a pain I knew not what to make of (درد غریبی حس نمودم که ... نمی دانم چیست) It is not every body who can make her out (هر کس و ناکس نمی تواند ... را دریابد) Try to make up for your absence (بکوش تلافی غیابت را بسازی) Make the best of a bad bargain (سکی را که ... برداشته ... و ...)

Man—He is not the man for me (او مرد من نیست) He is not much of a man at painting (در نقاشی خیلی دست ندارد) Man is mortal (انسان فانی است) Man proposes but God disposes (ما در چه خیالیم و فلک در چه خیال کارها خدا کرد ...) They were killed to a man (همه یک ... بی استثنائی ...)

(… ایشانرا گشاده) He was not a man of letters (صاحبِ تصانیف … نبود) Your brother was a mere man of the world (برادرِ … دنیا پرست بود) The new minister is a man of the world (وزیرِ نو مردی است کاردان و با تجربه)

Manage—I cannot manage without this (من بی این صورت کاری نمی توانم داد) How do they manage to live (چه طور گذران می کنند) ? He can not manage his wife (زنِ خود را نمی تواند مطیع گرداند) This business is under new management (این عمل تحت ادارهٔ …) The management of the matter was foolish (رتق و فتقِ آن امر روی حماقت می داد) Economy is not possible without management (بی … تدبیرِ امرِ خانه داری محال است)

Manner—This manner of life is wrong (این طور زندگی …) What manner of a man is he (چه طور آدمی …) ? Manners make the man (شرفِ انسان از ادب است)

Mare—Money makes the mare go (زر بر سرِ فولاد نهی نرم شود - … …) They have found a mare's nest (دل … موهوم … اند) .

Mark—We have missed our mark (تیرِ ما … خورد) He made his mark (علامتِ خود را یافت) That was quite out of the mark (آن نکتهٔ دور از نشان بود) He is a man of mark (علامهٔ عصر است) This paper seems to be beside the mark (این نوشته دور از نشان معلوم می نماید) Your book is up to the mark (کتابِ شما … میعار …)

Marvel—He is a perfect marvel (…) . Your sagacity is marvellous (نظرِ شما …)

Master—He is a master of his subject (استاد است در كار خود) You are a master of the art of painting (در نقاشي هنر كامل داري) He met his master (در مقابله با استادِ خود با استادش [illegible]) We mastered this book (بر مطالبِ اين كتاب دست يافتيم بر آمد). It was a master stroke of policy of his (هنر مخصوصِ او اين بود در سياست)

Matter—What is the matter (چه شده است) ? It is a matter of doubt (در اين سخن مي رود) Matters are serious (كار بجاي [illegible] كشيده است) It is a matter of consideration ([illegible] قابل نظر) This is a matter of course (اين حرف نيست) It was no greater matter ([illegible] مطلبي نبود)

Maxim—It is a maxim in politics (قاعده است در سياست) His maxim is always to tell the truth ([illegible] هر راست گفتن)

Mean—He means business (مقصدش عمل است) I have no means of doing it (من استطاعتِ كردنِ آنرا ندارم) The means thereto are there (وسائل بسوي آن موجود است) Gentle means are the best (زباني نرم [illegible] از [illegible] بيرون مي آرد) Come early by all means (بهر صورت زود بيا)

Measure—We measured sword with each other (با يكديگر شمشير [illegible]) He measured his length on the ground (بطولِ تن بزمين خورد). I measured strength with him (بازي در [illegible])

Meet—They went forth to meet the prince (به استقبالِ شاهزاده رفتند) I have met with adversity ([illegible] مبتلا گشتم) Extremes meet (نهايات ملاقي مي شوند)

Mend—This will not mend matters (اين اصلاحِ امور نخواهد نمود)

The weather is mending (هوا رو به بهتر نهاده است). He mended his manners (اطوارِ خود را درست کرد)

Mention—There were ten persons there, not to mention the attendants (ده نفر در آنجا بودند بغیر از خدماً) It is not mentioned in the text (در متن مسطور نیست)

Mess—What a mess he made of this business (این کار را تکلّی صائع کرد) ! Affairs were in a great mess (کارها درهم برهم بود) He messed this matter (او این کار را خراب کرد)

Method—There is method in his madness (دیوانگیش نظم دارد)

Might Might is right (زور پدرِ حساب است - حق بقدرِ قوّة) He is a mighty fool (بسیار احمق است) Do it with all thy might (باهمه دل و جانِ خودت اینرا انجام بده)

Mild—The weather is mild (هوا معتدل است) It got milder (ملائم ترشد) Draw it a little milder (افراط مکن)

Mill—Though the mills of God grind slowly, yet they grind exceedingly small (خدا دیرگیر و لیکن سخت گیر است)

Mince—He did not mince matter (مطلب را درهم نکرد) This meat minces well (این گوشت خوب قیمه می شود) She minces very much (حرکاتِ شیرین خرج می دهد) Don't mince your words (ململ زبانی مکن) The wolf made mince-meat of him (گرگ کوفته اش کرد)

Mind—He minds his own affairs (مشغولِ کارِ خود است) He does not mind (دل نمیدهد - گوشش پر است) Mind your P's and Q's (جزئیات را بپا - متوجّه خود باش) Never mind (عیب ندارد - پیوش مرو) Mind your eye (زنهار)

Mischief—The mischief of the matter is this (خرابیِ کار این است).

He played the mischief with my plans (مزاحمتهاي مرا منقلب ساخت)

Misfortune—It was his fault rather than his misfortune (از تقصیر بود نه از بدبختیش) Misfortune never comes single (آنچه از بلا ماند وبال بود یک لشد در شد)

Miss—We missed you (جاي شما خالي بود) I missed that observation (من آن مطلب را از دست دادم) I missed him on the road (در عرض راه او را گم کردم) He missed his aim (تيرش بهدف نرسيد)

Mite—A widow's mite (برگ سبز است تحفهٔ درويش)

Model—He is a model of virtue (او آيت تقوي است). He models his action according to the requirements of the case (اعمال خود را مراعاتِ مقتضاي حال ترتيب مي دهد)

Money—Money makes money (پول پول را پيدا مي كند) He is a money-making man (پول پيداكن است) He has no money (مفلس خالي است) Money makes the man (هرکه را زر در ترازوست زور در بازوست)

More—I have not a single word more to say (من يک كلمهٔ ديگر ندارم که بگويم) The more, the merrier (هرچه بيشتر باشد خوشتر مي شود) He is no more (فوت شده است) His anger increased more and more (غضبش بيشتر از بيشتر گرديد)

Mortal—This disease is mortal (اين مرض مهلک است). He is my mortal enemy (با من دشمن خونخوار است) It is a mortal affront (اين اهانتي ... است)

Moss—Rolling stones gather no moss (هيچ بر سنگ گرداني نرويد نبات زميني شوره سنبل بر نيارد)

Mother—It is extempore, from my mother-wit (ار هوش مادریم) You are still fresh from your mother's apron strings (هنور بوي شیر ار دهن مي آید)

Motion—He did this of his own motion (این را ار پیش حود کرد) He set the machine in motion (ماشین را در کار نهاد) The general put his army in motion (سرتیپ لشکر را رو براه کرد)

Mouth—With one mouth they spoke thus (متفقاً چنین گفتند - بیک ربان اطهار داشتند) The message was sent by word of mouth (پیغام را دربان قاصد فرستادند) Many have their mouths water at his gains (حاصلش را دیده آب ار دهان بسیار کسان جاري مي شود) They spoke by the mouth of their leader (ار ربان سردار حود سحن گفتند)

Much—Much ado about nothing (کوه کندن و موش در آوردن) Gentle or simple, they are much of a muchness (حواه مردمان نحیب حواه عوام الناس هردو یکي اند) He is much given to drink (او بسیار شارب الخمر است) He is not so much wrong as you (او بقدر شما در باطل نیست) Get as much as you can from an adversary (موي ار حرس کندن شغل است) He is too much for me (چارهٔ اورا نمي دارم) This is too much of a good thing (این پرحوب است که بپاید)

Name—He assumed the name of his grand-father (نام جدّ حودش را گرفت) It bears out its name (اسم با مسمّي است) Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord, thy God, in vain (بنام حداي ربّ ایل حود سوگند لاف محور).

Narrow—He narrowed the arguments to two points (مباحثه را بدو نقطه منتهي ساخت) He narrowly escaped death (چیري

(باقي نمانده بود که بميرد) Remember thy narrow home (منزل تنگ گور را یاد دار)

Nature—One touch of nature makes the whole world kin (دل بدل راه دارد) It became a second nature to him (عادت ثانویهٔ او است) The man was found in a state of nature (آن مرد را لخت مادرزاد یافتند)

Near—The nearer to church, the farther from grace (چراغ نزدیکي بلي خود را روشن نمي سازد) It was a near shave (نزدیکي بود) It is near here (درین نزدیکها ست) She was rather near (بسیار خسیس و لئیم بود)

Neat—Everything was as neat as a pin in the house (در خانه همهٔ چیزها مثل سنجاق لطیف و آراسته بود) He put it rather neatly (به خوبي گفت)

Necessary—It is a necessary of life (لازمهٔ زندگاني است) It does not make it necessary for others to believe it (مستلزم اعتقاد دیگران نیست) These are the necessities of the time (اینها لوازم زمان است) Necessity is the mother of invention (ضرورت اساس اختراع است)

Neck—He broke the neck of this affair (مشکل این کار را حل کرد) Neck or nothing (یا تن رسد بجانان یا جان ز تن برآید) Instantly on the neck of this disaster came the news of his sudden death (فوراً در عقب این حادثه خبر مرگ ناگهاني رسید)

Never—Never put off till to-morrow what you can do to-day (کار امروز را بفردا مگذار) Never say die (تا جان در قالب است هرگز ناامید مشو)

New—It is nothing new (تازگي ندارد) He is a new-comer

(تازه رس است) It must be something new (باید که چیزی تازه باشد)

Next—He paid me next to nothing (بیش از ناچیزی بمن نداد) You are next door to a brute (از بهایم کم نیست) These are the desires that lie next to my heart (اینست تمناهایم که نزد من عزیزتر از دل و جانم است)

Nick—You came in the very nick of time (تو بعینه در عین وقت آمدي) I have nicked this horse (دم این اسب را تیغچی کردم) Buy me some nick-nacks (برای من مزخرفاتِ چندی بخر) They nicknamed him (اورا نام زشت گذاشتند)

Nip—He nipped him on the row (بیشتر تنقی به وی زد) This revolt should be nipped in the bud (لازم است که این فتنه را در عینِ آغازش فرو نشانند)

No—No rose without a thorn (هرجا که گل است خار است یعنی که گل می خواهد باید منتِ خار بکشد) No pains, no gains (نابرده رنج گنج میسر نشود)

Nose—He leads him by the nose (بنصیحتش می رقصد) Why do you speak through the nose (چرا از دماغ حرف می زنی)? He pays for it through the nose (بدشواری از عهدهٔ آن بیرون خواهد آمد) The clerks are always with their noses at the grind-stone (میرزایان همیشه در کار سخت مشغول اند) He turns up his nose at every thing ancient (بر هر چیزی که قدیم باشد بچشم حقارت نگاه می کند) He put his nose into my affairs (در معاملاتِ من دستِ مداخلت دراز کرد) He could not see what passed under his very nose (کاری که زیر چشمش کردند آنرا دیدن نتوانست)

Not—He is not at all bashful (او مطلقاً خجالت نمي فهمد) Not to say that he is a fool (قطع نظر از اينكه احمق است)

Note—He is a man of note (او مرد خيلي معروف) I noted him down a fool (اورا احمق دانستم)

Nothing—It is a mere nothing (قابل نيست) It is nothing to you (تو كار نداري) That is nothing (سهل است) It is nothing but sand (محض ريگ است) Nothing venture nothing have (رنج نكشي تا بگنجي نرسي)

Notice—He took no notice of me (مرا محل نگذاشت) You have come into notice (روي كار آمدة) He is beneath my notice (مرا عار مي آيد از او)

Notion—I have no notion what happened (مرا اطلاع از آنچه واقع شده است نيست) I had no notion of this matter (من از اين امر هيچ خبر نداشتم) They gave him exalted notions of himself (باد زير بغلش انداختند)

Novelty—This is no novelty (اين غرابت ندارد) Novelty hath charms (تازگي دلكش است) These are the novelties of the season (اينها غرائب فصل است)

Oar—He put in his oar where he wasn t wanted (سر درمعاملي كه باو مربوط نبود سرها آورد) I put my oar in no man s boat (من دست بمعاملات هيچكس نميزنم / در كار هيچ كسي نگاه)

Object—I have nothing to object to (حرفي در مقابل ندارم) Have you any objection to this (هيچ ايرادي باين داريد) ? What objection have you to this speech (چه ايرادي به اين سخن داريد) ? There is no objection (عيب ندارد حرفي نيست) His conduct was very objectionable(رفتارش بسيار مورد ايراد بود)

Oblige—I am much obliged to you (منت بر گردنِ بنده دارند). He was obliged (درمانده بود - گردنش بار شد) It will add to the obligation (مزیدِ منت خواهد بود)

Observe—He was the observed of all observers (همهٔ بینندگان چشم بر وی دوخته) He took an astronomical observation (رصد بندی کرد) The rules were fully observed (بطورِ کمال استنباطِ قواعد شد)

Occasion—On occasion he was to act for himself (لازم بود که محلِّ ضرورت بصیرتِ خود عمل نماید) He took occasion to open the pocket-book (فرصت را غنیمت شمرده کتابچهٔ بغلی را بگشاد) Did you let the occasion slip (مگر فرصت را از دست دادی) ? There is no occasion for it (وجهی ندارد - راهی ندارد) They gave him occasion to speak vain things (تخمِ لق در دهانش انداختند)

Occupy—I occupied myself with the business (مشغولِ کار شدم) He is occupied in the affairs of Government (متوجهٔ امورات سرکار است) It occupies all his time (تمام وقتش را می گیرد)

Odds—He was at odds with all the festivity (با انبساط و شادمانی تماماً در اختلاف بود) What are the odds as long as you are happy (چه باک از غم چو عیشت برقرار است) ? He is by long odds the ablest of the candidates (تماماً قابلترینِ امیدواران است)

Odour—He was in bad odour with the chief (سردار ازوی بدگمان گردید) He died in the odour of sanctity (در عین شهرتِ تقوی و تقدس جهان را پدرود کرد)

Off—Be off with you (گم شو - ده برو) He is very well off (خیلی فارغ البال و خوشحال است) He studies off and on (تک تک درس

مي خواند). He had an off-hand manner of speaking (به آزادي و خاطرجمعي حرف مي زد) He got off the whole book by heart (تمامي كتاب را از بر كرد) He was off his head with excitement (از هيجان سر خود را گم كرده بود)

Offence—He is prone to take offence (او زود رنج است ؛ اندک عذري جرمي آيد) I hope no offence (اميد آنكه غلطي سرنزده باشد) He was offended (زير بدش خورده)

Offer—The opportunity offerred (فرصت دست داد) How much do you offer for this book (براي اين كتاب مي خواهي چند بدهي)

Office—The minister is now out of office (حالا وزير خارج از مأموريت است) He used his good offices for my sake (از براي مساعي جميله مبذول داشت)

Old—He is ten years old (ده سال دارد) I am twice as old as you (سن من دو مقابل سن شما است) How old are you (شما چند سال داريد) ? It is the old, old story (همان نقل سابق است)

Once—My watch is lost once for all (ساعتم گم شد بي آنكه بار ديگر بخريد) Once in a way I use to visit them (بطور ندرت بخدمت ايشان مشرف مي شوم) He told me this once and again (بارها بمن اينرا بگفت)

One—There is but one God (خدا يكي است) I shall send you the paper one of these days (عنقريب رساله را بشما ميفرستم) One vacancy a hundred applicants (يك عروس و صد گرنه يك انگور و صد زنبور يک گلو و صد بيمار) We are one too many for him (اگر او روباه است ما پدر روباهيم) I am at one with you (باشما يكدل هستم) One tale is good till another is told (تنها بپيش قاضي روي راضي آئي)

Open—This door opens into another (این در به اوطاقِ دیگر را می شود) He opened his mind to me (بمن رازِ دل را بگفت) I received him with open arms (از روي مودت و دلخوشي پذيرآئيش نمودم) His life is open as the day (زندگيش مثلِ روز روشن هويدا و نمايانست) There was no opening for him in England (کشادگي براي وي در انگلستان نشد)

Opinion—I have a poor opinion of him (رائي من در بارهٔ از ناقص است) They are unanimously of opinion (متفق الراي بودند) Opinions differ (در رايها فرق مي باشد) He is not a man of opinion (در راي ثابت نيست)

Opposition—These two things are in opposition (این دو چیز ضدِ يکديگر اند) He offered him opposition (از وي مخالفت ورزيد)

Oracle—He is a perfect oracle (داناي کاملِ عصر است)

Order—The order has been given (حکم داده شده است - فرمايش رفته است) It is the order of the day (دستورِ وقت اين است) I did this in order to please you (براي خاطرِ شما اين کار را کردم) I ordered three loaves (فرمايش براي سه نان دادم) Order him to come (تدعي بکن بيايد)

Otherwise—Enquire about the truth or otherwise of this state of affairs (صحت و عدمِ صحتِ اين کيفيت را دريابد) It is otherwise (برخلافِ آن است)

Out—There you are out (در آنجا سهو کردهٔ) He is out of it (از خارج است از آن شخص کم) She had it out with her brother (با برادرِ خود مجادله و مجاجه نمود) It was much out of the way (خيلي دور از حسبِ معمول بود) I am out of sorts (احوالم مشوش است) It is quite out of place (کليةً نامناسب است) You are not

out of the wood yet (هنوز از بلا بسلامت نجستي) Out of sight, out of mind (از دل برود هرآنكه از ديده برفت از ديده دور از دل دور) He has no out let for his energies (مخرجي براي قواي خويش ندارد) The out-look was gloomy (ـ آبالِ كارم انگيزي نمود) It was an out rage against good manners (ظلمي بود بر اخلاق حسنه) This coat of his will out wear two of those (اين قبا بيش از دو تاي آنها دوام مي كند)

Over—It is over (برفت). There were three rupees over (سه روپيه زياد آمد) He is over head and ears in debt (زير بار بدهٔ است) He over-acted his part (تكليفِ خود را بيش از واجب بعمل آورد) The sky became overcast (ابرهاي سياه بلند شد) He over-did it (پُر هوس كرد) The money is over-due (موعدِ پول سر آمده است) Beware of being over-heard (ديوار هم گوش دارد) Sleep over-powered me (خواب بر من مستولي شد) He over ruled the objection (اعتراض را رد كرد) He over shot the remark (تيرش از نشاني دركذشت) He over-stepped the mark (از حدّ تجاوز كرد) You over taxed your strength (قوتِ خود را زياده استعمال نموده ايد) He is over nice (مشكل پسندي مينمايد)

Owe—It is all owing to this (همه از پي اينست) He owes it to me that he got this (بواسطهٔ من است كه اينرا يافت)

Own—I have no house of my own (منزل از خودم ندارم) He did own up to this (معترفِ اين شد)

Pack—It is a pack of lies (مشتي دروغ است) They are a beggarly pack (گروهِ مساكيني) Now, be packing (حالا بارت را درست بكن)

Pain—He is painfully stupid (سخت احمق است) I took no pains for it (در بند این نبودم)

Palate—He has no palate for fruit (ذوقِ میوه ندارد) Reproof does not suit his palate (عتاب موافقِ مذاقش نیست)

Pale—He is not within the pale of civilization (در دائرهٔ تمدّن داخل نیست) He turned pale (رنگش را باخت)

Palm—He palmed this off as genuine (این را چنان قلم داد که گویا صحیح است) This bears the palm of all his victories (این از همهٔ نصرتهای او سبقت برده است) It was in the palmy days of his victory (در ایّام طفرانجام فتحش این بود)

Parade—He made a parade of his learning (اظهارِ فضیلت بسیار نمود) You make a great parade of yourself (خیلی اظهارِ تشخّص می نمائی)

Parallel—There is no parallel between this and that (حدّ مساوی میانِ این و آن نیست) This is without parallel (این بی مثل است).

Part—If there has been any negligence on my part, please, pardon it (اگر تقصیری از بنده سر زده باشد از روی نوازش آنرا معاف فرمائید) It was a part of the performance (جزِ آن کار بود).
He played an important part of the matter (جزِ مهم این کار را وی صورت داد) He took that in good part (آنرا پذیرفت).
I took his part (طرف داریش نمودم). He is a man of parts (مردی قابل است)

Partial—He is very partial to wine (خیلی شراب دوست است)
This was partially true (این فی الجمله راست بود)

Particle—He has not a particle of sense in his head (یک ذرّه هوش در سرش نیست)

Particular—He is a very strict in this particular (درایں باب بر من خیلی سخت گیر هست) He is particular as to his dress (مقید لباسِ خود است) He is a very particular person (ماه بکري حساسی مي گذارد)

Pass—Things have come to a pretty pass (کار و بار بد است) It passed off well (خوش گذشت) The opportunity passed (فرصت از دست رفت) We passed our days in making merry (در نشاط و سرور صرفِ اوقات شد) A cannon-ball passed through it (گلولهٔ توپ [illegible] گذر کرد) It passed by ten votes to nine (در مقابلِ ده رأي به نه رأي بگذرانده شد) It is passed (جاري شد) I passed by many things (از چیزهاي بسیار در گذشتم) He passed himself off as a sick merchant (خود را تاجرِ بیمار قلم داد) This passed off soon (این بزودي گذشت) I passed over his misconduct (از تقصیرش را عفو کردم) We passed the night in fear (در خوف و هراس شب را بروز آوردیم)

Passing—It is passing strange (بغایت غریب است) It was a passing idea (فکري ناگهاني بود) He is a past master in the art of humbugging (در اول رتبه استادِ کهن است)

Patch—He is not a patch on you for looks (در خوشگلي بگردِ تو نمي رسد) He patched up a peace (صلحي فراهم آورد)

Pathetic—He apes the pathetic (در صددِ جلب است ادعاي دلربائي دارد)

Patience—I have lost all patience (طاقتم طاق شده است) He has not much patience (مرد بد کم حوصله)

Patter—The rain went patter patter (باران بناي شرق شرق نهاد) He began to patter flash (به اصطلاحِ دزدان حرف زدن گرفت)

Pattern—This is a pretty pattern (این طرح قشنگ است) He is a pattern of virtue (در تقوی محلّ تقاید هرکس است)

Pay—This plan does not pay (این تدبیر اکتفا نمي کند) Who pays the piper (مرد کار کیست که از عهده بر می آید) Nunky pays for all (بار همه را فلاني برمي دارد) I am going to pay you out (از شما مواخذه می گیرم) He paid the debt of nature a few days ago (چندي پیش از این لبیک اجابت گفت) He paid through the nose for this horse (این اسب را بقیمت بیرون از وهم و گمان بخرید)

Peace—I have no peace night or day (نه روز آرام دارم و نه شب خواب) He got peace of mind (دلش بجا آمد) They leave me no peace (آرامم نمي دهند) She held her peace (خاموش ماند)

Pearls—Casting pearls before the swine (هر چه داند بهاي قند آئینه داشتن در مجلس کوران - و نبات)

Peep—He came at peep of day (در طلوع بهار بیآمد) I peeped through the hole (از سوراخ دزدیده نگاه مي کردم).

Penny—Penny wise and pound foolish (درمي نگاه داشتن و دینارها پول سیاه دان و اشرفي مدان - خرج کردن) Thus I am able to turn an honest penny (به این طور مي توانم درمی حلال بدست آرم)

Perfect—He said this in a perfect rage (باکمال تغیّر این حرف را زد) He is a perfect fool (سرتا پا احمق است) The road was a perfect picture (راه مثل تصویر معلوم مي شد).

Pick—He had the pick of the apple (بهترین سیبها را تصاحب نمود) He picked a quarrel with me (با من دریئی جنگ گذاشت) You are now trying to pick holes in him (حالا در کردارش نکته گیري مي کني) I picked bone with him (با او جنگ برپا

کرم) The syrup you gave me is a capital pick-me-up (شربتی که شما مرحمت فرمودید معجون مقوی خوبی است) The wet picking their neighbours to pieces (مشغول غیبت همسایگان هستند) These manners are the pick of the basket (این ادبها از همه بهتر است)

Pillar—He was a pillar of strength for his friend (برای دوستش حصن حصین و تکیه گاهی قوی بود) The pillars of state were assembled in the audience hall (عمال دولت در دیوان خانه فراهم آمدند)

Pinch—He did it at a pinch (در اثر اضطرار بجا آورد) When the pinch came he failed (وقتیکه صدمه آمد سست شد) Times were hard and pinched him (ایام سخت بود و او را صدمه رسانید) No one was pinched for room (جا بر کسی تنگ نبود) It is here that the shoe pinches (اینجاست که عرصه تنگ می شود) The wearer knows where the shoe pinches (کسی داند که دل خسته چه باشد)

Pink—He is the pink of fashion (جسم سلیقه است کلاه وضع مد)

Place—He is too big for his place (علو او ارفع است از مقامش) It took its place (جایش را گرفت) He keeps everything in its place (هر چیزی را در جای خود می گذارد) I placed money at interest (پول به مرابحه دادم) Anxiety gave place to hope of success (بجای اضطراب امید ظفر پدیدار شد)

Play—He did it in play (بطور لاغ بجای آورد) Give him play (بکارش دار فرصتش ده) You are playing me false in this business (در این کار مرا گول می خواهی) Are you going to play truant (آیا می خواهی از زیر کار در روی) His memory played him tricks (حافظه اش گولش زد) You were playing

a part last evening (شام گذشته در رنگي مي كردي) . It is mere child's play (مثلِ بازي كودكان آسان است) They played us fast and loose (با ما تلوّن بكار بردند)

Please—He is hard to please (او مشكل پسند است) . Just as you please (اختيار با شما است) . He is as pleased as Punch (هوای خوشنود شد) I was very pleased to see him (از ديدنِ او بسيار خوشحال شدم) . I could not have the pleasure of seeing you (نتوانستم خدمتِ شما برسم) He gave himself up to pleasure (بساط نشاط گسترد)

Plump—He spoke plump out (بی محابا سخن گفت - بی پرده بر زبان راند) He plumped for that candidate (صوتِ انتخابِ خودرا در بارهٔ آن طالب اختيار داد)

Pocket—He pocketed the affront (تحمّلِ اهانت نمود) He put his hand in his pocket (از جيبِ خود خرج كرد) Put your pride into your pocket for the time (حالا نخوتِ خويش را يكسو نهاد) He was not out of pocket (زيانِ پول نكشيده بود)

Point—He could not catch the point of this epigram (نكتهٔ اين كلام را فهميدن نتوانست) This affair presents itself from two points of view (اين كار دو شق دارد) He made a point of doing it (آنرا چيزِ عمده ساخت) . He is always straight to the point (هرگز جوش دوتا نمي شود) . My point is this (مقصدم اين است) He spoke out point blank in my face (روبروي من آشكارا گفت) She carried her point (به مطلبِ خويش برسيد) My answer is very much to the point (جواب من بسيار بامحل است) . He quoted instances in point from the history of Persia (از تاريخِ ايران امثالِ اين واقعه را ايراد نمود)

Poor—This is a poor excuse (این عذرِ ضعیفی است) He is poor [دستش خالی (تنگ) است] This is poor pay (این مزدِ کمی است) They are as poor as church mice (مثلِ موشهای کلیسا بینوا و تهی دست اند)

Position—The position is this (صورتِ حال اینست) I assumed a position of antagonism (وضعِ مخالفت پیش گرفتم) He is a man of position (مردِ صاحبِ مرتبه است) He is in a position to know it (موقع دارد که این را بداند) You presume on your position (شما بر منصبِ خود تکیه می کنید)

Possible— Is it possible (آیا ممکن است) ? If this be possible for him he will do it (اگر دستش بیاید آنرا بکند) It was not possible (امکان نداشت) He went away as quickly as possible (هرچه زود تر برفت)

Power—The violence of the heat deprived us of all power of doing any thing (حدّتِ گرما قدرتِ هیچ کار در ما نگذاشت) He is a power in the state (او رکنی در دولت است) He has no power over his tongue (دهنش لق است) The sun was powerful (آفتاب حدّت داشت). He was powerfully effected (بشدّت متأثّر شد)

Practice—Practice makes *perfect* (با کار کردن استاد می شوی) I am out of practice (من عاری از کارم)

Praise—He gave him undue praise (بیش از حد ستایش کرد) Praise is pleasing to fools (احمق را ستایشِ خود خوش می آید) Self praise is no commendation (تعریفِ خود کردن هنری نیست)

Presence—He was a man of good presence (مردِ خوش منظری بود) He retained his presence of mind (عقل و هوشِ خود را برقرار داشت) Presentations were made (تعرّف بعمل آمد)

Press—He pressed him hard (هردو پایش را دریک کفش کردند) Do not press him [(پا پیش درو (مشو)]. For press of business I have no leisure (از کثرتِ مشغله هیچ فراغتی ندارم) They have sent a pressing invitation (دعوتِ با اصرار فرستاده اند)

Pretend—He pretended to be happy (دلش را چرب کرد) I made a pretence of piety (تقوی بعرورحتم)

Price—Its selling price is one rupee (در قیمتِ یک روپیه فروخت می شود) They are all of one price (همهٔ اینها را قیمت یکی است) Every man has his price (هر مردیرا مقداریست)

Pride—Pride goes before destruction (تکبّر عزازیل را خوار کرد)

Promise—It promises to be fine (آثارِ صاف شدن می نماید) The harvest promises well (حاصل خوب معلوم مي شود) It is a promising day (روز خوبی خواهد بود). He is a promising youth (جوانِ امید بخشید)

Proof—It is put to the proof (در معرضِ امتحان در می آرند) His guilt is proved (تقصیر بر او ثابت است)

Pull—He had the pull of him (از وي غلب کرد) The coach pulls up at a little inn (در کاروانسري کوچکی کالسکه را مکث می کنند) He pulled through the punishment (زیربارِ تادیب تن در نداد) I and your brother pulled to gether very well (من از برادرت بطریقِ یکرنگی بکار پرداختیم)

Purpose—He talks without purpose (بیخیال حرف می زند) For what purpose have you come here (اینجا از براي چه آمدهٔ) ? He did it on purpose (به آهنگ ، خویش اینرا کرد)

Purse—They are very purse proud (ایشان مستِ دولتند) You

can t make a silk purse out of a sow s ear (روستائي اگرولي باشد
حرص در كوه بوعلي باشد)

Put—He was put about by this speech (ا اين سخن بدش آمد) I am very sore put to it (از اين بقاپ پريشان هستم) I was never so put to it in my life (من هرگز در تمام عمرم با چنين مشكلي برنخوردم) He felt exceedingly put out (بسيار ملول گشت) I wish you would put in a word for him (ميخواهم براي خودش كلامي خود بگوي) He put them off with promises (انهارا با وعدا اسمه طفره رد) She put on her new dress (لباس نوش را پوشيد) I put up with my uncle (من با عمم مي مانم) This is a put up affair (اين اختراع است). He could not put up with such bad treatment (اين سلوك بدش را تاب نتوانست آورد)

Qualification—This description needs qualification (اين تعريف اصلاح لازم دارد)

Quality—He has many good qualities صفات حسنة بسياري دارد He is a person of quality (مرد عالي منشي است) The quality never act like this (بزرگان هرگز چنين حركتي نكنند)

Quantity—These were brought in quantities (به بسياري آورده شد) The quantity is better than quality (كميت بهتر از كيفيت است)

Quarter—They came quarter of an hour before (ربع ساعت پيشتر بيامدند) The vanquished soldiers sought quarter (سربازان مغلوب زنهار طلبيدند) I gave him quarter (اورا زنهار دادم)

Queer—I feel very queer (حالم بسيار بد است) It looks like queer street (كوچهٔ زشتي مي نمايد)

Question—He came in with the ring in question (با انگشتري كه

دکر شد داحل اطاق گشت) There are two sides to the question (مادة شق دارد) This is out of the question (این حارج مسئلة است) This is the burning question of the day (این مسئلة وقتی است که باهر کس و ناکس تعلق دارد)

Quick—It cut him to the quick (به او تاثیر بسیار کرد)

Quit—Quit yourself like men (مردانگی نمائید) Now we are quits (حال حسابمان پاک است)

Race—The race is not always to the swift (سبک رو همیشه گوی مسابقه نبرد) Slow and steady wins the race (رهرو دریا می شد صیاد دام آهسته)

Rag—They are in rags and tatters (ژنده پوش اند) This is not worth a rag (این به پاره نمي ارزد) I am in rags (من پاره پوشم)

Rage—This is all the rage (این بکلّي رواج دارد) The plague was raging in the town (وبا در شهر متولي شد)

Range—This is not within my range (این در ادارهٔ من نیست) He took a wide range (مدرع بعیدي قصد کرد)

Rank—He rose from the ranks (از مرتبهٔ پست ترقّي نمود) He has neither rank, knowledge, nor spirit (پشم در کلاه ندارد) . This is rank nonsense (این سخن حمقي که ما فوق ندارد)

Rap—He did not promise a rap (یک پوش وعده نکرده است) This is not worth a rap (این یک پشیز نمي ارزد) He rapped out a great oath at his foot-man (بر سرِ خدمتگارش تندي سوگندِ درزگي نفرمتاد)

Rare—This is a rare book (این کتاب نایاب است) He is a rare nuisance (خیلي عذاب می دهد)

Rattling—He made a rattling good speech (نطقِ خوبی کرد)

Read—I can read his character (من بطور او بخوبی می ...) It reads thus (مضمونش چنین است) He reads daily with a master (هر روز پیش استاد می خواند)

Ready—I have no ready money at present (حالا پول نقد نیستم) He made ready for battle (آماده جنگ گردید) He is ready with his pen (هنرمند است با قلم خویش) Breakfast is ready (ناهار حاضر است)

Reckon—He reckons without his host (تنها بدمی پی زند) I reckoned on him as a supporter (به تکیه بر طرفداری او بودم) I cannot reckon on him (به او نمی توانم تکیه کنم)

Recover—He recovered his senses (بعقل یا بهوش آمد)

Refuse—He refuses to go (ابا از رفتن می کند) I will not refuse you (از شما مضایقه نمیکنم)

Rein—He gave the reins to his imagination (جلوی خیال را ول کرد)

Relation—Relations are strained (روابط بهم خورده است) England has diplomatic relations with [illegible] (انگلستان به [illegible] ایران معاملهٔ دپلو ماتیک دارد) They have suspended relations between them (از یکدیگر قطع مراوده کردند)

Request—He did this at my request (بنابر استدعای من اینرا کرد) He is in great request (او خیلی طرف رجوع است)

Resort—The last resort is the sword (علاج آخرش شمشیر است) He resorted to deceit (متمسک شد بفریب)

Respect—He is not respected (هنوز پیش مردم آبرو ندارد) He respects the Sabbath (روز سبت را نگاه می دارد) I paid my respects to the Prince (بحضور شاهزاده مشرف شدم) He has a respectable exterior (ظاهرش آراسته است) He is

no respecter of of persons (ملاحظهٔ اشخاص نمی کند - ظاهربین نیست) Present my respects to him (دعائی دیدار ویرا برسان)

Responsible—He is responsible for damages (باید از عهدهٔ غرامت در آید) The responsibility rests on you (مسئولیت بر شما واقع است)

Rest—We rested a while (قدری راحت کردیم) He cannot rest any where (هیچ جا قرار نمی تواند بگیرد) The matter rests with you (اختیارشما دارید) He will never rest content (هرگز راضی نخواهد شد)

Return—His business gives a small return (شغلش کم فائده است) He made no return for this kindness (تشکر برای این التفات ننمود) He returned a rude answer (جوابِ ناتراشیده باز داد)

Reverse What reverses I have experienced (چها برسرمن گذشت) He reversed the decision (قضای خود را فسخ کرد)

Rhyme—This is without rhyme or reason (این نه موزون است و نه معقول)

Rich—This is a rich joke (این شوخی خوش مزه است) Persian is a rich language (زبانِ فارسی خیلی وسیع است) That was very rich (آن خیلی مزه داشت) The kingdom was rich in statesmen (ملکی بود پر از اربابِ سیاست) He is as rich as a Jew (دولتِ قارون دارد)

Rid—Get me rid of this man (شرِ این مرد را از سرمن دور کن) The king got rid of the minister (پادشاه وزیررا زیرآب کرد)

Right—Who will put that mystery to rights (که آن امرِ مخفی را واضح گرداند) He is my right arm (یارِ شاطرم است) I sent him to the right about (باعدم رعایتِ رسومات اورا مرخص نمودم)

His heart is in the right place (مردی با وفا و راست دل است) He gave up his rights in favour of his nephew (طرف پسر برادر خود را نگاه داشته از حقوق خویش دست بردار شد) They deemed it right (صوابش دانستند)

Risk—He ran a great risk (خود را در خطر عظیم انداخت) I spoke to him at the risk of my life (دست از جان شسته با او حرف زدم) Risk not, gain not (تا جان در مخاطره نهی بر دشمن ظفر نیابی)

Road—There is no royal road to learning (تحصیل علم بی زحمت نمی شود) Go back by the same road as you have come (از همین راه که آمدید پس برو) He is on the road to fortune (در طریق سعادت است)

Rob—This is robbing Peter to pay Paul (این از ریش کندن و بر سبیل بستن است)

Rod—Spare the rod and spoil the child (جور استاد به از مهر پدر)

Room—There was no room (جا نبود) There is no room for doubt (محل شک نیست) This house is full of rooms (این خانه پر حجره است)

Root—Avarice is the root of all evil (در آرد طمع مرغ و ماهی به بند) (بدوزد طمع دیدهٔ هوشمند) He bears a rooted prejudice against every thing foreign (هرچه از ملّت غیر باشد از آن تعصّب مدام دارد)

Rough—He did the rough of the work (سختیهای کار را بجا آورد) I roughed it for years (سالها سال درشتیها می کشیدم) He is a rough diamond (در پوست درشت دل نیک دارد) He licked her with the rough side of his tongue (بدش گفت)

Round—Give me a round sum (مبلغ وافر بمن بده) They

stood all round the table (هر طرف میز ایستادند) This is a round about excuse (این عذر بی سبب است) .

Row—What is the row (این چه معرکه است) He picked up a great row (هنگامهٔ بزرگی برپا کرد) .

Rub There's the rub (مشکل اینجا است)

Ruin—The buildings have fallen in ruins (عمارتها منهدم شده است) They are going to ruin him (پا در کفش کرده اند) They are ruined (اوجاق شان کور شد)

Run—My money has run short (پولم تمام شده است) I am run out of paper (کاغذ در دستم نیست) The deer has been run to earth (گوزن را گرفتند) He is not superior to the common run of people (در مردمان عمومیه هیچ موقیت ندارد) He ran through his whole fortune (تمامی دولت خود را بذل کرد). In Persia every body's head runs on power (در ایران هر شخص در پی قدرت و جاه باشد) He ran the rig upon me (گولم زد) . I ran through the book (کتابرا بنظر راندم) The lease has run out (مدت اجارة تمام شده است)

Rush—His friendship is not worth a rush (دوستیش بقدر پشیزی نمی ارزد)

Sacrifice—He sold this at a great sacrifice (با خسارت زیاد این را فروخت). His life was a sacrifice for others (حیاتش در خدمت دیگران صرف شد)

Sad Why should I be sad (چه راه دارد که تاسف بخورم)? He looks sad (انجمنش آویخته است) This was a sad mistake (این غلط شدیدی بود) Your son is a sad dog (پسر لوطی و مفلس است)

Sands—His sands are just run out (عمرش آفتاب سر کوهست)
This is a mere rope of sand (چیزی محض بی مادة است)

Scape-goat—He was the scape-goat in this matter (در این مادة سنگ رویح بود)

Scorn—Scorn commonly comes with scathe (کی نقصان مایة و دیگر خمالت همسایة)

Scratch – He could not come to the scratch (طاقت معابلة لداشت
I am the fellow to bring you up to the scratch (من آنم کة ترا بعزیمت کار بردارم)

Screw—There is a screw loose in his intellect (عصالی در هوشش راه یافتة است) He is an old screw (مردکة بخیل است)
Screw your courage to sticking place (با پردلی آمادة کار باش)
They screwed money from him (ازوی پول جلب نمودند)

Sea—I was at sea to see him there (ترا در آنجا یافتة در بحر حیرت غوطة زن بودم) My brother has gone beyond the sea (برادرم به آن طرف دریا رفتة است)

Season—He made many enemies by his remarks in seaso[n] and out of season (و بیگاة کلة برلزی نموده بسیاری را دشمن ... خود گردانید) Orange is not in season now (ال نارنگی در ... رفت نیست) His words are out of season (سخنهایش بیجا است) He seasons punishment with mercy (تربیت را با رحمت می آمیزد) He did not season him with these idea[s] (اورا به این افکار آمادة کار نساخت)

Secret—There is some secret in the matter (کاسة زیر نیم کاسة است)

See—I see through it (بر من پوشیدة نیست) He cannot se[e] an inch before his face (بسیار بی بصیرت است) I hope w[e]

shall see one another to morrow (فردا انشاء الله ملاقات میسر خواهد شد) He has seen better days (حالتش بهتر بود). She saw to every thing (هر چیز را نگاه داشت) He went out to see his sister off (بیرون رفت تا همشیرهٔ خودش را بوقت روانگی خدا حافظ بگوید)

Send—He sent to enquire (فرستاد که معلوم نماید). He sent him off in order to get rid of him (دست بسرش کرد) I sent him about his own business (در پی کار خودش بفرستم)

Serve—I will serve him out (بسزاش برسانم) His connection with the press serves our turn (تعلقش با اصحاب قلم بکار ما می خورد) The guns were well served (توپها خوب بکار برده شدند)

Set—They made a set at him (حمله کردند به او) They set about their work in earnest (با غیرت تمام بکار خود شان پرداختند) He set his face against the whole scheme (همه تدبیر را با ثبات رای مخالفت نمود) He set up for an honest man (خود را با دیانت قلم داد) Set a thief to catch a thief (شغال بیشهٔ مازندران را نگیرد جز سگ مازندرانی) His neighbours set little by him (همسایگانش اورا بچشم حقارت می دیدند) The fathers have eaten sour grapes and the children's teeth are set on edge (ظلم ظالم درسر اولاد ظالم می رود)

Shatter—He shattered their hopes (امید ایشان را برهم زد) I tore his arguments to shatters (حجتهای اورا از هم دریدم)

Shoulder—I gave him the cold shoulder (با او تغافل ورزیدم) He put his shoulder to the wheel (بکارش چسپید). They took him by the shoulder (کولش گرفتند)

Show—He made a show of going (چنان نمود که گویا می رود)

He made a great show of learning (اظهار دانش زیادی نمود) I showed both of them the door (هردو را بدر کردم) He showed me in (اندرون خانه راه ام نمود) Be careful lest we show you up (زنهار مباد طشتت از بام می افتد)

Shut—Shut up (حرفی مزن) ! I completely shut him up (شکست فاحش دادمش اورا مجاب کردم) To shut the stable door after the steed is stolen (بعد از مردن سهراب نوش دارو)

Side—The players form two sides (اشخاص بازی کن دو قسمت می شوند) It is a side issue (متفرع بحث است طریق تهلکه است) He did this by a side wind (این کار را دزدانه کرد) You will put on all the side you please when outside the office (بیرون از اداره هرچه خواهی دماغت را بالا کن)

Sight—They fell in love at first sight (در بادی النظر عاشق یکدیگر گشتند) It extends out of sight (مد تا چشم به انتهای آن نمی رسد) It is one of the sights of the world (از جاهای دیدنی دنیا است) This bill is payable at sight (این برات سریع الاداست) I bought a sight of furniture (مقدّمات خانه بکلی خریدیم)

Silence—Silence gives consent (سکوت علامت رضا است) Silence is wisdom when speaking is folly (دو چیز طیرهٔ عقل است دم فرو بستن بوقت گفتن و گفتن بوقت خاموشی)

Sinecure—This task is no sinecure (این عمل کاری بی رنج نیست)

Sink—His spirit sank within him (روحش در وی فرو مرد) They sank their differences (اختلافات خود را دفع نمودند)

Sit—We sat down with a blank (ما با وجهٔ سادهٔ قناعت کردیم) Her own maid should sit up for her (خادمهٔ او باید به انتظار او در مجلس بیدار ماند) I was sitting on thorns (بر خارها می ؟

Six—There is six of one and half a dozen of the other (چه علی حواجه و چه حواجه علی) All went to sixes and sevens (همه چیزها تار ومار افتاده بود).

Skin—The miser would skin a flint (سرداگر پنیر در قوري شیشه می حورد) He escaped only by the skin of his teeth (چیزي نمانده بود که تصدق بشود) I saved both my skin and credit (پوست حودم و نیز اعتبارم را نگاه داشتم)

Slap—He received a slap (تراق حورد) I went slap-dash at it (یکباره بسویش روان شدم)

Sleep—Sleep overpowered him (حوابش برد) Do not awaken sleeping dogs (فتنه در حواب است بیدارش مکن) The sleeping fox catches no poultry (خرِ مرده جو نمی حورد) I am sleepy (حوابم گرفت)

Slight—We had a slight meal (حوراکِ مختصري حورديم) A slight loss is a great one to a poor man (در حانهٔ مور شبنمی طوفان)

Smack—Smack went the whip and the carriage rattled on (قمچی را تراق زدند و کالسکه را حلنگ راندند). This smacks of idleness (این بوي کسالت دارد)

Smell—It smells nice (حوب بوئي دارد). He smelt a rat (بد مظنه شد)

Snap—He snaps his fingers at me (انگشت بمن می رساند) The rope snapped in the middle (رشته از میانش بریده) He is snappish (حشم آلود می شود)

Sore—Every sore has its salve (هر دردي را درمانی است) It is a sight for sore eyes (راحتِ چشم است)

Sort—He is out of sorts (در مزاجش تعادلی عارض شده است) All sort and conditions of men were present (همه اصناف ملل حاضر بیامدند) She is a good sort of woman (زنی خوبست) He has a sort of house (قسم خانه دارد)

Sound—This sounds dishonest (بوی نادرستی می دهد) He sleeps soundly (خوب خواب می رود) I thrashed him soundly (اورا تازیانهٔ معقولی زدم) The punishment was soundly awarded (سیاست معقولی صورت گرفت) He breathes soundly (سالماً نفس می کشد) He was fond of the sound of his own voice (صوت خودش بگوش خودش خوش صدا بود) Empty vessels sound much (طبل تهی بانگ بلند)

Sow—As you sow so shall you reap (کونی هرس آمدنی بدس)

Speak—Do not speak all at once (همه یک حول حرف نزنید) Speak when you are spoken to (سخن تا نپرسند لب بسته دار) This speaks volumes in his favour (این برهانی بزرگی است بمساعدت او) They have no institutions of their own to speak of (هیچ اعتزامی ندارند که قابل ذکر باشد)

Spend—The time is far spent (وقت منقضی شده است) I will spend the evening with you (امشب در خدمت شما می باشم)

Sponge—He threw up the sponge (سپر انداخت)

Spur—He spoke on the spur of the moment (حسب اتفاق وقت و معارض حال بگفت) He has won his spurs (در مقصد خود سوار است)

Spy—He has come as a spy (آمده است چشم و گوشی آب بدهد) You spied on us (بکمین ما بودند)

Stand—I take my stand upon this (من بر اساس ایستاده می شوم) How do matters stand (حال بر چه منوال است) ? Some are

standing, some fallen (بعضی برپا است و برخی افتاده) He has no standing in the matter (اورا در این فقره دخلی نیست) I am the man to stand by you in trouble (من آن مردم که در حالت گرفتاری یاور باشم) Don't stand in this poor man's light (مانع راه پیشرفت این بیچاره مباش) I stood in need of a comfortable dinner (حاجت خوراک شکم سیر داشتم) He always stands out (همیشه از هر کاری حرفی می دارد) It may stand me in good stead some day (وقتی بکار من خواهد خورد)

Star—His star is in the ascendant (اخترش در برج سعادت است) He is an ill-starred fellow (مردکهٔ بدطالع است)

Stick—He is a regular old stick (آدمی بی دل و یار بی بار) Stick to your own work (مشغول کار خود باش) He stuck by his word (بوعدهٔ خویش قایم ماند)

Stone—He left no stone unturned (کاري نبود که نکرد) He is stone blind (کور مطلق است) You are now possessed of the stone-throwing spirit (اکنون دیوی عیبجوئی بر تو مستولی شده است)

Stool—To fall between two stools (دو هندوانه در یک بغل نگنجد)

Store—Store is no sore (کنج رنج نیست) She set store by that picture (آن صورت را خیلی عزیز می داشت) Ills are in store for him (بلاها برایش ذخیره کرده)

Straw—A straw shows which way the wind blows (سالی که نکوست از بهارش پیداست)

Stretch—Stretch your legs according to your coverlet (پا به اندازهٔ گلیم دراز کن) He went ten yards at a stretch (ده ذراع راه یک کشه می رفت)

Strike—He was struck with lightning (برقش زد) I was

much struck with his arguments (از وی بسیار متأثر گشتم)
It struck him in the eye (بچشمش خورد)

Study—He was in a deep study (غرق مطالعه بود) Where have you studied (شما کجا تحصیل کردید). He is in a brown study (خیالش مصروف بجای دیگر است)

Swallow—One swallow does not make a summer (از یک پرستو بهار نمی شود)

Swim—My head swam (سرم می گردد سرم دور می خورد) The country swam with blood (ولایت مالامال خون گردید)

Table—He keeps a good table (سفرهٔ خوبی می چیند) He turned the tables on my brother (الزام خود را بگردن برادرم انداخت)

Take—I took the necessary measure (اقدامات لازمه بکار بردم) What sum will you take (چه مبلغ خواهید گرفت) ? I took him for his brother (من او را برادرش پنداشتم) He takes to this kindly (از این خوشش می آید) He took up Mathematics (ریاضیات بدست گرفت) Take your time (تأنّی نما) The ladies took the cue and went way (خانمها اشاره را فهمیده برفتند) He took to the road (راه را پیش گرفت) The letter took hold of my imagination (کاغذ به خیالم می گردید) He took himself off (فرار کرد) I took him to task (ملامتش کردم) He took upon him the management of the affair (انتظام کار را بر خود لازم یافت)

Talk—There is a talk of this (سخن از این است) He was much talked about (درباره او بسیار گفتگو شد) It was mere talk (محض حرف بود) He is in the habit of talking to himself (او خود بخود حرف می زند)

Tar They are all tarred with the same brush or stick (همه را ار یک مار گریده اند)

Taste—He has tasted gain (دندانش حوبي شده است) I have a nasty taste in my mouth (دهانم تلخ کرده است) He acts according to his taste (بذوقِ حود کار مي کند)

Temper—He was put out of temper (کوک شد) You have lost your temper (حر آمدة) Your brother said thus in a fit of temper (برادرت در عین حالتِ تند مزاجي چنین گفت) He tempers justice with mercy (بطورِ مرحمت عدالت مي نماید)

Term—His terms are high (هواش بلند است) I am on good terms with him (ار وي حوب اتّفاق دارم) They are not on good terms with one another (باهم دگر حوب نی تند) He kept to his own terms (بر عهدِ حود ثابت بود)

Thick—He was in the thick of it (در جاي عینِ حطر گیر آمده بود) The plot thickens (فتنه در ازدیاد است) We would stand by that boy through thick and thin (هرچه سرد و گرم در سرِ آن کودک بگدرد ما ناوي باشیم)

Thing—It is the same thing (یکي است) Don't talk big things (دم تعلیق حرج مده) Things are constantly changing (یکي همي رود و دیگری همي آید) Where energy was the thing he was energetic enough (حائي که جدّوجهد لازم بود او نیز کوششِ بلیغ مي نمود) I see, you know a thing or two (مي بینم از چاه و راه خبردار هستید) He made a good thing of his profession as a tailor (از پیشهٔ حیّاطي حیلي صرفه بهم رسانید)

Think—You think a great deal of yourself (توبسیارت که حیلي چیز

[illegible] You have the pick of this town ([illegible]) I think no end of him ([illegible]) He thought better of his determination ([illegible])

Thread—He lost the thread of his matter ([illegible]) Ruin hangs by a thread over him ([illegible])

Throw—We threw dust over the eyes of the enemy ([illegible]) I am not going to throw you over ([illegible]) He threw himself into the business ([illegible])

Tide—We tided over the difficulty ([illegible]) Time and tide wait for no man ([illegible])

Time—A stitch in time saves nine ([illegible]) Time is precious ([illegible]) The times are changed ([illegible]) He took time by the forelock ([illegible]) There is a time for all things ([illegible]) This is a long time since I have seen you ([illegible]) The time is over ([illegible]) The chief timed his movements ([illegible]) He visits us from time to time ([illegible]) He did not play in time ([illegible]) I had been there some time before ([illegible]) The time passed very pleasantly ([illegible])

Tit—Tit for tat (درکسي مزن ده انگشت تا نزند در تو مشت)

Tone—Exercise gives a tone to the body (حرکت بدن را قوت مي دهد) He spoke in a pleasing tone (کلامش دوائي تصرع داشت). The tone of society here is bad (طرز جمعيت اينجا بد است). The picture is wanting in tone (تصويري حالتي ا -)

Tongue—Hold your tongue (خاموش) ! He cannot control his tongue (زبان او در حکمش نيست)

Too—He is too kind (التفات زياد دارد). Too many cooks spoil the broth (قافله چون دو شود سر بچه کج شود)

Tool—He made a tool of him (او را ... وسيلۀ قرار داد) A bad workman quarrels with his tools (حيله جو را ترانه بسيار)

Touch—It was a touch and go (کار بدم رسيده بود) He touched lightly upon this (قدري اشاره درين باب کرد) The argument touches upon this (بحثي در اين مي رود). It touched him to to the quick (زياد در وي اثر کرد) He is quite in touch with his subordinates (با زيردستان خود همراهي دارد)

Trade—Trade is bad (بازار کاسد است) Every trade has its tricks (بازرا از بازرا بايد خريد) Their trade was spoilt (عمل آنها کساد شد) Two of a trade seldom agree (دو هم پيشه با هم پيشه دشمن)

Trap—He is caught in his own trap (چاه کن را چاه در پيش) She understands trap (زن بيدار هوش است)

Tree—I am completely up a tree this time (اکنون گير آمده ام) You can't see the wood for the trees (چندان سمن است که ياسمن پيدا نيست)

Trick—The children are tricked out in gay garments (بچه هارا

(با لها بالي زلكارگ بيازسند) He has played me a trick (بازي در آورد از براي من) What new trick have you invented (حه كرك و كلك باهم آوردهد)

Trip—He was tripped up (باهاس را لغسك زداد) I will trip you (زردهاي ترا بهاحب مي ببيم)

Trouble—It is not worth the trouble (برهملس لمي ارزد) Do not trouble yourself about these things (از اين حيرها اعتنا مكنيد) I will trouble you to do this (زحمت كشيده اينرا بكنيد)

True—He has a true eye (نظرش خوب است) He is a friend as true as steel (دوستي است همه تن رفا)

Truth—Truth seeks no corner (آنرا كه حساب پاك است از محا سبه چه باك) Truth may be blamed but it never shall be shamed (راستي را زوال كي باشد)

Turn—Turn and turn about turn about is fair play (آسيا و بسا), Let us make another turn (يك حرخ ديگر هم بزنيم) Have a turn at this (زوري به اين بزنيد) It is my turn (دور من است) My father turned me out of doors (پدرم از خانه بدرم كرد) Turn to the right (طرف دست راست برو) We must see how it will turn out (بايد ديد چه مي شود) All your arguments turn upon this (دلائل شما همه بر اين بر مي گردد) They turned him to his side (دمس را ديدند) The tidings turned out to be correct (آوازها در آخر راست بيامد) He has turned up a trump (خود را مرد معقولي ثابت كرد) He turned a deaf ear to our entreaties (التماس ما را بگوش خود جا نداد) This vast wealth has entirely turned my head (اين دولت

(وی ع صستم گردانید) He would turn them to good account (ار آنها امادهٔ حواهد نمود). He turned upon twenty friends (ار دوستان بسیار رح حود را برگردانید) I tried to do him a good turn (کوشیدم تا بوی حدمتِ حوبي بکنم)

Union– Union is strength (دو دل یک شود بشکند کوه را)

Untold—He has untold wealth (دولتِ بیشمار دارد)

Upset—He was upset (دلگیر شد) He upset their designs (حیالِ ایشان را برهم رد) He upset the apple-cart (کارِ حود را بهم رد)

Us—He is not one of us (او یکي ارماها بیست) If God be for us, who can be against us (اگر یار اهل است کار سهل است) ?

Use -It is of no use (لائقِ هیچ کار نیست) Of what use is all this (اینها چه لازم است) He makes the best use of his time (وقتِ حود را پاکیزه صرف مي کند) It is much used for this (حیلي بیشتر این کار بکار مي رود)

Veil—He drew a veil across the transaction (پردهٔ بر روي کار افگند) This was merely a veil (این بس بهانهٔ بود) She took the veil (راهبه گشت)

Vent—He had no vent for his energies (مصرحي براي قواي حود نداشت) He gave vent to his feelings (افکارِ حود را روي دائرهٔ ریحت)

Vex—Do not vex me (کوششِ بدیم را برید) I am very much vexed at this (ار این بد اوقاتم تلح شد)

Victim—He is the victim of delusion (او بهرهٔ فریب است)

Virtue—Virtue is its own reward (ثواب راه بهانهٔ حود مي برد) She is a lady of easy virtue (پارچه اش حوب است)

Vivid—He depicted the subject in vivid colours (مطلب را بصورت حرفي درآورد) He has a vivid imagination (مخيلس قوي است)

Voice—He has a good voice (خوش آواز است) It is again the public voice (برخلاف افكار عمومي است)

Vote—They voted him a nuisance (اظهار نمودند كه مايه دردسر است) They voted the estimate (اسامي مقيد را اجرا كردند) The meeting dispersed with a vote of thanks to the chair (مجلس از هم پاشيد بعد از تقديم تشكر بصدر مجلس)

Vox—Vox populi vox dei (زبان خلق نقارهٔ خدا)

Wait—Wait till he comes up (صبر كنيد تا بيايد) He waited for an opportunity (در صدد فرصت بود) He is waiting to g (معطل است مي خواهد برود) My brother waited upon the Prince (برادرم خدمت شاهزاده را نمود)

Wall—Walls have ears (ديوار هم گوش دارد)

Water—He threw cold water to this undertaking (بر اين عزم دست و پاي خود را بطور اهانت حرف مي زد) He is in a deep water (گم كرده است) This is a gem of the first water (اين جوهر بسيار آبدار است) This won t hold water (اين اظهار پايدار نيست)

Way—I do not know the way (بلد نيستم) This is not the proper way of writing (اين قاعدهٔ نوشتن نيست) My affairs are in a bad way (كارهاي من بسيار اختلال دارد) He is established in a good way in London (در لندن كامياب و فرخنده حال شده است) Make way there for the Prince (شاهزاده را راه بدهيد آنجا) He gave way to tears (از گريه خود داري نتوانست)

Welcome—He welcomed the proposal (افكار ايشان را بسمع رضا

پذیرفت) Welcome the coming, speed the parting guest (هرکه آید گو بیا و هرکه رود گو برو)

What—What cannot be cured must be endured (عرق شده را بفریاد چه سود) What is that to you (ترا چه کار) ? What is all this (این دیگر چه اوضاع است)

Wheel—There are wheels within wheels (زیر کاسه نیم کاسه است)

Wide—There is a wide difference (اختلاف بزرگی است) He is wide awake (بسیار زرنگ و چالاک است)

Will—Where there's a will, there's a way (پرسان پرسان می توان رفت تا چین) He must bear the consequences of his action, will he nill he (خواه خواسته خواه ناخواسته نتائج کار خود را باید بکشید)

Wind—He has no wind (نفس برده است) There is something in the wind (کاسه زیر نیم کاسه است) This shows which way the wind blows (ظاهر عنوان باطن است) He got wind of the amount given (از مقدار نقد داده شده اطلاع یافت)

Wisdom—Wisdom alone is age (بزرگی بعقل است نه بسال)

Wit—He was at his wit's end how to act (عقل خود را گم کرده بود که چه می کند) He sharpened his wits on the school of experience (در مکتب تجربه فهم خود را تیز گردانید)

Word—A word to the wise (عاقل را اشاره بس است) Words once spoken cannot be recalled (تیری که از کمان بیرون جست در نمی گردد) His word is as good as his bond (وعدهٔ او مانند نوشته اوست) You and I never had a word (من و او هرگز در نزاع نبودیم)

Worst—They did their worst against him (بدلش را از گور در آوردند) Do your worst, I care not (بعد از این سر بار بفرست).

SECTION IV

Specimen Letters.

CHAPTER I

Letters of Invitation.

(1)

رقعهٔ دعوت برای مهمانی

غرهٔ شهر صفر المظفر ۱۳۳

خدمت جناب مستطاب عمدة الاماثل والاعیان آقای آقا میرزا محمد تقی
دام مجده عرض میشود   چون دوستی و محبت و التفات قلبی سرکار
نسبت بمخلص بدرجهٔ کمال است در مقام جسارت برآمده زحمت میدهد   فردا
که یوم ۶ ۲ ۱ است ساعت شش در بنده منزل با آقازادهٔ مکرم تشریف آورده
مخلص را بصرف ناهار ممنون و متشکر سازید   امید است که فراموش نخواهید
فرمود

دوست حقیقی شما محمد حسن

(2)

جواب رقعهٔ فوق بدینمنوال است

هفتم شهر صفر ۱۳۳

خدمت جناب مستطاب عمدة التجار زبدة الاخیار والاقران آقا میرزا محمد حسن
دام مجده عرض میشود   مرقومهٔ شریف که مشعر بر اظهار مرحمت
و احضار دعوت خبر بجهت ناهار بود واصل گردید   از یاد آوری و التفات بی نهایت
سرکار ممنون شدم   امید دارم که ساعت معین با نور چشمی بخدمت مشرف شویم
او حضارت سلامتی وجود شریف را خواهانم   ایام عزت مستدام باد

دوست حقیقی شما محمد تقی

(3)

رقعهٔ معذرت

دوست عزیز مکرم   پس از اداء سلام و اظهار دعا گوئی معروض میدارد که مرقومهٔ نامچهٔ شریف در بهترین وقتی از اوقات رسید - از زیارتش قلبم مسرور و خورسند گردید - خیلی متأسفم که نمیتوانم دعوت جنابعالی را قبول کنم زیرا که جماعتی از دوستان را درهمان روز بباغ دلگشا وعده گرفته ام و ناچار باید در پذیرائی ایشان حاضر باشم و البته جنابعالی هم راضی نخواهند شد که خلاف عهد نمایم و عذر موجه بنده در نزد شما پذیرفته و قبول خواهد شد - زیاده زحمتی ندارد -

مخلص شما محمد تقی

(4)

دعوتنامهٔ عقد نکاح

چون مبارک و میمنت فردا که پنجشنبه هفتم شهر حال است مجلس عقد نورچشم عزیز آقا محمد علی در بنده منزل منعقد میشود از مراتب الطاف سامی متوقعی است که روز مزبور ساعت ده تشریف ارزانی فرموده و بصرف شربت و شیرینی بنده را قرین امتنان سازند - ایام عزت و سعادت مستدام باد -

(5)

دعوتنامهٔ عید مولود پیغمبر (صلعم)

پس فردا عید سعید میمنت تمایل و میلاد شرافت بنیاد حضرت ختم انبیا و سید اصفیا علیه آلاف التحیة و الثناء میباشد که اعظم اعیاد مسلمین و مایهٔ افتخار قاطبهٔ مؤمنین است و مجلس تعظیم و تکریم آنروز شرافت اندوز دربنده منزل محفلی تشکیل خواهد یافت - از مراحم کاملهٔ عالی استدعا دارد که از ساعت شش تشریف آورده و بقدوم مسرت لزوم خود ممنونم فرمائید -

زمان مسرت و خوشوقتی مستدام

(6)

دعوت شام

پس از عرض ارادت و خلوص محبت انزا مسرور و خواهش میکند که فردا شب (لیلة الاحد سوم شهرحال) بقدوم میمنت لزوم خود بنده منزل را مزین و بصرف شام قرین امتنان فرمائید   ایام مودت برقرار باد

(7)

جواب قبول

د ونامهٔ گرامی شرف وصول ء ء و باملتهای مسرت و امتنان فردا شب بدرک حضور عالی کسب شرف و مسرت نموده و از حسن معاشرت سامی ء ء س خواهد شد   ایام کامکاری ا م

(8)

جواب اعتذار

خیلی متأسفم که دعوتنامهٔ سامی وقتی شرف وصول ارزانی نمود که یکی از دوستان بنده را در همانوقت دعوت کرده و قبول نموده ام از اینرو با وجود کمال میل بمصاحبت عالی دارم نمیتوانم در این موقع کسب آن فیض بنمایم و امید دارم که عذر معقولانه ام را بشرف قبول تلقی خواهند فرمود   زمان مودت مدام باد

(9)

دعوت ناهار

چون فردا که دوشنبه هفتم شهرحال است بعضی دوستان بمنزل اینجانب در خارج شهر تشریف می آورند و روز تعطیل را در آنجا میگذرانند از اینجهت مناسب دیدم از جنابعالی نیز خواهش کنم که در صورت امکان فردا را آنجا تشریف آورده بملاقات جدیدی ملاقات و صرف ناهار مسرور و خوشوقتم فرمایند امید است که در صورتیکه بگذرانند ما را از فیض خدمت خود محروم نسازند   ایام عزت مدام باد

(10)

جواب قبول

مرقومهٔ محترمه الان زیارت شد و از اینکه باقتضای محبت و یگانگی بنده را بملاقات دوستان و صرف ناهار دعوت فرموده بودید نهایت امتنان دارم - فردا بخواست خدا شرفیاب گردیده از ملاقات جنابعالی و صحبت دیگر دوستان ... و سرور خواهم نمود و امید دارم کاریکه باعث توقف حقیر در آنجا باشد رخ ندهد و بایفاء این وعده نائل شوم - زیاده تصدیع نمیدهد

(11)

جواب اعتذار

مراسلهٔ مودت و مواصلهٔ شریفه زیب ورود بخشید و دعوتی که برای صرف ناهار و دیدار احباء و دوستان فرموده بودید زائد الوصف مایهٔ تشکر خاطر گردید ولی باوجود کمال میل و شوقی که باستفاضه صحبت باسعادت و ادراک ملاقات رفقأ داشته و دارم بدبختانه کار مهمی در پیش آمده که فردا باید در شهر حاضر باشم و انجام آن مشغول شوم - لهذا بانهایت تأسف امیدوارم که معذرت مرا قبول و تخلف عذیم خود عفو فرمائید - ایام یگانگی مستدام باد

(12)

جواب قبول دعوت نامهٔ اسب ..

جناب مستطاب اجل دوست مکرم مراسلهٔ گرامی بهجت وصول داد وعدهٔ ... آتیه را خواسته بودید که صرف شام با جنابعالی بشود - باکمال مسرت و ... خاطر دعوت جنابعالی پذیرفته و انشاء الله شب مزبور از درک مسرت صحبت جنابعالی محظوظ و مشعوف خواهم شد -

زیادهٔ زحمتی ا ...

(13)

جواب اعتذار

قربانت شوم انشاء الله مزاج شریف جنابعالی قرین صحت و استقامت

است در سه روز قبل که حال جنابعالی بپرسم و از آنجا خدمت جناب
قونسول صاحب رسیدم وعده دادم شب امروز که عصر جمعه است خد ا لی برسم
حالیکه امروز روز تعطیل است و بنابراین بی شغلی کردم عملی نظر بخواهم
امیدوارم که از طرف بنده جنابعالی عذر خواهی بفرمائید

زیاده برین جسارت است

(14)

دعوت نامه ا —

آقای مرد با نهایت احترام تصدیع ادعی خاطر معروف عالی
میدارد که بالتربع جمعه ۱ شهر محرم سنه ۳۲۹ چهار ساعت ا بسلمه للسله
در عمارت مدرسه سعادت صرعلی وکب ا آقایان عارف ه ۱۱ و جوانان دانش پژوه
این شهر تشکیل میدهند که در آن چیزی که حیاتی مانند نفع عموم و انتشار معارف
و علوم مساعد ملاحظه گردد لهذا بعلم معارف از مقام منیع جنابعالی لد
ملتمس است که در وقت مزبور بمحل مذکور تشریف آورده بر مسرت و بهجت
حضار بیفزائید و از حضور سعادت دلپذیر و انظار و آرا شریف را ل آن محفل
ترقیده سبب شوند امید است که باجابت این دعوت مزین شده دوستدار را
قرین امتنان فرمائید در این ضمن مراتب خلوص صمیمی خود را بجناب اطالب
عالی اعلام میکند

ایام سعادت ۱ ۲ و برقرار باد

CHAPTER II

Messages of Congratulation or Condolence.

(1)

تبریک نامهٔ امتیاز

اگرچه از طرف جنابعالي تا اکنون هیچ اظهاري نشده بود ولی جناب   در طي تحریرات خود اعلام فرموده‌اند که امتیاز معزز از طرف دیشرف اولیاي دولت علیه بجنابعالي عطا گشته و این اوقات شرف وصول یافته است - اطلاع همچو مژدهٔ بزرگي بي اندازه مایهٔ مسرت در تذکار و باعث اظهار این ارادت شعار گردیده با نهایت سرور بجنابعالي تبریک و تهنیت میگوییم و مسرت و انبساط خاطر را از این مرحمت که درباره آن دوست حقیقي شده اشعار میدارم - امیدوار چنانم که از حسن نیت و صدق عقیدتي که بطرزي جناب مستطابعالي است بمدارج علیه ترقي فرموده و امتیازات رفیعه از دولت قویشوکت علیه حاصل نمائید و نیز امید واثق دارم که این تبریکات خالصانهٔ ارادتمند را با نهایت مودت بپذیرند - زیاده عرضي ندارم -

(2)

جواب رقعهٔ فوق

بااینکه خیلي شایق و راغب بودم که بعد از وصول امتیاز بهرچه زود تر ممکن باشد خاطر مهر مظاهر عالي را در آن خصوص مستحضر و مسرور سازد اما کثرت مشاغل مهمه طوري بود که موقع و مجال بدست نیامد - ولي حالاکه رقیمهٔ مهرور دیلهٔ عالي رسیده با نهایت مسرت و خوشوقتي مراحم اوقات شریف مي شوم و از آن همه احساسات صادقانه و تبریکات خالصانه که دلالت کامل در کمال شفقت و نهایت مکرمت عالي داشته تشکر و امتنان مي نمایم و همان خیر خواهي را که در رقیمهٔ گرامي نسبت بارادتمند اظهار فرموده بودند در حق ساعي ابراز مي دارم - امیدوار چنانم که همواره وجود مسعود عالي بصحت و سلامت

معهذا که از کسالت محفوظ بوده بکمال رفعت و جلال نائل باشد و بوسیله
باخبار سلامت حالت حضرت عالی خاطر ارادتمند را قرین خوشوقتی و مسرت
فرمائید ایام مسرت و خوشوقتی مستدام باد

(3)

تبریک ورود یکی از حکام

حضور جناب مستطاب اجل آقای   دامت شوکته

پس از مدت ارادت با نهایت شوق ورود مسعود سامی باصفهان را تبریک و تهنیت می گویم و امیدوارم که از حسن توجهات عالی کلیه امور آن اطراف منظم و اسباب رفاه عمومی بهترین نحوی فراهم شود در خدمات حاضرم

(4)

جواب تبریک نامه فوق

جناب فخامت نصاب عالی   دام اجلاله

ظهور لطف امیر که دالّ بر محبت قلبی سامی می نمود رسید و خیلی موجب امتنان گردید امیدوارم همانطوریکه جنابعالی اظهار فرموده اید بخدمات مخصوصهٔ خود موفق شوم و آن مقصود عالی را بطوریکه آرزومند و شایق هستم حاصل نمایم

(5)

تبریک مأموریت

خدمت ذیشوکت جناب مستطاب اجل آقای   دامت شوکته

ازاینکه ریاست ایالتی حکومت بنادر بشخص شخیص سامی محول گشته نهایت مسرت و خوشوقتی دارم و از صمیم قلب امیدوارم که این رتبهٔ جلیل و مقام منیع بر جنابعالی مبارک باشد و آن اطراف از یمن حکومت قدرت عالی بترقیات مادی و معنوی نائل گردد

(6)

حواب تبریک عید

جناب مستطاب عالي آقاي دام اقباله -

مخابرهٔ عالي مشعر بر تبریک مأموریت مخلص واصل و از مراسم آداب داني و وفا و صفاي آن دوست معظم نهایت شعف حاصل گردید - من هم رجامندم چنانم که از توفیقات الهی بتوانم از انفاء خدمات بر آمده کما ینبغي ذمهٔ خود را از آن فریضه فارغ سازم -

(7)

تهنیت نامهٔ عید

خدمت جناب مستطاب اشرف اکرم سرکار مشیرالدوله وزیر امور خارجه دام اجلاله -

باقتضاي مراسم ارادت در ساعت تحویل عرض تهنیت شده بود - حالا با تشکر از ظهور التفات مبارک و سعادت این عید سعید و سال جدید را با مزید شوکت و اجلال حضرت عالي تجدید و تکرار مي نمایم - سعادت بزرگ نصیب جناب ساعد الملک است که از نعمت حضور حضرت عالي بهره مند و مستفیض است - والا الام -

(8)

تعزیت فوت برادر

جناب مجدت و نجابت نصاب زید اقباله خبر وحشت اثر فوت مرحوم اخوي طاب ثراه مایه کمال اندوه و تأثر گردیده با نهایت افسوس و غم بجنابعالي تعزیت و تسلیت میگویم و از درگاه باري صبري جمیل در این مصیبت براي جنابعالي مسئلت میکنم -

(9)

جواب

جناب اجل عالي زید اجلاله تلگراف تعزیت سامي واصل گردیده و در این مصیبت عظمی که بي اندازه خاطرم را دوچار اندوه و ملال ساخته تسلي حاصل گشت با کمال امتنان از جنابعالي تشکرگذارم و امیدوارم که خداوند عمري طویل بجنابعالي کرامت فرماید -

(10)

ايضا تعزيت نامه

وفات مرحوم اعلي الله مقامه خان موجب تأثر قلبي شده که با مخلص قاصر و با نهايت تأسف خاطر در اين مصيبت عظمی با جنابعالي مشارک و همدردی دارم و چون در اينگونه دواهي فاجعه غير از صبر و رضا چاره نيست لهذا جنابعالي را بصبر و شکيبائي توصيه نموده تعزيت و   خالصانه را عرض ميکند

(11)

جواب

در هنگاميکه خاطر مصيبت زده ام از حدوث اين حادثه غم انگيز در نهايت بيقراري و تاثر بود تلگراف سامي واصل شده خيلي مايه تسلي قلب و تسکين خاطر گرديده از اين همدردي عالي نهايت امتنان دارم و تشکرات صميمي را تقديم ميکنم

(12)

تعزيت نامه

نميدانم بچه زبان از حدوث اين حادثهٔ غم انگيز اظهار تعزيت نمايم و احساسات مولمهٔ خودرا بچه نوع بحضور سامي ابلاغ کنم   را در موقع ميدانم که چون در همچو مصائب و رزايا غير از صبر و رضا چاره نيست عمليه که شکيبائي پيشه نموده از درگاه الهي اجر جزيل طلب فرمائيد

(13)

جواب

باوجوديکه وقوع اين واقعهٔ مولمهٔ بي اندازه مايهٔ دلتنگي شده اما اظهارات مودتيکه دالّ بر کمال محبت سامي ميباشد با اندازهٔ بسياري موجب تسکين قلب شده و رجامندم که تشکرات مرا که از يک قلب افسرده و خاطر پژمرده صادر شده بحسن قبول تلقي فرمائيد

CHAPTER III.

Correspondence between Friends and Relatives

(1)

رقعهٔ که برای ملاقات دوستی نوشته میشود

غرهٔ شهر محرم الحرام سنه ۱۳۳۰

آقای عزیز من همیشه اوقات دوام سلامتی وجود مسعود را از خداوند عالم مسئلت و درخواست مینمایم - بواسطهٔ مشورت درکاری لازم و امری مهم میبایست که حضرتعالی را ملاقات کنم - آیا در این کلبهٔ محقر بنده را سرفراز میفرمائید یا آنکه مقرر میدارید - که در دولت سرای شریف مشرف شوم - خواهشمندم که جواب فوری شاد و مسرورم فرمائید ایام عزت مستدام باد

مخلص شما عبد الرحیم

(2)

جواب رقعهٔ فوق بدینمنوال

غرهٔ محرم الحرام سنه ۱۳۳۰

دوست عزیز باوفای من آقا عبد الرحیم دام مجده

مرقومهٔ شریفه واصل و از زیارتش مسرور و مقصود حاصل گردید - نعمت حضور حضرتعالی را از خدا میخواستم - حال بحمد الله که میسر گردید - چون بعضی از خویشان بنده دیدنی و ملاقات مخلص در منزل تشریف آورده‌اند خواهشمندم که بحضور خود همهٔ مارا سرفراز و مفتخر خواهید فرمود -

زیاده زحمت نمیدهد

مخلص شما عبدالکریم

(3)

رقعهٔ فرزند به پدر

۱۹ شهر رمضان المبارک ۳۳

خدمت دستگاه آقای حقیقی و مولای واقعی دام مجده العالی معروض میدارد   رقعهٔ مبارک که مشعر بر سلامت وجود جنابعالی به بلده بمبئی بود زیارت شد از صحت مزاج سرکار عالی خیلی مسرور و متشکر گردیدم امیدوارم که بهمین زودی کارها بر وفق مقصود حاصل شده دعاگویان را از حضور خود شاد و مسرور فرمائید   مستدعیم که دو جلد کتاب سفینهٔ طالبی مشهور بکتاب احمدی برای بنده همراه خود تان بیاورند که بهترین سوغات میباشد

ایام عزت مستدام باد   علی اکبر احمد

(4)

جواب از پدر بفرزند

رمضان المبارک سنه ۱۳۳

نور چشم عزیز مکرم آقا احمد   نوشتهٔ شما رسید از مراتب ادب و حسن سلوک شما مسرور شدم بیشتر چیزیکه مرا امیدوار نموده همان معارف خواهی شما است   انشاء الله کتابها را خرید نموده بهمراه میآورم و علاوه لوازم مدرسه و اسباب تحریر و نقاشی و نقشه کشی از برای شما خواهم آورد و البته شما در تکمیل بمدرسه و تحصیل نمودن کوتاهی نخواهید کرد و مادرت را نهایت احترام خواهید نمود دوستان را همگی سلام برسانید والسلام   میرزا محسن

(5)

رقعه بفرزند از پدر

فرزند   نوشتهٔ شما رسید و از مضمونات آن مسرور شدم و از حرکات و سلوک و رفتار در معاملات فرزندی بین الامثال و اقران باعث امتنان و تشکر آمد و بعد از این هم این شیوهٔ مرضیه از آن فرزندی مطلوب است

(6)

بدوست ۱۰ حوت نوشته

عرض میشود - چراغ التفاتی رسید - از مرحمت جنابعالی کمال امتنان دارم -
برای ۱۹۰۹ در کتاب خانهٔ ما خیلی بکار میآید - الله جنابعالی زیاد باد - خیلی
شرمنده شدم - از کسالت مزاج جنابعالی خیلی غصه خوردم - مگر اینکه مزاحم
نباشم عیادت نکردم -

(7)

رقعهٔ السـ

قربانت شوم - رقیمهٔ کریمهٔ عالی زیارت شد - از انتقاص مزاج مبارک مسرور
شدم - از باب مراجعت نصر الله بیگ معلوم شد آن کاغذ به بنده زاده میرزا حسن
خان نرسیده است باز باید نداشته و گرنه معارض مخصوص نوشته بودم -
اینک مخصص فرمایش جنابعالی دراب کردم - دریافت دارد - مرحمت فرمود
باز برساند - زیاده تصدیع است -

(8)

یکی از رفقا نوشته

مخدوما مکرما بیکاری و بیشغلی ۱۰۶ از راه مضایقه نبوده - خود
تان میدانند که من رعایت احترام و حفظ مقام شما را بر خود لازم میدانم و از
هیچ نوع محبت و مهربانی مضایقه ندارم - از این هدیه که فرستاده اید نهایت
امتنان حاصل شد - و چون هدایا و تشریفات مرحوم مغفور وقایع نگار برای دوستان
و مخلصین خود شان منحصر بحلوای گز بود و بانک قرص آن کام چندین نفر را
شیرین میکرد - نخواستم که ۱۰۶ از رسم مالوف و عادت معهود ایشان تجاوز نمائید -
لهذا بیان حبه های گز بیش کفایت کرده ممنون شدم و السلام خیرالختام -

(9)

یکی از علما نوشته

عرض میشود چون هیچ وقت از ذکر خیر و یاد جنابعالی خارج
نیستم چند روز قبل متذکر شدم که رقم مبارک در امضا و فرمان همایون ...

اما بـ جملهٔ جنابعالي صادر شده [illegible] جواب دستخط [illegible] قلم رقم [illegible]
[illegible] و [illegible] و [illegible] مبارک [illegible] شرف [illegible] باعث [illegible]
[illegible] خدمت عالي [illegible] رقم [illegible] و [illegible] الملم [illegible]
[illegible]

(10)

جواب [illegible] است

عرض [illegible] [illegible] عالی [illegible] صدق [illegible]
[illegible] و [illegible] و [illegible] و [illegible] قلبي
[illegible] شما [illegible] است [illegible] و [illegible] و [illegible]
[illegible] و [illegible] و [illegible] است [illegible]
[illegible] و [illegible] که [illegible]
[illegible] و [illegible] و [illegible] شدم

(11)

[illegible]

عرض [illegible] جناب عالی شرف وصول ارزانی داشت و [illegible]
سلامتي احوال شريف كمال مسرت و خوشوقتي حاصل شد [illegible] و [illegible]
شما [illegible] جناب عالی و اخلاص و [illegible]
[illegible] و [illegible] در باب [illegible] تعالي [illegible]
[illegible] و [illegible]
[illegible] که [illegible] در [illegible]
[illegible] در [illegible] زیاده زحمت است والسلام

(12)

جواب [illegible] است

عرض [illegible] جناب عالي شرف وصول ارزاني [illegible] و [illegible]
[illegible] شريف كمال مسرت و خوشوقتي روي داد [illegible] در [illegible] حركت از

تحریر جناب مستطاب آقا میرزا علی سلمه الله تعالی زحمت کشیده و بجهت وداع آمده بودند اما چون خود جناب عالی در شهر تشریف نداشتید و شرط وداع بعمل نیامد خیلی متأسف بودم و حقوق ملاطفت های جنابعالی ثابت است و در هرجا باشم فراموش نخواهد شد - تفسیر قرآن جناب عالی درسم امانت در نزد مخلص بود - با همین اعاده دادم و همه اوقات منتظر وصول رقیمجات هستم -

(13)

بتاریخ ۱۹ شهر ذي الحجه ۱۳۲۱

جناب دوست مکرما - رقیمه رسید - از تفصیلی که نوشته بودید مستحضر شدم - از باب ناخوشی سرکار مستر ورد زید عمره حقیقة در بندر هم خیلی ملول و متأسف هستم در اینکه ایشان بکرمان که آمده اند و درین موقع نقاهت ایشان نشود که در بندر هم خیلی شائق ملاقات ایشان هستم - زیاده زحمت است -

CHAPTER IV

Miscellanea

(1)

[illegible]

(2)

[illegible]

(دعا گو علي)

(3)

[illegible]

دو روز دیگر امکان آمدن بمدرسه ندارم - از راه دوستی و محبتی که دارید خواهش میکنم که مرحمت فرموده درسهای را که میخوانید از برای بنده صاف و پاک نوشته و بفرستید تا در هنگام فرصت بخوانم و از درسهای خود عقب نمانم - امیدوارم که مسامحه نخواهند فرمود - ایام دوستی مستدام -

مخلص حقیقی شما ابو القاسم

(4)

نمونهٔ خواستن کتابی از کتاب فروش

سنه ۱۳۳۰ ۴ شهر ربیع الاول طهران

جناب مستطاب آقا میرزا محمد صادق کتاب فروش شیرازی زید مجده عرض میشود مرحمت فرموده بتوسط پست دو جلد کتاب خوش چاپ یکی هدایة الحساب و دیگری مختصر هیئت باسم و عنوان من بفرستید که خیلی ممنون و متشکر خواهم شد و باداره قیمت آنها دو تومان تمبر پست در جوف خط ارسال داشتم - خواهشمندم که مسامحه نفرموده زود زود بفرستید -

زیاده زحمت نمیدهد

دوست شما میرزا احمد بوشهری

(5)

رقعهٔ ابوی

آقا جان! باز این چه درد کمر است که بتو عارض شده که کمر مارا شکست و دل مارا خون کرد - اگرچه عمو تفصیل آنرا تلگراف کرده بود اما باز خیلی نگرانم و امیدوارم که تا رسیدن این نوشته بکلی رفع شده و تلگرافاً مرا از اعادت صحت خود خوشوقت نمائی - چون دیروز هفته بود و از تو کاغذی نرسیده بود میخواستم قلمی برداشته شرحی از تنبلی تو در نوشتن کاغذی بنویسم - معلوم شد که درد کمر مانع بوده و حق داشته - امیر زاده نیز در ایام ناخوشی بتب شدیدی دچار شد و شش روز بستری بود - اطبأ جمع شدند و خوب معالجه کردند - دیروز تبش قطع شده و انشاء الله در هفته پنجم آنها را بکردستان خواهم فرستاد - نمیدانم علت سینه ات چه طور است - البته خودت شرح احوالت

را ببوس. مسرور بودم و موافقت تو در حفظ احترام عرض خیلی اظهار رضامندی
کرده بود. آفرین بر تو و خدا ترا بما زیاده بدارد و طول عمر و صحت مزاج عطا
فرماید. کاغذ نویسی زیاده دارم و بیش ازین فرصت ندارم

(6)

شاهزاده عباس میرزای ملک آرا نوشته است

فدایت حضور مبارکت شوم   مرقومهٔ مبارکه زیارت و از تفضلی که
بالتفصیلی مرحمت از تجدید مأموریت فدوی بالمواجهه فرموده بودند نهایت
سرافرازی حاصل شد و همه وقت التفات مخصوصی نسبت بفدوی داشته اند
در ایفای ریاست تجارت جناب فخامت نصاب حاجی میرزا کاظم امین الممالک
فرمایشات حضرت والا مطاع متبع است خود این بنده نیز با احسان سابقه
مرحمت را دارم و البته لازمهٔ تقویت از ایشان بعمل خواهد آمد. مستدعیم که
همه وقت این بنده را بصدور ارقام مطاعه و رجوع فرمایشات سرافراز فرمائید
زیاده عرضی ندارد. الامر الاشرف الوالا مطاع مطاع

(7)

معتمد السلطان   من همیشه و هر ساعت با شما کار دارم و اگر
گاهی خود شما به استثنای مسائل شخصی خواسته باشید راحت شوید و اصلا
هم ازآنجمله است که با اینکه خیال داشتم بدرشکه بنشینم کالسکهٔ اختلاف دستور العملها
مشغول باشم و رخصتی بشما بدهم. محض آسودگی شما امروز را موقوف کردم
و انشاء الله تعالی از فردا باید مشغول با فکار باشید. زیاده و السلام

(8)

کاغذیست که از پاریس نوشته است

فدایت شوم   مدتی است بزیارت دستخط شریف مشرف نشده و من
خود ا فرصت نگاری و عرض ارادت حضور نکرده ام وقایع و اخبار این ممالک را
خواسته باشید در سر یک مسئله که شرح و بسط آن زیاد لازم دارد نزدیک
است مابین دولت فرانسه و دولت پروس جنگ بزرگی واقع و اختلال و انقلاب

عليمي در عاقبه فریقتان طاهر شود - اما تو ط دوستانهٔ دول ثلاثه یعني ...
د روس و انگلیس مانع شد و مقرر است که در لندن ... ي مرکب از مامورين
بزرگ فرانسه و پروس و ... و انگلیس و روس منعقد شده مسئله متنازعه
را مقرون باحترام طرفين اصلاح نمايند - از اوضاع (اکسپوزیسیون) ... یکماه
است داير و مفتوح شده چه عرض کنم که در بيان نميگنجد - مختصرش اين
است که از اول خلقت آدم تا امروز چنان آسبابي فراهم نيامده و چنين بساطي
گسترده نشده - افسوس که باب علم در مردم ما مسدود و راه آمد و شد در آنها
دشوار گشته و از تحصيل منافع و ... فوايد و اطلاع بر ترقي ملل خارجه محروم
مانده اند - باري براي امتعه مخصوصهٔ خود مان جاي مناسبي بطرح و ترز عمارت
ايران ساخته و آماده شده است - اسبابها هم از قرار اخباري که رسيده ... پنج
... شش روز ديگر خواهند رسيد - هرچه باشد خوب است و باصطلاح فصلا وجود ناقص
به از عدم صرف است - مخلص لا محاله دو روز یکدفعه با ... اکسپوزیسیون ...
و خدا گواه است که غالباً در تشریف نداشتن جناب عالي تأسف ... ميخورم و باکمال
... بر ميگردم که اين مردم مراتب علوم وصنایع را بدرجه کمال رسانيده اند
(و ما هنوز درخم یک کوچه ايم) - بنده زاده ... نوشته بود جناب عالي از
روي کمال مرحمتي که داريد اورا برفتن طهران امر فرموده ايد - جناب ناصرالملک
همين طور فرمايش کرده است و ... را مخصوص همين به تحرير فرستاده اند - زياده
زحمتي ندارد -

(9)

بميرزا..... مستشارالدوله نوشته

جناب جلالت نصابا ... نوشتجات ميرزا محمود خان را ديدم واقعاً ... يار
مرد قابل و آگاهي ... است - دريغ است که بايد طورها افسرده و دماغ سوخته باشد -
با همين ... مشروحه داير بر اخبار او را بوزارت خارجه معرفي نمايد و در ... بيان
لياقت او وزارت خارجه را با ... ماموريت او در بايريد و ضرورت معاش متذکر
نمايد - و در مسئله طاهر خان بعرض ايکه در وقوع منازعه فيمابين حيدرانلو
و جلاليها و رفتن خودش و فرستادن ... معاونت حيدرانلوهاي آنطرف و ...

امکه نسبت بمیرزا محمد خان بی احترامی کرده لازمهٔ مواخذه بعمل آورده و ... ر آ
ازو دار ... که از میرزا محمد خان عذر خواهی نماید و ترضیه بدهد والسلام

(10)

بمتولی باشی مشهد نوشته

فدایت شوم مقدر چنین شد آن یک پسری که سالها در تعلیم و تربیت او خون جگرها خورده رنجها برده بودم بجای گرمابه مبتلا شده من بیچاره در این آخر عمر بچنین ... ای گرفتار آیم و بنیاد این خانواده بکلی خراب و بساط مجلس نکبابو برچیده شود نه تنها بنده گرفتار ... م بلکه جمع کثیری از ... و سربار با این قضای آسمانی در کشمکش اند و در همه امورات از وقوع این حادثه بزرگ و تلف شدن اینهمه ... و سرباز مقیم و شغلی است (که ... الی لسطود کالمرله ندند) رضا بقضاء الله و ... امرو معصود از زحمت افزائی این است که بمقتضای وصیتی که آن ناکام کرده است جنازهٔ او باید در آستانهٔ مقدسه حضرت رضا سلام الله علیه و روحی له الفدا دفن شود استدعا دارم که هرواحت جنازهٔ او را وارد کردند مدفن بفرمائید که جای مناسبی را که معلوم و نمودار باشد برای دفن او معین نمایند و بجهت ملکار خاطر شریف عرض مینمایم که عموی مرحوم زین العابدین خان در موجود حالیه مدفون است چنانچه مقدور و ممکن باشد که او را هم در پهلوی عموی مرحوم دفن نمایند از الطاف مخصوص که نسبت ... حقیقی خود دارند مزید تشکر خواهد بود با این خاطره ... و روزگار سیاهی که دارم زیاده بر این حالت تحریر ندارم و همه روزه منتظر ارجاع خدمات عالی و فرمایشات هستم

(11)

فدایت شوم رقیمه معلی بر تسلیت جناب عالی ... بعد هفدهم ماه کشمکش شرف وصول ارزانی داشته بالماس خاطر شریف را در وقوع این مصیبت شرح و بیان کرده و موجب مزید امتنان شد تسلیتی و اتحاد جناب عالی البته ... ی آنست که خاطر شریف را ترحم و همانی شریک رنجش و غم مخلص دارد خداوند انشاء الله جناب عالی را در دوستی و دوستداری و غمگساری

و گذاري سالهاي سال پاينده و مستدام ندارد و مخلصرا نيز توفيقي كرامت فرمايد كه چنانكه بايد از تلافي مستهاي سامي درآيد - زور بس است چون مطالب تازه ندارم مخمس ايراد جواب اندمختصر را نگاشته و بيش از اين زحمت عالي را روا نداشته - ولي از طرف جناب عالي همه روزه مترصد وصول رقيمه اتم - زياده زحمت است -

NOTES

Chap. I. *Let* (1) — مستطاب—good, agreeable اعاظم — (pl of اعظم) the great اعيان—(pl of عين) grandees دام مجده — may his glory be perpetual ارب —boldness صرف — eating, passing *Let* (2)— مشعر بر اظهار—indicative of مودت— friendship احضار calling into one's presence نور چشمي — my beloved child مستدام —perpetual *Let* (4)— مبارك — good fortune ميمنت —prosperity سامي —exalted, sublime (self) مستدعي petitioner, wisher قرين—connected, joined امتنان—conferring a favour or obligation. *Let* (5)— مستحليه adorned with. آلاف—(pl of الف) thousands تحيه — greeting, salutation اعياد —(pl of عيد) festivals قاطبه — all, every (one's), the whole body تشكيل —forming, organising *Let* (6)— ليلة الاحد —Sunday night *Let* (7)— درك —reaching to معالات بي —incomparable conversation, or society *Let.* (8) اعتذر —excusing one's self, apologizing مصدقانه —truthful, well-founded تلقي —meeting encountering, access *Let* (10)— مودت —love, affection رخ دادن —to countenance ايفاء —observing, fulfilling an engagement نائل شدن —to accomplish one's wishes *Let* (11)— زايد الوصف —beyond description مشحون —full,

complete perfect. *Let* (13)— [illegible] — he cay of [illegible] *Let.* (14)— [illegible] — [illegible] [illegible] in accessible. [illegible] — [illegible] — [illegible] — (pl of [illegible]) [illegible] — (pl. of [illegible]) [illegible] — [illegible] [illegible] — [illegible]

Chap. II *Let* (1) — [illegible] — [illegible] — [illegible] — اکبار — [illegible] — اعتبار — [illegible] — اسرار باطنی — [illegible] to make known [illegible] *Let* (2)— مهر عام — [illegible] represent [illegible] — [illegible] notice to [illegible] — [illegible] — [illegible] — [illegible] letter news or message مسلسلات — (pl. of [illegible]) [illegible] *Let* (3)— اجل — [illegible] most glorious معظم — in excellent [illegible] well arranged. *Let* (4)— [illegible] — being great in rank and honour مفاخره — [illegible] one who directs [illegible] or seconds. *Let* (5)— [illegible] — princely or chief like نبیل — excellent great. *Let* (8)— [illegible] — [illegible] grandeur splendour [illegible] — [illegible] — [illegible] grief *Let* (10)— تاثر — being marked or receiving an impression. دواهی — (pl. of داهیه) sore calamities. داهیه — disastrous calamitous. توصیه — to recommend to admonish charge. *Let* (12) — حسیات — feelings مولمه — painful afflicting رزایا — (pl of رزیه) afflictions. جزیل — much numerous, copious.

Chap. III. *Let* (4) — معارف خواهی — desire for knowledge *Let.* (5)— امثال و اقران — equals and compeers مرحمه —

agreeable, laudable *Let* (7)— دریافت دارد please find (it) *Let* (8) گز the manna of the tamarisk tree. *Let* (9)— متذکر شدن —to remember, or recollect رقم —a writing امضا —signature. ایام الم may the days of thy favour be prolonged! *Let* (10)— ابا —by inheritance. حلقا —by temparament, or nature تسعیر fixing price upon provisions, or commodities of any kind, assizing مستر ود —Mr Wood

Chap. IV. *Let* (1)— مواظب —assiduously attending to. پرستار obediently looking after *Let* (2)— مدیر —the manager of an institution برآمدن —to open, discover, to go through از عهده بر آمدن —to prove successful. *Let* (3)— محبت love, affection مسامحه —negligence, coolness *Let* (4)— پست —post تمر پست —postage stamp در جوف under cover of the letter *Let* (5)— نگران —anxious نوبه — post نوبهٔ شدیدی —a severe peroxysm of fever *Let* (6)— ابقاء —establishing, preserving, sparing ریاست headship. فرمایشات —commands, wishes مطاع —obeyed, one who is or ought to be obeyed متبع —imitative, being followed or acted upon *Let* (7) استناد —leaning against, or depending on راحت شدن—to be at rest from work *Let* (8)— اختلال —disorder, tumult. حاشیه —precincts دوله the Austrian power *Let* (9)— حیدرانلو and جلالیها —two tribal names ترضیه —satisfaction *Let* (10)— درگذشتن —to die تذکار —a help to memory *Let* (11)— تالمات —pl of تالم grief, torment

SECTION V

Examination Papers

(Cal —1909)

The most famous of Mahmud's expeditions were the twelfth and the sixteenth. The twelfth expedition in A.D 1018-19 was against Kanauj and the sacred city of Mathura or Muttra on the Jumna. Mahmud was now determined to penetrate into the heart of Hindustan His army consisted of 100,000 horse and 20,000 foot; these were gathered from all parts of his dominions including the recent conquests which he had made in Bukhara and Samarkand. He marched from Peshawar along the foot of the mountains, crossing the Punjab rivers as near to their sources as possible and presented himself before Kanauj This was a stately city full of incredible wealth and its kings, who often held the title of Maharaj Adhiraj kept a splendid court. The Raja threw himself on the generosity of Mahmud, who admitted him to his friendship and after three days left his city uninjured From thence he advanced to Mathura sacred as the birth place of Krishna, which was given up to the soldiers for twenty days Its temples struck Mahmud with admiration and kindled in him the desire to cover the barren rocks of Ghazni with similar edifices. Hindu slaves after this were sold in the army of the conqueror at two rupees each.

Sacred— مقدّس Heart of Hindustan— ممالکِ اندرونی هند

To penetrate— داخل شدن New conquests— مسخرهای تازه

Along— بدرازی Foot (of a mountain)— پائین دامنه

Source (of a river)— مبدا منبع

Full of incredible wealth— که افسانهٔ دولتش از حدِ اعتبار گذشته

Threw himself on the generosity of Mahmud—

سر بر خطِ فرمانِ محمود نهاده طالب مرحمتِ اُو گشت —

Uninjured— بآن هیچ ضرری نرسانیده

To be given up to— بر للیغما شدن

To kindle (=give rise to)— پیدا کردن

Barren rocks— سنگهای ویرانه

(Cal.—1910).

The Czar often went out disguised in order to satisfy his own mind as to the condition of his subjects One day in a solitary walk near Moscow, he entered a small village, and pretending to be overcome by fatigue, implored relief from several of the inhabitants His dress was ragged, his appearance mean, but what ought to have excited the compassion of the villagers, and ensured a kind reception, produced a refusal Full of indignation at such inhuman treatment he was just going to leave the place, when he noticed another dwelling to which he had not yet applied for assistance It was the poorest cottage in the village The emperor hastened to this and knocked at the door A peasant opened it and asked him what he wanted "I am almost dying of fatigue and hunger," answered the Czar, "can you give me a night's lodging?" "Alas!" said the peasant, "you will have but poor fare, you have come at an unlucky time—for my wife is ill, but come in, you will at least be sheltered from cold, and you shall be welcome to what we have"

Czar— امپراطور روس

Went out disguised— عادتِ تبدیل گردی اختیار کرده بود

Subjects— رعایا Moscow— مسکو

To pretend— تظاهر نمودن

To be overcome by fatigue— از رنج و کلفت دست بسته شدن

To implore relief— دستگیری خواستن

Ragged— دریده Mean— پوچ - خوار

What— The condition which

Compasion— ترحّم - مروّت - شفقت

To excite— محرّکِ کاری بودن

To ensure kind reception (=treatment)— ملتزمِ سلوکِ نیک بودن

Refusal— انکار Inhuman— بی مهرانه

To notice— نگاهِ کسی افتادن (به) To knock— کوبیدن

I am almost dying— جان بلب آمده ام

To give a lodging— منزل دادن Poor fare— محض طعامِ غریبانه

Unlucky time— سعد روزي رنجِ ناموافق

You shall be welcome to what we have—

آنچه حاضر است از تو مضايقه نداريم —

(Cal —1911)

Okous Agha said his uncle to him, whilst everyone seemed to listen with great respect to what he would say Okous Agha, you are my brother's son; you are my child you are the head of our tribe and our best support and protection. If I were to advise you to give up the mare to the *pasha*, you would think me unworthy of being a Kurd and a Yezedi and even were he now to get possession of her we should not be spared; for such is the experience I have of Turkish Governors that when once they have a pretext in hand for oppression they never fail to make use of it. Therefore I am of your opinion—we cannot remain here. Old as I am and accustomed as I have been from my earliest infancy to graze our flocks and herds upon these mountains—to see the sun rise over yonder hill and set in that distant plain—much as I love these spots upon which our ancestors have been bred and born yet it shall not be said that I have been the cause of the ruin of our tribe I am therefore for immediate departure delay now would be dangerous.

Okous Agha— اوكوز آقا

Head— سردار رئيس

Support and protection— تكيه و پناه حامي و محافظ

You would think me unworthy &c.—

مرا لايقِ قبيلهٔ كرد و يزيدي نمي پنداري —

We should not be spared— مارا هرگز نخواهند بخشيد

Such is the experience I have of Turkish Governors—

در بابِ بيگلر بيگيانِ تركي تجربه ام چنين است —

To have a pretext in hand— بهانهٔ بدستِ كسي افتادن

They never fail to make use of it —

هرگز آنرا از دست عمل رايگان نمي دهند —

I am of your opinion— من با تو متفق الرأي هستم

From my earliest infancy— از آغاز طفولیتم

Flock— گله   Herd— رمه

To be accustomed— مأنوس شدن

To be bred and born— پیدا شدن و پرورش یافتن

I am for immediate departure

— من در آنم که بزودی (فی الفور) کوچ کنیم .

(Cal. 1912)

On July 20th the day after we came home from our tour among the hills, the cannon of the city announced at an early hour that His Highness Farman Farma was about to make his official entry into Kirman We were much pleased at his arrival, as he and my brother were friends of about 20 years' standing, and he was considered to be the most civilized and enligntened of Persian princes His home and property were at Tabriz where he had left his family and his wife who was the daughter of the Vali Ahd, the heir apparent to the throne, while he himself was cousin to the Shah The prince was a short, slight man about thirty five and wore spectacles, being very near sighted He could speak French fluently, the acquisition of that language being one of the chief accomplishments of the Militaty College at Teheran where he had been educated, and I found him most chatty and agreeable. Of all European languages French is undoubtedly the most in vogue among the educated Persians Its study was first encouraged by Fateh Ali Shah, who on the great occasion of his receiving a letter from the first Nepolean was mortified to find that he had not a subject in the whole of his kingdom capable of translating the Emperor's message To prevent the recurrence of a like catastrophe he sent a band of chosen youths to be educated in France, and French has ever since been spoken by a cultivated minority, the Shah himself being able to talk with tolerable proficiency

After we came home (= after our return)— بعد از مراجعت ما .

Tour among the hills— سیر کوهستان

(The sound of) the cannon— آواز توپ

Was about to make his official entry into Kirman—

— عنقریب بمأموریت خود بادبدبه و طنطنهٔ تمام داخل کرمان شود

He and my brother were friends of about &c. —

بیست سال است که با برادرم سابقهٔ دوستی و الفت می دارد —

Civilized — متمدن Enlightened — صاحب کمال

Home — مسکن Property — ملک (u in the pl of املاک)

Family — عیال Cousin — عمو زاده

Short — کوتاه قد Slight — باریک

Of about thirty-five — که قریب به سی و پنج مرحلهٔ عمر پیموده

Spectacles — عینک Near sighted — باصره اش نزدیک بین

French — زبان فرانسه Fluently — با الفت و فصاحت

Chief — بهادر Accomplishment — کمال هنر

Military College — درسگاه نظامیه Chatter — هم صحبت یاوه گو

Agreeable — خوش طبع Is the most in vogue — بسیار رواج دارد

Educated — تربیت یافته To be mortified — آزرده شدن

The Emperor's message — پیغام امپراطور

To prevent the recurrence of a like catastrophe —

تا چنین مشکلی باز در پیش نیاید —

A band of chosen youths — گروهی از جوانان برگزیده

A cultivated minority — معدودی از تربیت یافتگان

With tolerable proficiency — با قدری مهارت

(Cal — 1913)

We sent spies from time to time, continued the old man to bring intelligence of what was doing and took up our abode among the rocks and cliffs of the mountains About noon the next day the party appeared and when they discovered that we had fled their rage and disappointment were great The servants of the prince went from house to house and drove in the doors with violence The only object which at all restrained them was one of the old women who, having acquired sufficient strength to rise from her bed attacked them with such reproaches, that none was bold enough to face her The prince sent for

provisions from a neighbouring town, and took up his abode in my house. Wherever they found corn, they seized upon it they burnt our implements of husbandry for fire-wood, and, when they were expended, had recourse to doors and windows, and even to the beams and rafters of our houses Their horses were picketed in the new wheat, and they even cut down a great extent of it to carry away. In short, we are entirely ruined, we have neither money, clothes, cattle, houses nor provisions, and except in God and you,' addressing himself to Sher Ali and me, 'we have no other refuge'

From time to time—گاه گاه To send spy—جاسوس گماشتن.

To (=that they may) bring intelligence تا خبر آرند

Of what was doing از آنچه که می گذشت.

Rocks and cliffs—کوه و دره ها

To take-up abode—نشستن - مقیم شدن

About noon—قریب بوقت ظهر

Their rage and disappointment were great—

غضب و حرمانشان پایان نداشت —

Drove in the doors with violence—

در های خانه بزور شکسته داخل شدند

The only object which at all &c—

چیزی که قدری مانع ایشان گشت یکی از زنان پیر بود

To attack with reproaches—سرزنش و دشنام دادن

That no one was bold enough to face her—

که هیچ کس تاب مقابل شدنش نداشت—

Sent for provisions—امر فرمود تا آذوقه و علوفه آوردند

Neighbouring town—قصبهٔ متصل.

Implements of husbandry—آلات و ادوات کشت و زرع

For fire-wood—بجای هیزم و هیمه

Beams and rafters تیر های خانها.

Their horses were picketed in the new wheat—

اسپان را بر کشتِ زار گندم نو بستند —

Cut down to carry away— درو و بردند

In short we are entirely ruined—

خلاصه ما را بغایت تباه ساختند —

We have neither money clothes, cattle &c.—

الحال بی پول و بی لباس بی گاو و خر اند
نه خانه و نه مانده بجز شما و خدا پناهی نداریم —

(Cal —1914.)

A caravan, consisting of fifty-six camels laden with rice and dried fruits and woollen goods, proceeding through one of the passes leading into India from Kabul was suddenly set upon by a band of marauders, who were lying in wait for it where the pass was narrowest. The men accompanying the caravan about forty in number made a determined resistance, and shot several of their assailants but having been taken by surprise they were eventually overpowered after losing ten of their number The rest helplessly submitted to the plunder of their goods and fled with their lives. The robbers drove away forty-three camels with their loads, the remainder having been either disabled during the assault or had cast their loads and escaped unpursued into the hills. After the robbers had disappeared with their spoils, the men whom they had plundered tracked them to a village about four miles from the pass, and when they had failed to seize them, they came into our territory to apply for help to recover their property

Consisting of— عدة از

Laden with rice and dried fruits and woollen goods—

که بار های از برنج و خشکبار و قماش بود —

Proceeding = was proceeding Pass— کوتل تنگ راه

Leading into India from Kabul— که از کابل بهندوستان می رود

Suddenly (= when suddenly)— که ناگاه

A band of marauders— طائفهٔ یغماچیان (غارتگران)

To set upon— برسر ریختن (use Act Voice Past Tense with 'a band of marauders' as subject).

To lie in wait— در کمینگاه نشستن

To make a determined resistance—

کمر بسته در مقاومت کوشی پاداری نمودن —

Assailant— حمله ور　　To shoot a person— گلوله بکسی زدن

To be taken by surprise— غافل گیر شدن - بیخبر یورش خوردن

Eventually— عاقبت - بالاخره　　Helplessly — از روی لاچاری

To flee with one's life— جان بسلامت گریختن

To be disabled— بی کاره شدن

Unpursued (=and no one pursued them)— وکسی تعقیبشان نکرد

To track— در اثر رفتن - پی زدن

To fail to seize— از گرفتاری قاصر شدن (در نیافتن)

Territory— کشور - بلاد .

(Cal.—1915)

A

Kirman is a kingdom on the eastern confines of Persia, which was, formerly governed by its own monarchs, in hereditary succession, but since the Tartars have brought it under their dominion they appoint governors to it at their pleasure In the mountains of this country are found the precious stones that we call turquoises They manufacture here in great perfection all the articles necessary for warlike equipment Upon leaving Kirman, you travel for eight days along a plain, by a pleasant road, and rendered still more delightful by the abundance of partridges and other games You also frequently meet towns and castles, as well as scattered habitations.

To be governed by— زیر حکومت کسی بودن

In hereditary succession— بترتیب وراثت

To appoint— مأمور نمودن — مقرّر کردن

At their pleasure— بطور دلخواه خود

All the articles necessary for warlike equipment—

همهٔ آلات و یراقِ حرب را —

In great perfection— با کمال مهارت و خوبي

To manufacture— درست کردن   A pleasant road— راهِ قشنگی

Partridge— کبک   Game— شکار صید

B.

Changis Khan began his reign with so much justice and moderation that he was beloved and revered more as a deity than as a sovereign The fame of his great and good qualities spreading over the countries of Jorza and Borgu, all the Tartars, however dispersed, placed themselves under his command Finding himself thus at the head of so many brave men, he became ambitious of emerging from the deserts and wildernesses by which he was surrounded and gave them orders to equip themselves with bows and such other weapons as they were expert at using He then proceeded to render himself master of cities and provinces; and such was the effect produced by his character for justice and other virtues that wherever he went he found the people disposed to submit to him.

Moderation— معتدل روي   اعتدال

That he was beloved and revered &c.—

که بار از عدل و تعظیمِ سلطاني گلفته
محبت و احترام ایزدي را مرعی داشتند —

Great and good qualities— خصائل گزید و خصائل پاکیزه

Dispersed— پراکنده متفرّق

To become ambitious of— در دل حوصله را جا دادن

Deserts and wildernesses— بادیه و ویرانه ها

To equip oneself— براي خود کار سازي کردن

As they were expert at using—

که در ا ۱ الِ آنها خیلي مهارت و سلیقه داشتند —

To render oneself master of— در تصرّف و تسلّطِ خود آوردن

Character— شهرت نیک نامي   Disposed— مایل

(Pat —1921)

Towards the end of September Syed Ahmed visited his home at Delhi, just after the taking of the city On reaching his house he heard that his mother had taken refuge in one of her *syce's* houses, and he followed her there On his calling out to her she opened the door, crying out, 'Why have you come here? We are being killed You will be killed also!' He told her not to be afraid, as he had a special pass He then found out that for five days she had been living on the horses' grain, and was very weak. For three days she had had no water He hurried off to the fort, and brought a jug of water

Taking of the city — فتح شهر   To take refuge — پناه گرفتن

Special pass — تذکرهٔ مخصوص   To live on — بسر بردن

To hurry off — دويدن

(Pat 1922)

One day as I was walking up and down my verandah I thought I perceived a white man floating down the Ganges, a very unusual sight, for no European thought of venturing into the river on account of the danger from crocodiles When the object came opposite my bungalow all doubt was removed, for it certainly was a European, his face just above the water He seemed to be swimming gently, without any effort to gain the shore Soon after he had passed, my surprise was converted into horror on observing an alligator following him He seemed to have his eyes fixed upon the man, but abstained from seizing him for the present, the distance between them remaining the same. Before I could take any steps to save the man both were out of sight

To walk up and down — مشي کردن در

Verandah — علام گردش - درآمده

I thought I perceived چنان به نظرم افتاد که

A whiteman — مرد فرنگي

Is floating down the Ganges —

شناوري نموده پائينِ آبِ رودِ گنگ مي رود —

It was a very unusual &c — اين بود منظرِ عجيبي

To think of venturing into the river

در رود خانه خوابِ شناوري کردن داشتن —

Crocodile alligator— نهنگ   Bungalow— منزل

His face &c.— چهره اش بر سطح آب بس نمودار بود

My surprise &c. horror— حیرتم بهول مبدل گردید

On observing—as I observed that.

To abstain from seizing him— از گرفتن اجتناب نمودن

To take step— تدبیر کردن

To be out of sight— از نظر غایب شدن

(Pat.—1926)

(A)

They allege that a certain fox came to a wood in which was a drum suspended on a tree and whenever the wind blew on the branches of this tree it stirred them so that they beat the drum and there became audible in it a loud and sonorous sound So the fox directed his steps towards it, because of what he heard of the loudness of its sound And when he came to it he found it bulky and made sure within himself of an abundance of fat and meat. Wherefore he struggled with it until he had split it asunder; but when he perceived it to be hollow containing naught within it, he said "I know not whether perchance the feeblest of things be not the loudest in outcry and the greatest in bulk.

To stir— حرکت دادن

There became audible &c.— از آن صدای بلند و رفیع خروج می کرد

Bulky— کلفت ضخیم

To make sure of within himself— به مقالهٔ خود یقین پنداشتن

That it had an abundance &c.—

که اندرونش از گوشت و شحم ملا مال است —

To struggle with it— به آن درانداختن

To split asunder— ترکیدن   Hollow— تهي

Containing naught &c.— و هیچش درمیان نیست

I know not &c.— { حیرانم که شاید که هرچه صدایش بزرگترین
و جسم فراخترین دارد درجه کمترین باشد

(B)

Hullaj was an Arabised Persion, born in Persia, but educated in Irak, where he enjoyed the privilege of being instructed by Junaid The story of his life as handed down by Shiah and Sunni writers has been much exaggerated It is clear, however, that he had a great number of disciples who revered him as their spiritual guide and ascribed to him almost supernatural powers

(Pat—1927)

(A)

One day a mother said to her son, who had returned from his school late, 'It is six o'clock and your school closes at four, where have you been all this time ?' 'O mother !' said the boy, 'when we play we forget everything else, and do not think of coming home early Is my tea ready ? Give me something to eat and drink, for I am very hungry' The boy's mother was deceived Her son's answer led her to think that he had been playing with his companions But such was not the case He had been detained by his teacher, because he had not learnt his lessons

(B)

Two goats that were brought up in the same glen, left it, and by chance met on a bridge, which was a mere plank, and would not hold them both side by side One of the fair ones set her foot on it, and her friend was not slow to do the same They came up step by step, till they met half-way, and as they could not pass, and were both too proud to give in, each did her best to push by with a skip and jump, till at last the plank broke and they both fell in and were borne off by the stream

(C)

Fortunately, however, the mass of the people remained loyal. The Mutiny indeed, was a mere military mutiny, though turned to political account here and there by certain disaffected chiefs, like Nana Saheb and others Even all the native soldiers did not join in the revolt The Bombay and the Madras Sepoys remained, on the whole, true to the British Raj The Punjab was kept loyal by the able measure of its Chief Commissioner, Sir John Lawrence, and the Sikh chiefs stood nobly by the Paramount Power None of the great chiefs joined the mutineers, while the common people, even in the affected districts, did not show any sympathy for the rebel Sepoys

joined, 'I am the monarch of this place' The man was terrified, and asked, 'Do you know who I am' The king said he did not He rejoined, 'I am the son of such a merchant, three days in every month I lose my senses, and this is one of those days' The king laughed, and ended the conversation

(B)

Now Sam, the chief of all the warriors of Shah Minuchahar, was a childless man, and this grieved him very deeply Years passed away and at length a son was born to him, beautifful of face and limb, but strange to say, with hair perfectly white like that of an old man Then Sam listened to the foolish talk of those around him who said that this betokened some great calamity to his house, and that it would be well to get rid of the child He even allowed himself to be persuaded that the babe was a demon child, and at length determined to take the boy up the steep sides of Mount Elburz, there to leave him to be devoured by wild beasts Now on the top of Mount Elburz, whose head touched the stars of heaven, dwelt a marvellous bird called the Simurgh, in a beautiful nest made of ebony and sandal wood twined with branches of aloe Flying about in search of food wherewith to feed his little ones, the great bird came upon the white headed baby, as he lay naked among the rocks, gnawing his fingers for hunger, and bore him off in his talons to his nest

(Dac—1924)

A man went for the purpose of seeing a certain person, to his house, at the time of mid-day That person, from his own house, saw the man coming, and said to his servants, "When he asks where the master of the house is, you will say that he is now gone to dine with some one" In the meanwhile, the man having arrived, asked, "Where is the master of the house?" They said, "Our master is gone out" The man said, "A great fool he is to have gone out of his house in the midst of such heat" The master of the house having put his head out of the window, said, "You are a very great fool to wander about at this time for I have been all day in my own house"

(Dac—1925)

A man, who lived in a king's court, was stung by a scorpion while he was in the very act of speaking to the king about certain affairs of the State The sting gave him great pain But he showed no sign of pain that he felt, nor did he stop to kill the scorpion, until he had left the king's presence When the king heard of this he was very much surprised, and having called the man to his presence, inquired why he had suffered so much pain in

silence. The man replied I did not wish to disturb Your Majesty with the pain that I felt. The king was so pleased with this reply and with the firmness which the man had shown that he raised him to a higher rank.

(Dac.—1926)

A little boy named Ram Charan used to go to school everyday He was eight years old and the only son of his parents who loved him very much. One day his teacher sent word to his father that he had behaved badly in school The next morning after he had eaten his breakfast and as he was just going to school, his father called out to him, Ram, wait a minute I have something to say to you. When his mother heard this she came and sat on a stool to listen to what was said Your teacher tells me said his father that you behaved badly yesterday I am very sorry to hear this What did you do?

(Dac—1927)

God made me. He gave me all the good things that I have He gives me the air that I breathe the food that I eat the clothes I wear the home I dwell in, and the friends that are dear to me. He gave me ears to hear eyes to see a nose to smell a mouth to taste and to speak hands to feel and to work and legs and feet to walk; above all He has given me a mind to think and to know right from wrong

(Bom—1925)

Mohammadans dare not touch the Quran without being first washed and purified; and they read it with the greatest care and respect never holding it below their girdles. They swear by it, consult it on all occasions, carry it with them to war write sentences of it on their banners suspend it from the neck as a charm and always place it on a place of honour in their houses The Quran made Arabic a literary language, it has influeneed the belief and conduct of countless millions of men, and it is at this day revered and obeyed by an increasing number of persons.

(All—1904)

Alptegin had a slave named Sabuktegin whom he had purchased from a merchant who brought him from Turkistan and whom by degrees he had raised to so much power and trust that at his death he was the effective head of his Government and in the end became his successor Most authorities assert that Alptegin gave Sabuktegin his daughter in marriage, and himself ap-

pointed him his heir, and others confirm the immediate succession, though not the previous marriage But Ferishta's account is, that Alptegin, dying in A D 975, A H 365, left a son named Is-hak, whom Sabuktegin accompanied to Bokhara Is hak was then appointed by Mansur Samani to be Governor of Ghazni, and Sabuktegin his deputy Is-hak died in A. D 977, A H 367, when Sabuktegin was acknowledged as his successor, and married Alptegin's daughter

(All —1905)

(A)

As soon as Yosuf Shah had taken possessin of the throne he established rules for the strict administration of justice throughout his dominion and having summoned the judges and municipal officers to attend him, he informed them that the laws were to be administered with impartiality to the poor and to the rich, to the weak and to the powerful, and if he discovered any of them swayed in their decisions either by interest or affection, he would punish them most severely He then ordered them to send him a weekly report of their proceedings, and being himself very learned and well informed in the law, he frequently decided on points which had perplexed the most experienced Qazies and Mufties

(B)

Mahmud's taste for architecture, whether engendered, or only developed, by what he witnessed at Muthra and Canouj, displayed itself in full perfection after his return from that expedition He then founded the mosque called "The Celestial Bride," which, in that age, was the wonder of the East It was built of marble and granite, of such beauty as to strike every beholder with astonishment, and was furnished with rich carpets and candelabras, and other ornaments of silver and gold It is probable, from the superiority long possessed by Indian arrhitects, that the novelty and elegance of the design had even a greater effect than the materials in commanding so much admiration

(All —1906)

Turandukht, the daughter of Khusro Perwiz She was elevated on the throne of Persia some time after the death of her brother Shiroya 631 A D We are told by Persian historians that this Queen restored the sacred cross, which had been borne away from Jerusalem by Khusro Perwiz and by that act acquired great power with the Roman emperor But this is evidently erroneous for there is no doubt that the emperor Heraclius, when he returned from Persia, carried that precious relic to Constantinople, which

was deemed a more splend d trophy of victory than all h s spoils and conquests. Turandukht ruled Persia only one y ar and four months. She was succeeded by her cous n and lover Shah Shahnarda. He had reigned only one month when he was d po d and Arz m dukht another daughter of Khusro P rwiz, was raised to the throne 632 A. D. Th s pr ncess who was al k d tinguish d by her sense and beauty r solved to tak the wl ole m nagement of the affa rs of the k gd m into her hands. She would not even appo nt a wazir. But th fatal pass on of a Per ian nobl defeated all her de ign. Farrukh Hurmuz the G vernor of Khurasan, fell viol ntly in lov with he or perhaps w th her dominions. He proceeded to court an l mad his lo e known to h royal mist ss; sh refus d h r hand and he wa soo n after murdered through h r in t gat on. As soon as his melancholy fa e wa known to his son Ru tam he co lected a large army and marched from Khu asan to Madain. Th queen wa u able to oppose him; and the young chi f revenged h s fath r by putting her to a cruel death. After her demise Farrukhz d the son of Khusro Perwiz by a femal singer of Isfahan wa ra sed to the throne, but before he had re gned a month his days w re t rm at ed by p ison. Such were the events which immediately preceded the reign of Yazdijard III and the fall of the Pers an monarchy.

(All —1907)

(A)

The character of Aurngzeb is one of the strangest in history and most d fficult to read. That he was a s ncerely religious man there can be no doubt. Islam I ss in h s private l fe and doing hi public dut es accordi g to h s lights con cientiou ly and unremittingly. He was too a man of culture and r fin ment and strange as it may appear rather prone to mildn ss than everity. I deed, much (f th mi governm nt of his reign s attributable to the to great leniency with which he treated corrupt officials. His personal courage is undeniable and h s whole life bears witness to hi cooln ss and readiness of resources in times o danger. Such a man should have made a successful ruler of a great empire but against these h gh and kingly qu lities must be set off a suspiciousn ss p rversity and narrown s almost un ex mpled in h story. He n ver really trusted any man, and i return was never thoroughly tru ted by any man. It was thi particular trait in his character more perhaps than his ob tidacy and bigotry which ali nated his subjects from him, and he was in consequence of it always badly served.

(B)

Baber was a descendant of Timur and on the strength of this he laid claim to the throne of Delhi; but the immediate cause of

his coming was an invitation from Daulat Khan, the governor of the Punjab, to assist in dethroning the tryant Ibrahim Lodi He had long cherished the desire of conquering Hindustan, and he rightly judged the present to be the most propitious moment He lost no time therefore in marching upon Lahore, but before he reached the city, the treacherous gevernor was driven out by the troops of Ibrahim Lodi Baber quickly disposed of the enemy and chased them out with great slaughter The bazaar was burnt and the city plundered, and then he moved on again But he had not gone far before he met with a serious and unexpected check, for Daulat Khan, who had repented of his treachery, went into rebellion against him and took the field with forty thousand men He was forced, therefore, to turn back and confront the danger threatening him in the rear The insurrection proved less formidable than it looked, for at the approach of the Mughals, Daulat Khan's army vanished Having restored order and secured the country behind him, Baber resumed his march on Delhi

(All —1908)

(A)

The Czar Ivan, who reigned over Russia about the middle of the sixteenth century, often went out disguised, in order to satisfy his own mind as to the condition of his subjects One day, in a solitary walk near Mascow, he entered a small village, and, pretending to be overcome by fatigue, implored relief from several of the inhabitants His dress was ragged, his appearance mean, but what ought to have excited the compassion of the villagers, and ensured a kind reception, produced a refusal Full of indignation at such inhuman treatment, he was just going to leave the place, when he noticed another dwelling to which he had not yet applied for assistance It was the poorest cottage in the village The Emperor hastened to this, and knocked at the door A peasant opened it, and asked him what he wanted "I am almost dying with fatigue and hunger," answered the Czar, "can you give me a night's lodging ?" "Alas !" said the peasant, "you will have but poor fare, you have come at an unlucky time—for my wife is ill, but come in, you will at least be sheltered from the cold, and what we have you shall be welcomed to"

(B)

Of the provinces which had been subject to the house of Tamerlane, the wealthiest was Bengal No part of India possessed such natural advantages, both for agriculture and for commerce The Ganges, rushing through a hundred channels to the sea, has formed a vast plain of rich mould which, even under the tropical sky, rivals the verdure of an English April The rice fields yield an increase such as is elsewhere unknown Spices,

sugar, vegetable oils, are produced with marvellous exuberance The rivers afford an inexhaustible supply of fish. The desolate islands along the sea coast overgrown by noxious vegetation and swarming with deers and tigers, supply the cultivated districts with abundance of salt.

(All—1910)

(A)

(a) Should any plunderer be robbing people on the high road, he ought to be seized

(b) In ten days time it will have been fifteen years since the lady came to India

(c) We cannot submit to be treated with such contempt

(d) He determined that he would certainly make a note of it

(B)

Mahmud was the greatest prince of his time He had all the *elements of* greatness, exemplary *prudence* boundless *activity* and great courage His success in war has given him the highest military reputation, while the perfect order which prevailed throughout his vast dominions notwithstanding his frequent absence in the field proves that he likewise possessed the greatest talent for civil affairs His court was the most magnificent in Asia; his taste in architecture was more particularly developed[1] after his return from Cunnauj and Muttra when he determined to make his own capital worthy of his empire He erected a mosque of granite and marble which filled every beholder with astonishment, and became the wonder of Central Asia He founded a university at Ghazni, and furnished it with a large collection of valuable manuscripts and a museum of natural curiosities He set aside a lac of rupees a year for pensions to learned men and his munificence he brought together a larger assembly of literary genius than was to be found in any other Asiatic court

(All—1911)

(A)

Of the various powers and faculties we possess there are some which nature seems both to have planted and reared so as to have left nothing to human industry Such are the powers which we have in common with the brutes and which are necessary to the preservation of the individual or the continuance of the kind. There are other powers of which nature has only planted the seeds in our minds, but has left the rearing of them to human culture It is by the proper culture of these that we are capable of all those improvement in intellectuals, in taste and in morals which exalt and dignify human nature; while on the other

hand, the neglect or perversion of them makes it degeneracy and corruption

(B)

If we consider the world in its subserviency to man, one would think it was made for our use, but if we consider it in its natural beauty and harmony, one would be apt to conclude it was made for our pleasure The sun, which is as the great soul of the universe, and produces all the necessaries of life, has a particular influence in cheering the mind of man, and making the heart glad Those several living creatures which are made for our service or sustenance, at the same time either fill the woods with their music, furnish us with game, or raise pleasing ideas in us by the delightfulness of their appearance Fountains, lakes, and rivers, are as refreshing to the imagination as to the soil through which they pass

(All.—1912)

(A)

Aurangzeb's last military operation was a retreat to Ahmednagar, the nature of which may be conceived from his exhausted cattle and dis-spirited troops All hurried on in disorder and dejection, deafened with the incessant firing kept up by the marksmen, alarmed by the shouts and charges of the lancers, and every moment expecting a general attack to complete their dispersion and destruction Such, indeed, was the state of a portion of the army, and it is a subject of pious exultation to the Musalman historians, that the emperor himself escaped falling into the hands of the enemies whom he had once so much despised Ahmednagar, from whence, twenty years before, he had marched in so much power and splendour, elated with conquest, received the remains of his ruined greatness, and was soon to witness the close of his earthly career

(B)

John Howard, an English gentleman of fortune, is famous for the exertions he made to lessen human suffering Being a man in easy circumstances, he might have spent his time, as most men have done under like conditions, in idleness and self indulgence But he preferred a life of self-sacrifice for the good of others, which has won for him the name of Philanthropist,—a name which stands or ought to stand higher in the annals of history than that of the greatest conquerors His career of beneficence is a remarkable illustration of the Power of Sympathy On a voyage to Lisbon, when he was quite a young man, he was taken by the French, and thrown into a wretched dungeon at Brest

(All.—1913)

Persian the French of the East has long been recognized as one of the most euphonious expressive and important of Oriental languages. Unfortunately however to most Englishmen who have spent any time in India Persian is known only in its antique form and pronunciation, which are still in large measure retained on the Afghan frontier and in other parts of India This prevents the student from being intelligible to the natives of Persia should he for any reason find it desirable to visit that country The writer's own experience enables him to speak with some little authority on this subject Having studied and learnt to speak Persian in the Punjab he found on endeavouring to enter into conversation with Shirazis in Bombay that he was almost if not quite unintelligible to them since many of the words, phrases and idioms he had learnt from the pages of Sadi and other classical Persian authors have become obsolete and have been superseded by others in the modern language as spoken in Persia itself It was as if a foreigner having discovered some corner of the world in which English was still spoken by the learned just as it occurs in the Elizabethan writers and with the pronunciation of that distant day had learnt the language from them and then tried to converse with the English people of to-day His conversation would seem at once stilted and vulgar and it would amuse every one with whom he came in contact.

(All —1914)

The body considered as the soul's instrument The soul in respect of the body may be compared to an excellent workman who cannot labour in his occupation without some necessary instruments, and those well wrought and prepared to his hand The most skilful musician cannot raise any harmony from an instrument of music out of tune. We are therefore to be very careful of these external parts since the spirit which moves in them can naturally produce no action of worth if this instrumental frame be out of order Hence it is that those men who abuse their bodies by the violence of intemperate sins are somtimes over taken either with a sleepy dullness or a wild distraction. Their souls are not able to produce any worthy act after a defect contracted upon their organs or else are unwilling to be restrained and confined to a bad lodging or a loathsome dungeon.

(All.—1924)

(A)

Whilst his disciples were seeking safety in other lands from the persecutions of their enemies, he himself stood bravely at his post,

and amidst every insult and outrage pursued his mission Again they came to him with promises of honour and riches, to seduce him from His duty, the reply was, as before, full of life, full of faith "I am neither desirous of riches nor ambitious of dignity nor of dominion, I care for my duty only If you accept the message I bring you, the King will favour you if you reject I shall be patient and the King will judge everything rightly" They mocked him and persecuted him, but his simple trust and sublime faith rose superior to all their materialistic scepticism

(B)

They relate that a fox entered a thicket There he saw a drum cast down by the side of a tree, and whenever the wind stirred, the branches of the tree struck the drum and a terrific noise assailed the fox's ears When the fox saw the bulkiness of the drum and heard the majesty of its voice he greedily imagined that its flesh and skin would prove worthy of its voice He strove until he had rent it asunder In fact he found nothing more than skin Remorsefully he said, "I did not realize that wherever there is the great bulk and the more terrible noise, there is the less profit"

(All—1925)

(A)

The Egyptians are said to have been the first to recognise the doctrine of a future life and the principles of human conduct They believed in future recompense and punishment Man descended into the tomb only to rise again The soul of man was considered immortal like the sun and accomplishing the same pilgrimages All bodies descended into the lower world, but they were not all assured of resurrection Annihilation was the lot of the sinners the righteous entered into perfect happiness

(B)

It is related of a certain tormentor of men that he struck a certain pious man on the head with a stone The Dervish dared not avenge himself at the time, but kept the stone by him till the King imprisoned him in a dungeon Thereupon the Dervish came and smote him on the head with the stone. 'Who art thou,' cried the other, 'and why dost thou strike me with this stone?' 'I am that same man,' replied the Dervish, 'on whose head thou didst, on such-and-such a date, strike this same stone' 'Where wert thou all this time?' inquired the other 'I was afraid of thy position,' answered the Dervish, 'but now seeing thee in this plight, I seized my opportunity'

(Cal —1921)

(A)

Rariya was the daughter of Altamash one of the Moghul kings of Delhi, who lived in the thirteenth century. She is the only woman besides our Queen Victoria who has ruled Delhi. Altamsh had sons also but when he was dying he said: "You will find no one better fitted to rule the kingdom than my daughter Rariya." And after his nobles had suffered for some time the cruelty and injustice of Rariya's half brother they began to see that the king was right. And Rariya herself helped them.

(B)

Once at Carthage there was a slave name Androcles. He was badly treated by his master and he resolved to run away from him. He therefore secretly left his master's house and hid himself in a forest some miles distant from the city. He wandered about for sometimes and at last came to a large cave but being very hungry and fatigued he lay down in it and soon fell asleep. He was awakened by the roar of a wild beast and was frightened. He ran to the mouth of the cave but was met by a great lion. It was impossible for him to escape. The slave thought that he would be very soon torn to pieces but to his great surprise the lion came gently towards him without showing any signs of enmity or rage.

(Cal —1922)

(A)

A certain person used every day to buy six loaves of bread. One day one of his friends asked him, saying: "What dost thou do with the six loaves every day?" That person replied to him thus: "I keep a loaf of bread for myself and I throw away a loaf and I give back two loaves and the other two I lend." His friend said, "I don't understand at all what thou hast said; explain more clearly." That person said in reply: "The loaf which I keep for myself I eat; and that which I throw away I give to my mother-in-law; and those two loaves which I give back I give to my father and mother in exchange for those which they gave me in my child-hood and those two loaves which I lend I give to my two sons in order that they may give me a return in my old age.

[See page 17 Anglo Persian Translation Series, No 2 for Matriculation Students.]

(B)

The first person who helped Ardashir was his father Babak. Having slain the governor who had been appointed by Artabunus,

he made himself master of Fars But Babak, having shown a preference for Sapor his eldest son, gave him the title of governor of Fars, and after a short time died Ardashir after his father's death, led an army against his brother, and Sapor's people, having seized him, delivered him up to Ardashir, and in Fars he obtained obsolute sway It is not known what he did with Sapor, but he executed the persons who had dealt treacherously with him

(Cal.—1923)

(A)

Then Zal fell in love with the maiden before ever he had seen her, and sat and pondered how he might make her his wife The hospitable Mihráb prayed him to become his guest, but Zal refused saying that the Shah and Sam, his father, would never forgive him, if he should draw breath beneath the roof of Zohak So Mihrab went sorrowfully away, and, entering the apartment of his wife, he began to describe the beauty and courage of the young man, and to praise him as though he were his own son Now it so happened, that Rudabih was sitting with her mother at that time, and when she heard this description of Zal, she fell in love with him in her turn, and could neither eat, nor sleep for thinking of him

(B)

Victoria was one of the greatest of the monarchs who have reigned over our country After a long and glorious reign she died in January 1901, and her place was at once taken by her son, the Prince of Wales He became king as Edward the Seventh. Edward the Seventh reigned gloriously for nine years All his subjects loved him, for he was not only a wise and powerful king, but a good man with a kind heart He was held in high esteem by all European nations They knew him well, for he used often to visit them, and he was related to many of their kings and queens He did all he could to preserve peace in Europe, and will be known in History as Edward, the Peace maker When he was buried, seven kings of Europe came to his funeral, to show their respect and love for him

(Cal—1924)

(A)

There lived in Bagdad a poor porter named Sindabad One day when the weather was very hot, he was carrying a heavy load on his head from one end of the city to the other Being very weary, and having still a great way to go, he came to a street which was sprinkled with rose-water, and a gentle breeze was blowing. Delighted with the cool and charming spot, he placed

his load on the ground and sat down to rest himself for a while near a large house He wished to know whose residence it was as he was unacquainted with the names of its inhab tants.

(B)

Saiyed Ahmed the uncle of Sirajud Dowla, died as we have said a month or two before Ali Vardi and bequeathed all his wealth, his troops, and his province of Purneah to his son Shaukat Jang who entered on the government a little before his cousin became Subadar Both of them were equally rash cruel and foolish, and it was clear they could not long remain at peace. Sirajud-Dowla, immediately on his accession dismissed all his grandfather's old servants and generals and took into favour young men of licentious habits, who encouraged him in every vice They urged him daily to acts of cruelty so that neither was any man's property nor honour safe Of all the Nawabs who governed Bengal under the Moghul Emperors there was none who made himself so unpopular as this prince.

(Cal.—1925)

(A)

The sons of Shah Faridun were three in number but they had no names until they were grown up for their father wished first to test their hearts and see what manner of men they might be And in due time he bade them go forth to the land of Yaman and win for themselves the three beautiful daughters of King Sarv So they set off to the land of Yaman, and the king came out to meet them with great pomp When he knew the object of their visit, he gladly accepted the suit of the sons of Faridun giving to them his daughters, and a great store of treasure besides.

(B)

A gentleman and his wife had one little child of about two years old and they had to make a very long journey with it through a wild part of India There were no houses there and they had to sleep in a tent. One night they came upon a very thick wood. The wife said I feel much frightened to-night I know there are many tigers and other wild animals in the wood, and what if they should come out upon us ? The husband replied, 'We will make the servants light a fire and keep watch and you need have no fear

(Cal —1926)

(A)

There was a king's son, and there was a minister's son They loved each other dearly They sat together they stood up together

they walked together, they ate together, they slept together, they got up together In this way they spent many years in each other's company, till they both felt a desire to see foreign lands. So one day they set out on their journey Though very rich, the one being the son of a king and the other the son of his chief minister, they did not take any servants with them , they went by themselves on horseback

(B)

The poor lady was in tears during the whole of this speech, which very much excited my compassion 'My good mother,' replied I, 'do not afflict yourself any more , I shall be very happy to oblige you in the way you wish Tell me whither I must come , I only wish for time sufficient to dress myself properly for such an occasion ' The old lady was so overjoyed at this answer that she would have fallen at my feet and kissed them if I had not prevented her

(Cal. 1927)

(A)

One day a mother said to her son, who had returned from his school late, ' It is six o'clock, and your school closes at four where have you been all this time ?' 'O mother !' said the boy, 'when we play we forget everything else, and do not think of coming home early Is my tea ready ? Give me something to eat and drink, for I am very hungry ' The boy's mother was deceived Her son's answer led her to think that he had been playing with his companions But such was not the case He had been detained by his teacher, because he had not learnt his lessons

(B)

Alexander's liberality and love of making presents increased with his conquests , and his gifts were always bestowed in so gracious a manner as to double their value Ariston, having slain an enemy, brought his head and showed it to Alexander, saying, 'O king in my country such a present as this is rewarded with a gold cup' Alexander smiled, and said, 'Yes, with an empty cup but I will give you a gold cup full of precious stones One of the common soldiers was driving a mule laden with gold belonging to Alexander , but as the animal became too weary to carry it he unloaded it, and carried the gold himself When Alexander saw him toiling under his burden, and learnt his story, he said, 'Be not weary yet, but carry it a little way further, as far as your own tent , for I give it to you'

(Cal —1928)

(A)

When the king heard what the physician had to say he answered, If you perform what you promise I will enrich you and your family and besides this you shall be my grand vizier Do you assure me then that you will cure me of this disease by making me drink your medicine?' 'Yes, Sir!' replied the physician "I promise to cure you and to-morrow I will make a trial of it. Thus saying the physician went to his house and on the next day presented himself before the king with his medicine

(B)

Sher Shah was a great king He was never idle but as busy as the poorest man who had to earn his living by the work of his own hands. He made those under him work as hard as he did He governed the country far better than any other Afghan king had done for he knew very well that it is the duty of a king to take care of his subjects. He did not oppress the Hindus and he employed many of them to help him to govern the country One of them named Todarmal had charge of the revenue or state money collected from land rent and taxes. He only reigned as emperor for four years. His son succeeded him, but he was not so able and so wise as his father

INDEX

Ablative, uses of the 12 3
Abstract Substantives 110-11
Accusative, uses of the 66 67
Adjectives of Possession 111
Adjectives or attributive phrases without اضافه 56
AdverbialRelative Clauses 109
Adversative Particles 62 3
Aorist, uses of the 19-20
Arabic Adjectives their concord with Substantives 17
Arabic broken plurals 135
Arabic Cardinals 45
Arabic Comparatives and Superlatives 64
Arabic Feminines, plural of 17-8
Arabic Nouns in the Accusative 126
Arabic Ordinals 45
Attributive Relative Clauses 109
Causal Relative Clauses 110
Collective Nouns 39
Comparative Construction 138-9
Compound Verbs 58-9, 67 8, 78-9 90-2 103 5, 115-6 126-8, 141 3 154 5
Compounds with به 491
بي 24 5
بر 37
چهار چار 113
هر 4
Concord of Verbs with Subjects 47
Conditional Sentences 87-90
Consecutive Clauses 56
Relative Clauses 119
Continuative Relative Clauses 110
Dative uses of the 67
Diminutive Particle ك 102
Direct form of Narration 102
English Transitive Verbs requiring Persian Equivalents with Prepositions 25-6 41 50
Genitive Case kinds of 18 19
How to begin a story 163
How to convert a Hijri year into the Christian and *vice versa* 219
How to express— concessions' 125-6
instruments or means 150-51

How to strengthen an Adjective 12

How to translate an English sentence in the Indirect form of Narration 125

Idiomatic uses of

آب 177-9
آتش 262
ار 15-6
اکنون 125
امر 183-4
اهل 45
اندک 101
ب (or به) 47-9
با 38 9
باب 214
بار 245-6
بامداد 124-5
بد 261
بر 46-7
سا and بس 63
بسی 16
بسیار 207-9
بیشتر 152
پیش 57, 164-6
تا 74-5
تاره 53
تمام 121
تن 262
تنها 112
جا 50, 224
جان 139-40
جاده 213
چشم 189-91
چند 95-7
جنگ 151
چون 30
چه 32, 58
چیز 209-10
حرف 213-4
خاطر 170-1
خاک 179 80
خدمت 195-6
خرک 182-3
خواه 90
خود 55, 133-5
خوش 173-4
داد 76
در 23 4
درست 24-5
دست 72,225-7
دل 188-9
دم 100
دولت 111
دیگر 113
دیوان 113
را 25
راه 131-3
زر 40
زور 54
زبان 231-3
زود 120-1
سائر or سایر 215-6
سر 159

194 5 ملي 11
83, 255 7 ملا 5
160 مس 40 1
161 مسر 44
100 1 مسع 39 40
97 ي 9-10
184 ل 235 7
63 ملي 55
123 Imperatives kinds of 10 1
153 Imperative stems uses of 3
148-9 Imperfect Stati neal
75 Participle (اسم حالية 114
137 8 Impersonal Verbs 11 ,60
24 100-3 Indefinite ي 24
76 Infinitive uses of 56-7
97 Interrogation kind of 64
219- 0 Locatives 1 3 4
4 5 24 Modest Assertions 45
100 Noun Clauses 83 5
124 Omission of است 25
136-7 Paces of a horse 8
37 Participles of Agency 130-1
120-1 Particles of Comparison 86 7
103 Passive Construction 99 100
240-1 Passive Participle uses of 78
250-1 Past continuous uses of 55
148 Past of Probability uses of 98-9
101 Personal Pronoun strength-
30 ened by Nouns Adjectives 18
149 Place whence 120
64 5 152 3 Place where 120
49-50 Place whither 120

Plural termination 65, 86
Prepositional Verbs 3, 12
Prepositions, uses of 65
Present Tense, uses of the 3
Preterite, uses of the 65
Purpose, how to express 31-2
Reciprocal Pronouns 37
Signification of میرا 76
— of the plural 85
Sociative Case 135
Suffix اله 66
Suffixes denoting *fitness* 12
Superlative Construction 140-1
Temporal Clauses 29 30
Temporal Relative Clauses 109
Time Future 149
how long before or after 108-9
till when 85
when 23
Turkish Termination بیکی 112-3
Verb-Adjectives 136
Verbs of ordering 28
Vocative 99
Words denoting time, uses of 163-4